

# The American Monsoon System: variability and teleconnections

Jorge Luis García Franco

Wadham College  
University of Oxford

*A thesis submitted for the degree of  
Doctor of Philosophy*

Michaelmas 2020

## Abstract

Your abstract text goes here. Check your departmental regulations, but generally this should be less than 300 words. See the beginning of Chapter 2 for more.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Pellentesque sit amet nibh volutpat, scelerisque nibh a, vehicula neque. Integer placerat nulla massa, et vestibulum velit dignissim id. Ut eget nisi elementum, consectetur nibh in, condimentum velit. Quisque sodales dui ut tempus mattis. Duis malesuada arcu at ligula egestas egestas. Phasellus interdum odio at sapien fringilla scelerisque. Mauris sagittis eleifend sapien, sit amet laoreet felis mollis quis. Pellentesque dui ante, finibus eget blandit sit amet, tincidunt eu neque. Vivamus rutrum dapibus ligula, ut imperdiet lectus tincidunt ac. Pellentesque ac lorem sed diam egestas lobortis.

Suspendisse leo purus, efficitur mattis urna a, maximus molestie nisl. Aenean porta semper tortor a vestibulum. Suspendisse viverra facilisis lorem, non pretium erat lacinia a. Vestibulum tempus, quam vitae placerat porta, magna risus euismod purus, in viverra lorem dui at metus. Sed ac sollicitudin nunc. In maximus ipsum nunc, placerat maximus tortor gravida varius. Suspendisse pretium, lorem at porttitor rhoncus, nulla urna condimentum tortor, sed suscipit nisi metus ac risus.

Aenean sit amet enim quis lorem tristique commodo vitae ut lorem. Duis vel tincidunt lacus. Sed massa velit, lacinia sed posuere vitae, malesuada vel ante. Praesent a rhoncus leo. Etiam sed rutrum enim. Pellentesque lobortis elementum augue, at suscipit justo malesuada at. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Praesent rhoncus convallis ex. Etiam commodo nunc ex, non consequat diam consectetur ut. Pellentesque vitae est nec enim interdum dapibus. Donec dapibus purus ipsum, eget tincidunt ex gravida eget. Donec luctus nisi eu fringilla mollis. Donec eget lobortis diam.

Suspendisse finibus placerat dolor. Etiam ornare elementum ex ut vehicula. Donec accumsan mattis erat. Quisque cursus fringilla diam, eget placerat neque bibendum eu. Ut faucibus dui vitae dolor porta, at elementum ipsum semper. Sed ultrices dui non arcu pellentesque placerat. Etiam posuere malesuada turpis, nec malesuada tellus malesuada.

# The American Monsoon System: variability and teleconnections



Jorge Luis García Franco

Wadham College

University of Oxford

A thesis submitted for the degree of

*Doctor of Philosophy*

Michaelmas 2020

# Acknowledgements

## Personal

This is where you thank your advisor, colleagues, and family and friends.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Vestibulum feugiat et est at accumsan. Praesent sed elit mattis, congue mi sed, porta ipsum. In non ullamcorper lacus. Quisque volutpat tempus ligula ac ultricies. Nam sed erat feugiat, elementum dolor sed, elementum neque. Aliquam eu iaculis est, a sollicitudin augue. Cras id lorem vel purus posuere tempor. Proin tincidunt, sapien non dictum aliquam, ex odio ornare mauris, ultrices viverra nisi magna in lacus. Fusce aliquet molestie massa, ut fringilla purus rutrum consectetur. Nam non nunc tincidunt, rutrum dui sit amet, ornare nunc. Donec cursus tortor vel odio molestie dignissim. Vivamus id mi erat. Duis porttitor diam tempor rutrum porttitor. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Sed condimentum venenatis consectetur. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.

Aenean sit amet lectus nec tellus viverra ultrices vitae commodo nunc. Mauris at maximus arcu. Aliquam varius congue orci et ultrices. In non ipsum vel est scelerisque efficitur in at augue. Nullam rhoncus orci velit. Duis ultricies accumsan feugiat. Etiam consectetur ornare velit et eleifend.

Suspendisse sed enim lacinia, pharetra neque ac, ultricies urna. Phasellus sit amet cursus purus. Quisque non odio libero. Etiam iaculis odio a ex volutpat, eget pulvinar augue mollis. Mauris nibh lorem, mollis quis semper quis, consequat nec metus. Etiam dolor mi, cursus a ipsum aliquam, eleifend venenatis ipsum. Maecenas tempus, nibh eget scelerisque feugiat, leo nibh lobortis diam, id laoreet purus dolor eu mauris. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Nulla eget tortor eu arcu sagittis euismod fermentum id neque. In sit amet justo ligula. Donec rutrum ex a aliquet egestas.

## Institutional

If you want to separate out your thanks for funding and institutional support, I don't think there's any rule against it. Of course, you could also just remove the subsections and do one big traditional acknowledgement section.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut luctus tempor ex at pretium. Sed varius, mauris at dapibus lobortis, elit purus tempor neque, facilisis sollicitudin felis nunc a urna. Morbi mattis ante non augue blandit pulvinar. Quisque nec euismod mauris.

Nulla et tellus eu nibh auctor malesuada quis imperdiet quam. Sed eget tincidunt velit. Cras molestie sem ipsum, at faucibus quam mattis vel. Quisque vel placerat orci, id tempor urna. Vivamus mollis, neque in aliquam consequat, dui sem volutpat lorem, sit amet tempor ipsum felis eget ante. Integer lacinia nulla vitae felis vulputate, at tincidunt ligula maximus. Aenean venenatis dolor ante, euismod ultrices nibh mollis ac. Ut malesuada aliquam urna, ac interdum magna malesuada posuere.

# Abstract

Your abstract text goes here. Check your departmental regulations, but generally this should be less than 300 words. See the beginning of Chapter 2 for more.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Pellentesque sit amet nibh volutpat, scelerisque nibh a, vehicula neque. Integer placerat nulla massa, et vestibulum velit dignissim id. Ut eget nisi elementum, consectetur nibh in, condimentum velit. Quisque sodales dui ut tempus mattis. Duis malesuada arcu at ligula egestas egestas. Phasellus interdum odio at sapien fringilla scelerisque. Mauris sagittis eleifend sapien, sit amet laoreet felis mollis quis. Pellentesque dui ante, finibus eget blandit sit amet, tincidunt eu neque. Vivamus rutrum dapibus ligula, ut imperdiet lectus tincidunt ac. Pellentesque ac lorem sed diam egestas lobortis.

Suspendisse leo purus, efficitur mattis urna a, maximus molestie nisl. Aenean porta semper tortor a vestibulum. Suspendisse viverra facilisis lorem, non pretium erat lacinia a. Vestibulum tempus, quam vitae placerat porta, magna risus euismod purus, in viverra lorem dui at metus. Sed ac sollicitudin nunc. In maximus ipsum nunc, placerat maximus tortor grida varius. Suspendisse pretium, lorem at porttitor rhoncus, nulla urna condimentum tortor, sed suscipit nisi metus ac risus.

Aenean sit amet enim quis lorem tristique commodo vitae ut lorem. Duis vel tincidunt lacus. Sed massa velit, lacinia sed posuere vitae, malesuada vel ante. Praesent a rhoncus leo. Etiam sed rutrum enim. Pellentesque lobortis elementum augue, at suscipit justo malesuada at. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Praesent rhoncus convallis ex. Etiam commodo nunc ex, non consequat diam consectetur ut. Pellentesque vitae est nec enim interdum dapibus. Donec dapibus purus ipsum, eget tincidunt ex grida eget. Donec luctus nisi eu fringilla mollis. Donec eget lobortis diam.

Suspendisse finibus placerat dolor. Etiam ornare elementum ex ut vehicula. Donec accumsan mattis erat. Quisque cursus fringilla diam, eget placerat neque bibendum eu. Ut faucibus dui vitae dolor porta, at elementum ipsum semper. Sed ultrices dui non arcu pellentesque placerat. Etiam posuere malesuada turpis, nec malesuada tellus malesuada.

# Contents

<b>List of Figures</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>List of Abbreviations</b>	<b>ix</b>
<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Motivation . . . . .	1
1.2 Thesis aims and outline . . . . .	4
<b>2 Background</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1 The tropical circulation and the global monsoon . . . . .	7
2.2 The American Monsoon System . . . . .	13
2.3 A review on the proposed mechanisms for the Midsummer drought . . . . .	16
2.4 El Niño Southern Oscillation: impacts to the American monsoon system . .	20
2.5 Stratosphere-Troposphere Coupling in the Tropics . . . . .	23
2.5.1 The Quasi-biennial oscillation (QBO) . . . . .	23
2.5.2 Tropical teleconnections of the QBO . . . . .	25
<b>3 Data and methods</b>	<b>30</b>
3.1 Observations and reanalysis data . . . . .	30
3.1.1 Gridded precipitation datasets . . . . .	30
3.1.2 ERA-5 . . . . .	33
3.2 The Unified Model of the Met Office Hadley Centre . . . . .	34
3.2.1 The Global Coupled Configurations of HadGEM3 . . . . .	34
3.2.2 The CMIP6 experiments . . . . .	35
3.3 The Moist Static Energy Budget . . . . .	38
<b>4 The American monsoon system in UKESM1 and HadGEM3</b>	<b>41</b>
4.1 Introduction . . . . .	42
4.2 Methods and data . . . . .	44
4.3 Climatological temperature and low-level wind biases . . . . .	45
4.4 The Atlantic and Pacific ITCZs and the SACZ . . . . .	50
4.5 Precipitation and convection in the AMS . . . . .	55

4.5.1	Mean seasonal precipitation . . . . .	55
4.5.2	The annual cycle of rainfall . . . . .	58
4.5.3	Characteristics of convective activity . . . . .	61
4.6	ENSO Teleconnections . . . . .	63
4.6.1	Canonical teleconnections . . . . .	63
4.6.2	The role of ENSO flavours . . . . .	70
4.6.3	A possible influence of the QBO on tropical ENSO teleconnections . .	71
4.7	Summary and discussion . . . . .	75
<b>5</b>	<b>A wavelet transform method to determine monsoon onset and retreat from precipitation time-series</b>	<b>81</b>
5.1	Introduction . . . . .	82
5.2	Data . . . . .	85
5.2.1	Precipitation datasets and reanalysis data . . . . .	85
5.2.2	Model data . . . . .	85
5.3	The wavelet transform method . . . . .	85
5.3.1	Identification of Monsoon Onset and Retreat . . . . .	88
5.3.2	Extension for Application to the MSD signal . . . . .	91
5.3.3	Comparative Methodologies . . . . .	93
5.4	Results . . . . .	95
5.4.1	The North American Monsoon . . . . .	96
5.4.2	The Indian Monsoon . . . . .	99
5.4.3	The midsummer drought . . . . .	102
5.5	Summary and discussion . . . . .	110
<b>6</b>	<b>Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments</b>	<b>114</b>
6.1	Introduction . . . . .	115
6.2	Data and methods . . . . .	116
6.2.1	Observations and reanalysis data . . . . .	116
6.2.2	CMIP6 data . . . . .	118
6.2.3	Determination of the timings of the MSD . . . . .	118
6.3	Climatological features . . . . .	119
6.4	The East Pacific SSTs . . . . .	126
6.5	On the role of cloud-radiative effects . . . . .	133
6.6	The role of the Caribbean Low-Level Jet . . . . .	141
6.7	A short look at the MSD through the lense of the moist static energy budget	147
6.8	Summary and discussion . . . . .	154
<b>Bibliography</b>		<b>158</b>

# List of Figures

2.1	The global monsoon rainfall . . . . .	9
2.2	The American monsoon system climatology . . . . .	14
2.3	El Niño Southern Oscillation and the Walker circulation . . . . .	21
2.4	The non-linear relationship of the QBO with SST forcings . . . . .	26
4.1	Temperature and SLP climatologies in UKESM1 and HadGEM3 . . . . .	46
4.2	Temperature and SLP biases in UKESM1 and HadGEM3 . . . . .	48
4.3	Seasonal cycle of surface temperature in key monsoon regions . . . . .	49
4.4	Climatological precipitation and ITCZ position . . . . .	51
4.5	Seasonal evolution of Atlantic and Pacific ITCZ . . . . .	52
4.6	SACZ assessment in UKESM1 and HadGEM3 . . . . .	54
4.7	Austral summer mean rainfall in the South American monsoon . . . . .	56
4.8	Boreal summer precipitation in the North American Monsoon . . . . .	57
4.9	Annual cycle of precipitation in different regions of the AMS . . . . .	59
4.10	Seasonal cycle of measures of convection in the AMS . . . . .	62
4.11	ENSO teleconnections of temperature and SLP to the region of the AMS . .	64
4.12	ENSO precipitation teleconnections to the AMS . . . . .	65
4.13	Walker circulation anomalies associated with ENSO . . . . .	67
4.14	Linearity of the precipitation response to ENSO events . . . . .	68
4.15	Diversity of ENSO SST patterns . . . . .	69
4.16	Precipitation anomalies to different ENSO flavours . . . . .	71
4.17	Precipitation anomalies as a function of QBO and ENSO phases . . . . .	72
4.18	Walker circulation responses to La Niña under different QBO phases . . . . .	74
4.19	Summary schematic of biases in UKESM1 and HadGEM3 . . . . .	76
5.1	Haar wavelet exmaple . . . . .	87
5.2	Wavelet transform coefficient in North American Monsoon . . . . .	88
5.3	Example determination of onset and retreat in TRMM . . . . .	89
5.4	Example determination of onset and retreat in HadGEM3 N216 . . . . .	91
5.5	Wavelet transform characterisation of Midsummer drought . . . . .	93
5.6	Comparison of methods in 2010 in the North American Monsoon . . . . .	96
5.7	Precipitation anomalies during North American monsoon onset . . . . .	97

5.8 Onset and retreat spatial distribution in North American Monsoon . . . . .	98
5.9 Precipitation anomalies during Indian monsoon onset . . . . .	100
5.10 Indian monsoon precipitation anomalies associated with onset . . . . .	101
5.11 Onset and retreat dates spatial distribution in Indian monsoon . . . . .	102
5.12 Precipitation anomalies after MSD . . . . .	104
5.13 Seasonal cycle of precipitation for various MSD categories . . . . .	105
5.14 Determination of MSD timings and coefficients . . . . .	106
5.15 Map of MSD significant regions . . . . .	108
5.16 Spatial distribution of MSD timings . . . . .	109
6.1 Seasonal cycle of precipitation in Mesoamerica . . . . .	117
6.2 Illustration of the use of the wavelet transform method . . . . .	118
6.3 Observed composites of climatological and seasonal variations of precipitation.	120
6.4 Composite mean precipitation biases and seasonal variations . . . . .	121
6.5 Scatter plot of mean precipitation in different parts of seasonal cycle . . . . .	122
6.6 OLR and vertical velocity composites . . . . .	123
6.7 Seasonal cycle of East Pacific and Caribbean SSTs and zonal winds. . . . .	125
6.8 Composite SST anomalies . . . . .	127
6.9 Scatter plot of SST vs precipitation . . . . .	129
6.10 Scatter plot of SST changes . . . . .	130
6.11 Lagged correlations of East Pacific SSTs . . . . .	132
6.12 Composites of cloud radiative effects . . . . .	134
6.13 Short-wave cloud radiative effect composites . . . . .	135
6.14 As in Fig. 6.12 but for the long-wave CRE. . . . .	136
6.15 Seasonal cycle of cloud-radiative effects . . . . .	137
6.16 Composite shortwave differences with MSD timings . . . . .	138
6.17 Scatterplot and lagged-regression of surface short-wave . . . . .	139
6.18 Composite moisture flux and wind speed . . . . .	140
6.19 Seasonal cycle of IMFC and TWC . . . . .	142
6.20 Composites of IMFC, TWC and CLLJ . . . . .	143
6.21 Scatterplot of TWC, IMFD and CLLJ . . . . .	145
6.22 Lagged correlations of the CLLJ and IMFC indices with precipitation. . . . .	146
6.23 Seasonal cycle of MSE budget terms . . . . .	147
6.24 Composites of the mean vertical advection of the MSE budget . . . . .	149
6.25 Composites of the anomalous vertical advection of the MSE budget . . . . .	150
6.26 Composites of gross moist stability . . . . .	151
6.27 Composites of the anomalous horizontal advection of MSE and surface fluxes	152
6.28 Scatterplot of the vertical advection of dry and moist static energy against precipitation . . . . .	153

## List of Abbreviations

- 1-D, 2-D** . . . One- or two-dimensional, referring in this thesis to spatial dimensions in an image.
- Otter** . . . . One of the finest of water mammals.
- Hedgehog** . . . Quite a nice prickly friend.

# 1

## Introduction

The American Monsoon System (AMS) is the main source of rainfall for the most part of Latin America and the southwestern United States, which are regions where agricultural activity is economically crucial and where a vast wealth of ecosystems and biodiversity are present. Changes to the amount, timings and location of rainfall over different temporal scales has direct consequences for the livelihood of the people and for ecosystems in the regions. Improving our physical understanding of the mechanisms that cause temporal changes to the AMS rainfall is crucial to improve our medium-range forecasts and our climate predictions which could ultimately render key information for risk assessments, climate adaptation and agricultural strategies. In this context, this thesis aims to tackle outstanding questions in the American Monsoons in a global climate model with particular interest in better understanding the physical mechanisms associated with variability and teleconnections of this monsoon.

### 1.1 Motivation

Temporal and spatial variability of rainfall is important for society throughout the planet for various reasons, but the relevance of the timing and strength of rainfall is emphasized in agriculturally active and biodiversity hotspot tropical regions (Sultan et al., 2005; Jain et al., 2015). In the AMS, changes to rainfall on inter-annual scales can produce long-lived droughts that are associated with crop loss and forest fire intensification (Chen et al., 2009;

Harvey et al., 2018). But shorter-term changes can also produce profound effects such as flash floods and intense rainfall periods that cause crop loss (Devereux, 2007; Ávila et al., 2016). A large body of monsoon research is consequently focused on understanding the physical mechanisms responsible for precipitation variability across temporal and spatial scales, i.e., the causes for variability of the monsoon (Wang et al., 2017; Gadgil, 2018).

The AMS was recognized as a monsoon only after the 1990s, which is relatively recent, as the definition for a monsoon has evolved from an initial dynamical definition based on a reversal of the prevailing winds to an agronomical definition that recognizes the seasonality of precipitation as the dominant feature of a monsoon (Wang et al., 2017; Gadgil, 2018). This fact, however, means that our understanding of the AMS is more limited compared to other monsoons given the lower number of studies on the AMS from a monsoon perspective when compared to other monsoons such as the Indian monsoons where monsoon forecasts exist since the 19th century (Blanford, 1886) produced the first monsoon forecast in 1886. For this reason, several primary questions about general aspects of the AMS remain open including unknown mechanisms for interannual variability and teleconnections.

Recently, theories for general or global monsoon dynamics have arisen in an effort to coherently explain the monsoons observed in Earth through a general physical mechanism. Several characteristics of the North and South American monsoons challenge the basic physical inferences or predictions of most of these theories, which means that these newly developed frameworks cannot easily be applied to the AMS to further understand their variability.

The lack of understanding of the basic physical mechanisms that drive the seasonal cycle of rainfall in the southern Mexico and Central America is one example of the gaps in the literature of the AMS. The so-called Midsummer drought is a robust bimodal feature of the seasonal cycle of precipitation during the wet season that has had implications for agricultural practices in the region since the Mayan Empire (Jobbová et al., 2018). In spite of the importance for region-wide agricultural practices, the physical mechanisms that can explain this seasonal variation of rainfall has elluded research over recent years.

Climate research in South America has recently focused to investigate the non-linear responses of precipitation of the AMS to teleconnections from the El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO), which occurs just on the western coast of the continent. ENSO

phenomena has been well-known by Peruvian fishermen for centuries and has shaped agricultural practices and caused mass migrations (Caramanica et al., 2020). Nevertheless, the understanding of the effect of ENSO over South America and the AMS in general is still somewhat limited. For example, two ENSO events that are very similar in the central Pacific can cause teleconnections with different locations and strengths and the reasons behind these varying effects are not well understood.

One key tool to understand the causes for regional changes to monsoon rainfall are general circulation models (GCMs). These models are useful to evaluate the roles of climate features such as orography, vegetation-atmosphere and ocean-atmosphere feedbacks, ENSO and their impacts over many aspects of Earth's climate including monsoons (Zhou et al., 2016). However, the use of GCMs to address key questions of the AMS has been scarce. In fact, detailed accounts of the biases –differences between the simulated climate of a model and the real world – are rarely done with explicit emphasis on the AMS. In other words, GCMs are rarely evaluated in the AMS, so our the understanding lacks both in knowledge of the GCM biases relevant for the AMS but also because of a lack of use of GCMs to address scientific questions of the AMS.

This thesis focuses on the AMS and the outstanding questions regarding the climate variability and teleconnections affecting this monsoon. This thesis begins by evaluating a state-of-the-art climate model in the AMS region, assessing the roles of biases in the large-scale circulation that affect regional monsoon rainfall biases. This assessment highlights that the GCM used in this thesis is fit for the purpose of investigating two outstanding research questions in the AMS literature. The first chapter also highlights the lack of relevant methods to compare and contrast the timings of rainy seasons in the AMS in both GCM and observed datasets. Therefore, the following chapter describes a new method to determine monsoon timings. This method is then used in the following two chapters which address the scientific questions, the MSD of Central America and Southern Mexico, as well as the effects of the stratospheric-tropospheric coupling in modulating ENSO teleconnections. In a way, each chapter of this thesis builds on the previous chapters.

## 1.2 Thesis aims and outline

The main aim of this thesis is to investigate the physical causes of variability and the mechanisms associated with teleconnections to the AMS. In particular, this thesis first evaluates a GCM which shows a reliable representation of the seasonal cycle of rainfall and of ENSO teleconnections, both characteristics of the model that motivate the remaining questions of the thesis.

The specific key aims of this thesis are:

1. To characterize the large-scale biases in a state-of-the-art GCM that are relevant for the representation of rainfall in the AMS.
  - (a) Characterize the main biases in the thermodynamical and dynamical features over the large scale tropical domain and the regional AMS sub-domains.
  - (b) Evaluate the roles of the role of large-scale biases, horizontal resolution and the use of Earth system processes for regional monsoon representation.
  - (c) Assess the representation of the teleconnection associated with the main driver of interannual variability, i.e., ENSO in a GCM with specific emphasis on the causes for non-linearity and non-asymmetry in the teleconnections.
2. Evaluate the seasonal variability of the monsoon onset, withdrawal and intra-seasonal changes in the GCM and compare to observational datasets.
3. Describe and investigate the physical mechanisms associated with the seasonal cycle of rainfall in Central America and southern Mexico by testing previous hypothesis of physical mechanisms within the model.
4. To investigate the role of stratospheric-tropospheric coupling in the tropics and the role of the tropopause for convection in the AMS and for ENSO teleconnections.

The remainder of this thesis is structured as follows:

- Chapter 2 provides a review of the literature on key aspects of the American monsoons. The chapter begins by introducing the concepts of monsoons, their different physical interpretations as a global phenomena and the place of regional monsoons in the global scale. Then, the North and South American monsoons are introduced and detail is given on the applicability of large-scale monsoon theories to these regional monsoons. This section is followed by a literature review of the proposed physical mechanisms that drive the unique monsoon-like seasonal cycle of rainfall in Central America, southern Mexico and the Caribbean. Then, El Niño-Southern Oscillation is introduced and their impacts over North and South America are described with key emphasis on questions. Finally, the chapter summarises how the effect of the stratosphere for tropical convection has recently regained attention by providing a literature review of tropical teleconnections of the stratospheric quasi-biennial oscillation.
- Chapter 3 describes the observational datasets used in this thesis, composed of four gridded precipitation datasets and one reanalysis dataset: ERA5. The chapter also described the UK Met Office Hadley Centre Unified Model (UM) and the configurations of the UM used in this thesis and in the Coupled Model Intercomparison Project phase 6 (CMIP6).
- Chapter 4 evaluates three configurations of the UM model submitted to CMIP6 for their representation of the AMS. The chapter describes large-scale biases over the tropics and local scale biases in the precipitation amount and seasonality in key regions of the AMS. The representation of ENSO teleconnections is also evaluated for their mean impacts over the AMS but also analysis is done on the non-linearity of simulated and observed teleconnections and the role of ENSO flavours for this non-linearity. This chapter highlights relevant questions that are of interest to the wider AMS community and that can be pursued given the model biases and skill to reproduce aspects of the AMS. In particular, two aspects are emphasized that are tackled in the remaining chapters: first, the skill of the models in reproducing a bimodal signal in the seasonal cycle of rainfall in Central America and southern Mexico and second, a possible effect of the stratospheric quasi-biennial oscillation in modulating ENSO teleconnections

to the AMS. The majority of this work has been published in *Weather and Climate Dynamics* García-Franco et al. (2020).

- Chapter 5 details a wavelet covariant transform method used to diagnose changes to the timings of the monsoon by determining the onset and retreat dates from precipitation time-series. The method is extended to be used to determine the timings of bimodal regimes, and even whether or not a bimodal regime exists or not in a given region. This chapter has been submitted to *The International Journal of Climatology*.
- Chapter 6 builds on the two previous chapters by further investigating the physical mechanisms that cause the bimodal regime of precipitation in southern Mexico in the UM CMIP6 models. The chapter relies on the wavelet transform method to differentiate the ocean-atmosphere states during the different stages of the seasonal cycle. The roles of the East Pacific sea-surface temperatures, the cloud-radiative feedback and the Caribbean Low-Level Jet are investigated in various CMIP6 experiments and compared to what is observed in ERA5.

# 2

## Background

This chapter provides the necessary background for the topics of the thesis; first by summarising the main aspects of the tropical circulation and of the global monsoon and discussing the existing theories to explain the monsoon phenomena. Then, the American Monsoon System is introduced and detail is given on the Midsummer drought of southern Mexico and Central America and El Niño Southern Oscillation teleconnections to this monsoon. Finally, a summary of the literature on the role of stratospheric-tropospheric coupling in the tropics for monsoon variability is given.

### 2.1 The tropical circulation and the global monsoon

Tropical climate is a result of the strong solar insolation received year-round that generally provides a stronger heating of the surface compared to extra-tropical latitudes. These latitudinal differences in insolation generate a meridional heat transport by the coupled atmosphere-ocean system. This means that the tropics have a positive annual net energy and the extra-tropics show a negative net energy.

The dynamics in the tropics is also distinct from extra-tropical latitudes due to other physical features such as the relative extent and location of the continents, the way in which gravity waves propagate throughout the atmosphere and a different impact of Earth's rotation upon the dynamics of parcels. Generally, tropical dynamics is considered to be less

understood than mid-latitude dynamics, because most of the assumptions of mid-latitude dynamical frameworks break down in the tropics, but also because reliable data in the tropics was scarce until satellites began providing continuous reliable observations of the tropics in the 1980s (Emanuel, 2007; Webster, 2020).

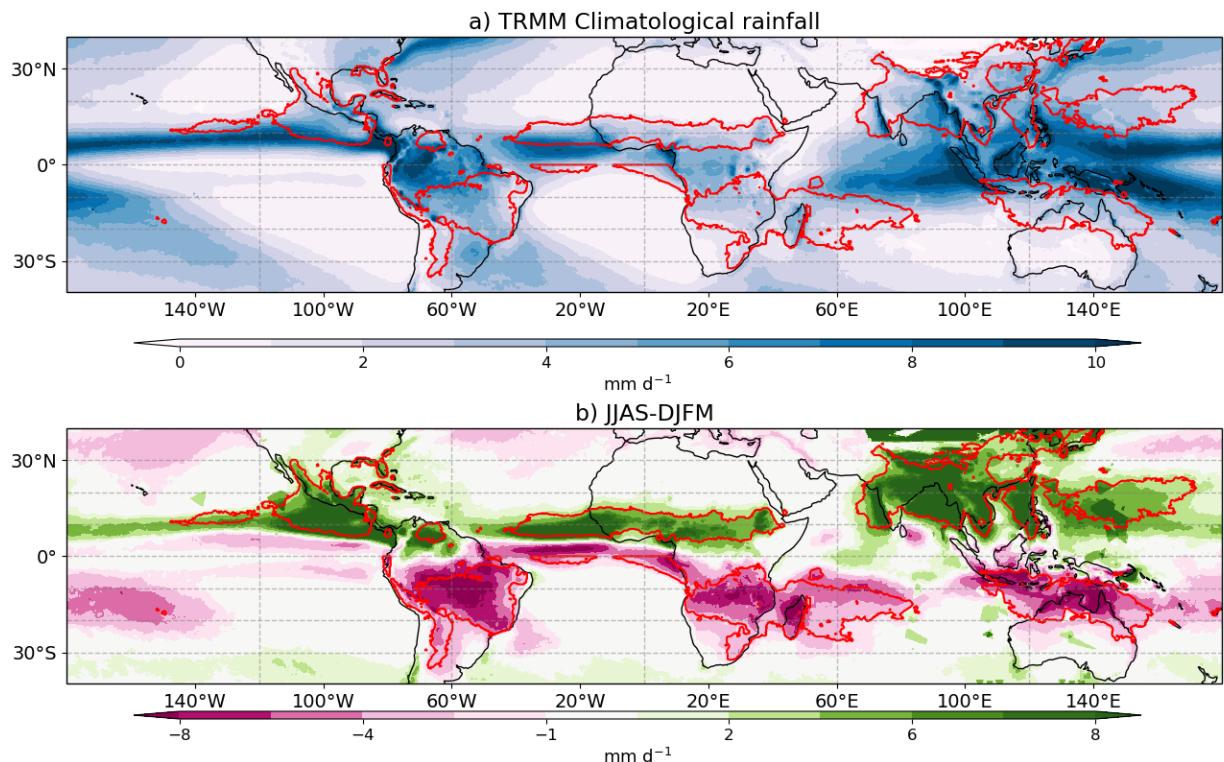
Moist convection is arguably one of the characteristic traits of tropical climate as the dynamics and thermodynamic effects of deep moist convection has relevant feedbacks with the regional and large-scale circulation (Emanuel et al., 1994; Webster, 2020) and produces long-distance effects through propagating waves and anomalous circulations (Hartmann, 2015; Li and Hsu, 2018). Moist convective systems span different spatial and temporal scales, from short-lived cumulonimbus showers to tropical cyclones that can survive more than a week on the open ocean. Over sufficiently long scales, the mean deep moist convective activity also plays a significant role in determining the large-scale tropical circulation typically divided into meridional and zonal overturning circulations, the Hadley and Walker circulations.

The Hadley cell is the meridional overturning circulation that arises from the differential heating between the tropics and the midlatitudes. The Hadley cell is characterized by ascending motions in the tropics and descending motions in the subtropics, and acts to transport heat poleward from the equator (Lorenz, 1967). This Hadley cell migrates meridionally with the seasonal cycle, the winter and summer cells interact with each other but also with the midlatitudes through eddy momentum fluxes (Bordoni and Schneider, 2008). The Hadley cell is not zonally symmetric; the boreal summer Hadley cell, for instance, is primarily a result of ascent in the Indian Ocean and the west Pacific regions with a minor contribution from ascending motions in Central and North America (Hoskins et al., 2020).

In spite of the fact that the large input of solar radiation is roughly uniformly distributed throughout the tropics on an annual mean average at the top of the atmosphere, the energy balance at the surface and the tropical circulation are not zonally symmetric. The prominent example of zonal asymmetry in the tropics is the Walker circulation. The Walker circulation is the zonal overturning circulation found in the equatorial Pacific Ocean characterized by ascending motion over the West Pacific and descending motions over the East Pacific(Walker, 1924; Bjerknes, 1969; Gill, 1980). The dynamic and thermodynamic effects of the location

and strength of convection associated with the Walker circulation have strong impacts across all the tropics and also the extratropics, known as teleconnections (Cai et al., 2019).

The Inter-tropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ) is a tropical band of convective clouds and precipitation that migrates meridionally with the seasons (Schneider et al., 2014). The ITCZ is arguably one of the most relevant features of tropical climate due to the strong influence on the low- and upper-level circulation associated with ITCZ, the high tropospheric heating due to deep moist convection in the ITCZ and the largest precipitation rates in the tropics are found in the ITCZ. The ITCZ is characterized by a strong convergent flow in the low levels and a strong divergent flow at upper levels. The meridional migration of the ITCZ, as well as the mean latitude of the ITCZ, results from the energy and momentum balances so that the ITCZ is predominantly north of the equator because of the inter-hemispheric temperature contrast (Donohoe et al., 2013; Bischoff and Schneider, 2016).



**Figure 2.1:** a) Climatological mean annual rainfall rates in the tropics using data from the Tropical Rainfall Measurement Mission (TRMM) dataset (1999-2018). b) The mean rainfall rate difference between boreal summer (JJAS) and austral summer (DJFM). The red contours highlight the regions where the mean summer rainfall amount accounts for more than 55% of the mean total annual rainfall accumulation.

One of the phenomena of tropical climate that first generated interest in climate research are monsoons (Halley, 1687). The word *monsoon* stems from the Arabic word for *season* and is closely associated with the very first conceptions of a monsoon. The first widely accepted view of a monsoon was that of a large-scale land-sea breeze associated with the differential warming of the land and the ocean that force a seasonal reversal of the low-level wind flow that brought seasonal rainfall (Halley, 1687).

The traditional land-sea breeze definition of monsoon is now known to present several shortcomings. Firstly, several mid-latitude regions would fit a monsoon definition based solely on a seasonal reversal of the wind (Gadgil, 2018), and secondly, regions that are now recognized as a monsoons, in South America for example, do not show a seasonal reversal of the winds, *per se*, rather just a seasonal change in direction and strength of the zonal winds (Vera et al., 2006). For these reasons, the land-sea breeze view of monsoons has recently been replaced by three alternative conceptions, an ITCZ-monsoon framework, a convective quasi-equilibrium interpretation and a moist static energy (MSE) zonal-mean energetic interpretation (Biasutti et al., 2018; Hill, 2019; Geen et al., 2020). The MSE budget and methodology is detailed in section 3.3 but a broad description of the method and summary of results arising from the MSE budget is given below.

The first framework explains monsoons as a poleward extension of the ITCZ into land generalizing all monsoons as an expression of global tropical convergence resulting from the energy balance (Chao and Chen, 2001; Gadgil, 2018). This interpretation has led to the concept of *the global monsoon*, a term that encompasses all the regions in the tropics that exhibit a strong seasonality in precipitation (Zhou et al., 2016; Gadgil, 2018). In practice, the global monsoon refers to the those regions of the planet where more than 70% of the total annual rainfall falls during the summer season, in several recognizing the seasonality of precipitation as the key feature to diagnose a monsoon (Zhou et al., 2016; Wang et al., 2017).

Figure 2.1 shows the global monsoon as depicted by the TRMM dataset. By this definition, the majority of the regions over land between 5 and 10 degrees away from the equator are part of the global monsoon. A regional monsoon, such as the Indian Monsoon, is then a subset of the global monsoon with unique regional characteristics that shape this monsoon different to other regional monsoons in terms of the seasonality, the strength

and the dynamics. The American Monsoon System is then the regional monsoon that is located in the subtropics of North and South America.

Bordoni and Schneider (2008) provide an alternative conceptual view of monsoons, describing the characteristic rapid onset of a monsoon as a regime transition of the Hadley cell from a edddy-momentum driven circulation, which resembles a canonical ITCZ regime, to a thermally direct circulation which resembles a monsoon-like circulation. The zonal mean MSE meridional gradient drives the ITCZ location and determines the strength of the overturning circulation by modulating the ventilation from midlatitude cooler and drier air in a feedback mechanism (Geen et al., 2020). Even though this framework is posited as an axisymmetric framework, their predictions were broadly consistent with the Asian monsoon circulation.

Convective quasi-equilibrium (CQE) is a theory for moist convection where convection sets the vertical temperature and moisture profiles to a convectively neutral state, thereby setting the free tropospheric temperature (Neelin, 2007). For a monsoonal circulation, this theory emphasizes the coupling of convection and dynamics predicting that the subcloud layer equivalent potential temperature maxima must be collocated with the free tropospheric saturation equivalent potential temperature (Nie et al., 2010; Geen et al., 2020). The rapid onset of the Asian monsoon has been shown to be associated with the boundary layer moist entropy distribution, in agreement with predictions of CQE (Nie et al., 2010; Boos, 2015; Ma et al., 2019).

Several studies examine the monsoon phenomena through an axi-symmetric framework that assummes zonal symmetry and aims to understand the large-scale dynamical influence over the extent and strength of the axi-symmetric monsoon through global energetic diagnostics (e.g. Faulk et al., 2017; Geen et al., 2019; Byrne and Zanna, 2020). The zonal-mean framework is common to the Hadley cell interpretation of monsoons (Bordoni and Schneider, 2008), as well as the ITCZ-monsoon theory. However, regional monsoons are shaped by the asymmetries imposed by the orography, the characteristics of the surrounding ocean basins, land-sea contrasts and also the role of vegetation-hydrology coupling (Wang et al., 2017; Pascale et al., 2019). The importance of zonal asymmetries has raised multiple issues with large-scale so-called monsoon dynamics theories, as several predictions of these

theories are not consistent with observations of regional monsoons (e.g. Nie et al., 2010; Smyth et al., 2018; Biasutti et al., 2018; Pascale et al., 2019).

Recent reviews acknowledge that all these frameworks have significant shortcomings to be applied to regional local monsoons (Biasutti et al., 2018; Hill, 2019; Geen et al., 2020). These reviews conclude that a framework that reconciles the global energetic perspective with the characteristics of regional monsoons would be crucially important and very useful, but as several authors point out (e.g. Biasutti et al., 2018; Hill, 2019), also very hard to formulate. For example, the North and South American Monsoons depart from CQE, as precipitation does not follow the maxima in subcloud equivalent potential temperature (Nie et al., 2010; Geen et al., 2020).

The MSE budget framework suffers both from theoretical and practical shortcomings. One practical shortcoming is that the calculation of the budget terms post hoc in reanalysis or models results in very large residuals (Hill, 2019), so these frameworks work best when the calculations are done inside the budget terms to be integrated online at each time-step (e.g. Ma et al., 2019). The theoretical shortcoming is that the surface fluxes over land, e.g., in the Sonoran and Saharan deserts and the deep Amazon make the estimations of the roles of hydrology-vegetation feedbacks and their potential contributions to the MSE budget in observations very difficult to assess (Boos and Korty, 2016; Pascale et al., 2019). The use of simpler moisture budgets has proven useful in a regional monsoon context to investigate the sources of moisture for a monsoon in current (Ordoñez et al., 2019; Martinez et al., 2019) and future climates (Smyth and Ming, 2020), but this budget is mostly a tool and not a coherent theory for process-level understanding of monsoons.

The Hadley cell interpretation of monsoons has significant shortcomings to depict some regional monsoons, particularly those that are not the Asian monsoon as the overturning circulation in the South Asian monsoon is strong enough to be represented by a clear thermally direct regime. However, this energetic framework assumes no zonal transport of energy, which minimizes the role of orography and land-sea interaction (Biasutti et al., 2018). One might reasonably infer from these results that the timing of transition in zonal mean overturning cells would be similar for monsoons at different longitudes but similar latitudes, which is not the case (Wang et al., 2017). Furthermore, a monsoon restricted to a small

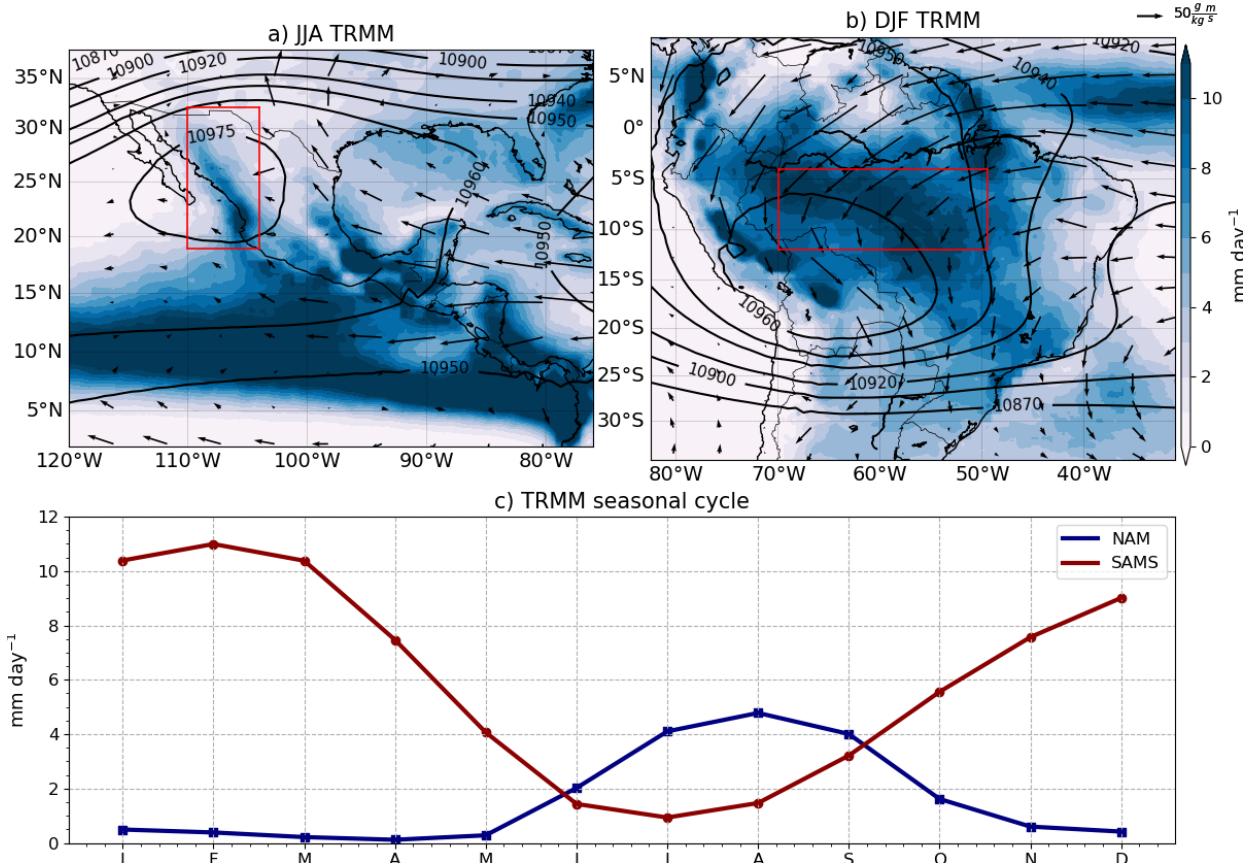
area, such as the North American and African monsoons may not present a clear zonally averaged overturning regime, and may be significantly affected by local zonal shallow and deep circulations (Zhai and Boos, 2015). For instance, Smyth et al. (2018) shows that the simulated West African monsoon when forced with different solar forcings exhibits a decoupling between the zonal-mean ITCZ location, the strength of the local Hadley cell and the monsoon rainfall, in opposition to the predictions of this framework (Bordoni and Schneider, 2008).

In short, despite significant progress in our understanding of the monsoon phenomena at the planetary-scale through zonal mean energetic frameworks, there is an important gap between large-scale theories of monsoon dynamics and the observed regional monsoons. The next section presents a summary of the American Monsoon literature, which explains the characteristics of these monsoons through the effect of regional features and dynamics, seemingly detached from the literature in this section. The AMS literature is therefore, seemingly, detached from the literature in this section.

## 2.2 The American Monsoon System

The American Monsoon System (AMS) is the main source of rainfall for tropical Latin America and is typically subdivided into the North and South American monsoon systems (Vera et al., 2006). Although the spatial definition of the AMS is quite varied amongst studies, a general consensus is that the North American Monsoon is found in south-western North America (Figure 2.2a) extending north from central-west Mexico into the southwestern United States and the South American Monsoon is centred in the deep Amazon south to the river mouth (Figure 2.2b) (Adams and Comrie, 1997; Stensrud et al., 1997; Vera et al., 2006).

The seasonal cycle of rainfall in the North American Monsoon is characterised by a wet July-August-September season and significantly drier conditions during the rest of the year (Adams and Comrie, 1997) (Figure 2.2c). Three temporal stages describe the evolution of the North American Monsoon (Adams and Comrie, 1997; Geil et al., 2013). First, the onset stage (May-June) starts with a strong surface warming that leads to very high temperatures in the desert region. Simultaneously, the sub-tropical jet weakens and migrates north decreasing the frequency of mid-latitude disturbances in the monsoon region (Douglas et al., 1993;



**Figure 2.2:** Climatological mean a) boreal and b) austral summer rainfall (shading), 850 hPa moisture flux (vectors) and geopotential height at 250 hPa (contours) in a) southern North America and b) South America. c) Monthly-mean seasonal march of precipitation in the TRMM dataset for two area-averaged time-series, the North American Monsoon (NAM) and the South American Monsoon System (SAMS) shown in the red rectangles in a-b).

Turrent and Cavazos, 2009). These factors combine to develop a low-level (upper-level) thermal surface low (anticyclone) and moisture influx from the nearby Gulf of California and easternmost Pacific Ocean (Douglas et al., 1993; Geil et al., 2013). Maturity (July-August) is the peak period of monsoon rainfall characterised by sustained deep convection (Barlow et al., 1998) and significant increases in low and mid-level moisture flux convergence and mid-level latent heating (Adams and Comrie, 1997; Cook and Seager, 2013). This latent heating caused by deep convection can be diagnosed in the upper-level geopotential height (Figure 2.2a) in the form of an anticyclone centred on the monsoon region.

The moisture flux convergence decreases in August, after which precipitation recycling (Dominguez et al., 2008) plays an important role in keeping deep convection active until

September. Decay (September–October) is the last stage of the monsoon, in many ways opposite to the onset stage, as is characterised by the equatorward migration of the subtropical jet (Higgins et al., 1997; Geil et al., 2013), evaporation in the nearby basins decreases and deep convection in the monsoon region gradually disappears (Douglas et al., 1993).

The origin of the high levels of moisture at low and midlevels in the monsoon region has been a matter of debate for a long time (Adams and Comrie, 1997; Barlow et al., 1998; Vera et al., 2006; Ordoñez et al., 2019). A large number of studies acknowledge that the main source of moisture for the North American Monsoon is the East Pacific Ocean and to a second order, mid-level moisture advected from the Gulf of California can mix in the column (e.g. Adams and Comrie, 1997; Stensrud et al., 1997; Vera et al., 2006; Turrent and Cavazos, 2009; Ordoñez et al., 2019).

The South American Monsoon is a primary source of precipitation for South America, especially in the Amazon region (Gan et al., 2004; Vera et al., 2006; Jones and Carvalho, 2013). During austral summer (DJF), monsoon rainfall accounts for over 60% of the total annual precipitation in the Amazon (Gan et al., 2004; Marengo et al., 2012), whereas austral winter rainfall accounts for less than 5% of the total annual rainfall (Vera et al., 2006). In the central Amazon, convective precipitation is observed from early October but the main rainy season extends from December to April (Machado et al., 2004; Adams et al., 2013), whereas convection in southeastern Brazil and Paraguay starts in November and peaks in January and February (Marengo et al., 2001; Nieto-Ferreira and Rickenbach, 2011).

A surface heat low appears in Bolivia in early austral summer, known as El Chaco Low, as a result of strong warming in austral spring (Marengo et al., 2012; Sulca et al., 2018). As this surface heat-low strengthens, low-level convergence drives the circulation into the low region. Simultaneously, an upper-level anti-cyclone (Fig. 2.2b), known as the Bolivian High, develops in the same region as a signature of strong deep convection and latent heating (Marengo et al., 2001; Vera et al., 2006).

This low-level wind circulation importing moisture from the Atlantic is one of the most important features of the SAMS (Marengo et al., 2012; Wang et al., 2017) as the flow modulates the moisture flux to the mainland and influences the occurrence of active and

break phases of the SAMS (Jones and Carvalho, 2002), as well as changes in the temporal and spatial distribution of rainfall (e.g. Giannini et al., 2004; Bombardi and Carvalho, 2011).

As described in the previous sections, both the North and South American monsoon thermodynamics do not follow the CQE propositions, i.e., the maximum low-level moist static energy is not collocated with the maximum free tropospheric temperature. One possible reason for this is that the free-troposphere over southwestern North America is significantly drier than in other monsoon regions, decoupling the free troposphere from the boundary layer. One alternative hypothesis is that ventilation of low moist entropy air from the midlatitudes is responsible for this decoupling of the boundary layer and the free troposphere in the American monsoons (Boos, 2015).

### 2.3 A review on the proposed mechanisms for the Midsummer drought

The characteristics of the seasonal cycle of precipitation in northwestern Central America, the Caribbean and southern Mexico fit the definition of a monsoon climate (Wang et al., 2017) with a clear separation of the wet and dry seasons. However, this region shows a unique climatological precipitation feature. After monsoon onset, rainfall decreases considerably around the midsummer; this decrease is followed by a secondary increase in precipitation in the late summer (Mosiño and García, 1966), and for this reason this feature of the seasonal cycle is most commonly referred to in the literature as Midsummer drought (MSD) (Magaña et al., 1999).

The intraseasonal variations of precipitation associated with the MSD have been known for centuries and have shaped agricultural practices in the region. For example, ancient mayan texts suggest that agricultural rituals associated with the plea for rain-bearing clouds to the gods were significantly more frequent during the drier MSD period (Jobbová et al., 2018). In current days, the MSD is well known by local farmers who refer to the drier midsummer period as ‘El Veranillo’ in Central America and ‘canícula’ in southern Mexico because the drier period coincides with the Canis Major constellation appearing in the sky (Dilley, 1996).

The two peak structure of the MSD has been diagnosed in the observed climatological precipitation of several regions of Mexico, El Salvador, Belize, Guatemala, Costa Rica and Cuba (e.g. Mosiño and García, 1966; Magaña et al., 1999; Durán-Quesada et al., 2017; Perdigón-Morales et al., 2018; Martinez et al., 2019). However, notable differences in the seasonal cycle of precipitation have been found between the mainland Central America and the Caribbean islands. The so-called first peak of precipitation occurs in June and the second peak in September in northern Central America whereas the two peaks are observed in May and October in the Caribbean.

In spite of extensive research to understand the physical mechanisms associated with the MSD (e.g. Magaña et al., 1999; Giannini et al., 2000; Gamble et al., 2008; Herrera et al., 2015; Maldonado et al., 2017; Straffon et al., 2019), debate remains over which is the leading-order mechanism that causes rainfall to decrease at midsummer and increase again at the end of the summer. Fundamental questions remain unclear such as whether the MSD is caused by two precipitation enhancing mechanisms (Karnauskas et al., 2013) or a mechanism that inhibits rainfall at midsummer (Durán-Quesada et al., 2017). Furthermore, the association between the MSD in Central America and in the Caribbean is still disputed (Gamble et al., 2008), as most studies suggest that the two regimes are unrelated and therefore two different explanations are required to account for the two MSDs in these regions.

One of the first hypotheses to account for the bi-modal distribution of rainfall was proposed by Hastenrath (1967) who argue that a double crossing of the ITCZ can explain the MSD so that the first peak of precipitation is associated with early summer northward crossing of the ITCZ and the second peak the return or southward displacement of the ITCZ during late summer. However, this theory fails to explain the MSD signal seen at latitudes as high as 29°N (Perdigón-Morales et al., 2018; Zhao et al., 2020), a feature that will be shown in this thesis, which is further north than the northernmost extension of the ITCZ (Schneider et al., 2014), and certainly the ITCZ does not cross twice so far from the equator.

Magaña et al. (1999) and Magaña and Caetano (2005) proposed a mechanism driven by radiative-convective feedbacks between the East Pacific (EP) sea-surface temperatures (SSTs) and deep tropical convective clouds. The coupling between the height and strength of convection, the incoming shortwave radiation and the SSTs are the key features of their

framework. The EP SSTs peak in May triggering large evaporative fluxes and deep convection in the EP ITCZ and the western coast of Central America. The high convective clouds produce a radiative cooling effect at the surface due to a decreased incoming shortwave radiation associated with the reflectance of shortwave radiation by clouds. This cooling decreases SSTs and deep convective activity and thus accounts for the decrease of rainfall during the midsummer. The second peak in September is driven by an opposite mechanism, i.e., the decreased frequency of deep convective clouds during the MSD period in July and August reduce the cooling effect of the anvil clouds and increase the incoming shortwave radiation at the surface, SSTs and surface fluxes, all of which leads to an precipitation during late August and September (Magaña et al., 1999).

A large number of studies, in contrast, propose that the seasonal evolution of the North Atlantic Subtropical High (NASH) is the leading mechanism for the MSD (e.g. Mapes et al., 2005; Small et al., 2007; Gamble et al., 2008; Curtis and Gamble, 2008; Muñoz et al., 2008; Martinez et al., 2019; Corrales-Suastegui et al., 2020). The NASH is the subtropical anticyclone in the North Atlantic Ocean that migrates southwest during early boreal summer. The expansion and intensification of the NASH in boreal summer, according to these studies, strengthens the low-level trade winds, controlling the seasonal cycle of a low-level jet found in the core of the Caribbean Sea known as the Caribbean Low-Level Jet (CLLJ). The CLLJ is a key regional feature of the climate of the Caribbean and the Intra-Americas Sea because the strength and direction of the flow in the Caribbean controls the underlying Caribbean SSTs and the regional moisture transport (Giannini et al., 2000; Mestas-Nuñez et al., 2007; Martinez et al., 2019; García-Martínez and Bollasina, 2020).

However, studies disagree on the specific roles that the CLLJ and the NASH play for the precipitation over the Mesoamerican region. For example, some studies (e.g. Giannini et al., 2000; Mestas-Nuñez et al., 2007; Gamble et al., 2008) suggest that the expansion of the western flank of the NASH strengthens the CLLJ which cools the SSTs, through the effect of wind stress and mixed-layer mixing. The cooling of SSTs diminishes evaporation and therefore low-level moisture which ultimately leads to less precipitation.

In contrast, other studies propose that the CLLJ and NASH affect the seasonal cycle of precipitation through their effects on the regional moisture transport (Small et al., 2007;

Muñoz et al., 2008; Herrera et al., 2015; Durán-Quesada et al., 2017; Martinez et al., 2019). In this second hypothesis, the changes to the intensity of CLLJ influenced by the NASH modify the convergence and divergence patterns in the Intra-Americas Sea. In other words, the midsummer strengthening of the CLLJ increases moisture divergence, drying the atmospheric column over the Caribbean.

Herrera et al. (2015) shows that during the drier months in Central America in the Midsummer, convective west of the central American continent gets stronger with heavier precipitation. Their evidence suggests that the gap flow that originated from the CLLJ in the Caribbean Sea controls the location of ascending and descending motions, and the MSD may be explained by the seasonal variations and the coupling of the low-level wind flow with the underlying EP SSTs. Herrera et al. (2015) further argued that the exit region of the CLLJ is located to the east of the region of strongest MSD signal, which suggests that the moisture divergence effect over the central American MSD is minimal.

A different mechanism, proposed by Karnauskas et al. (2013), argues that the biannual crossing of the solar declination angle can control precipitation and explains the bimodal characteristics of the seasonal cycle. In this mechanism, the MSD is driven by two precipitation enhancing periods that are separated by a relatively normal, and drier, period. This theory differs from those previously discussed which explained the MSD through mechanisms that inhibit convective activity in the midsummer whereas Karnauskas et al. (2013) argues that the solar declination angle that crosses twice through Central America, once during June and a second time during September, increases convective activity during each crossing.

The variations of incoming shortwave radiation associated with the declination angle modulate the SSTs, surface fluxes and therefore convective activity. In other words, the first crossing of the solar declination angle increases the incoming shortwave radiation which increases the SSTs, evaporation and leads to a peak of precipitation, i.e., the first peak. After the shortwave radiation is reduced the MSD period appears. The second crossing of the solar declination angle, similarly, explains the second peak as the second increase in incoming shortwave promotes more deep convection than during the MSD.

Other mechanisms have been proposed arguing that the MSD is a result of vertical wind shear affecting convective instability or the Saharan dust controlling the microphysics of clouds (Angeles et al., 2010). For instance, Perdigón-Morales et al. (2019) also finds a link between the frequency and spatial distribution of the first peak rainfall rates and the Madden-Julian Oscillation.

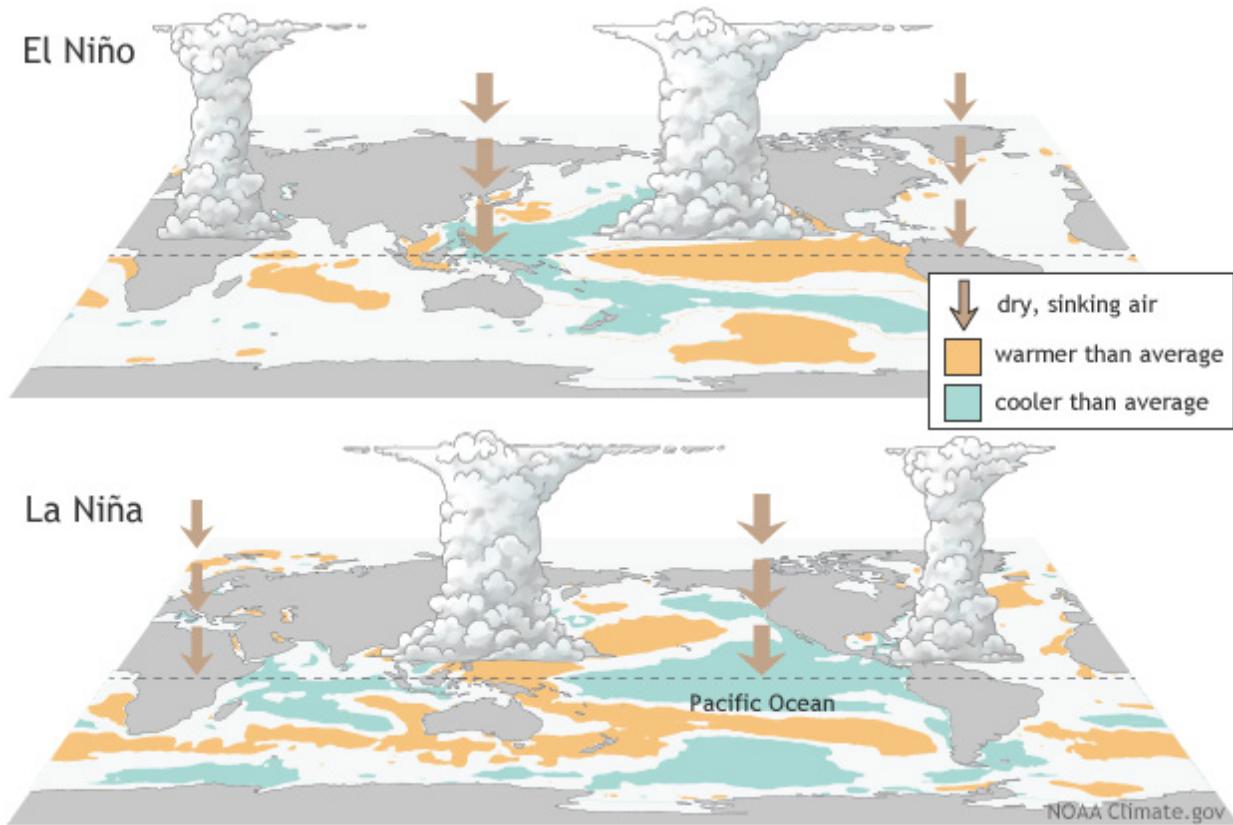
## 2.4 El Niño Southern Oscillation: impacts to the American monsoon system

El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) is a phenomena that primarily affects the local ocean and atmosphere of the equatorial Pacific Ocean, but these changes are profoundly important for the global climate system, which is why ENSO is commonly known as the leading mode of interannual variability. The term '*El Niño*' was initially coined by Spanish colonizers when they learnt from Peruvian fishermen that the ocean surface temperatures in the easternmonst Pacific Ocean increased notably in some years around December time. For religious reasons, the colonizers termed the SST increase as Christ Child – *El Niño*.

Later on, sir Gilbert Walker (1924) coined the term *Southern Oscillation* to describe the synchronous changes to the sea-level pressure of the Indo-Pacific region and South America. Walker (1924) and Walker (1932) are the first analyses of synchronous effects of the tropical circulation over local precipitation, temperature and pressure. Further research (e.g. Troup, 1965) would highlight that these remote changes in pressure were driven by the east-west pressure gradient in the equatorial Pacific.

The changes in the pressure field associated with the Southern Oscillation (SO) are now part of what is known as the Walker circulation, which intertwines the dynamics of the zonal circulation in the East Pacific with the SSTs over the underlying ocean. ENSO is then characterized as a coupled phenomena composed of an oceanic part, *El Niño*, and an atmospheric component associated with the zonal circulation but best characterized by changes to the surface pressure field, the Southern Oscillation.

ENSO has several unique features, such as no robust periodicity as events may occur every 2 to 7 years and a seasonal phase-locking that are associated with ENSO events peaking



**Figure 2.3:** Schematic of the positive (upper) and negative (lower) phases of ENSO. Regions with tall clouds indicate more ascent and convection than normal whereas brown arrows indicate dry descending air. Obtained from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration at <https://www.climate.gov/enso>.

in boreal winter in observations (Wang and Picaut, 2004). Even though the underlying physics that cause ENSO and explain the variability in the periodicity of the phenomena is still debated (Wang and Picaut, 2004; Christensen et al., 2017), several aspects are now better understood. For example, the local effect that ENSO events have over on the location and strength of deep convection in the equatorial Pacific have long been thoroughly described (Trenberth, 1997; Neelin et al., 1998).

During a neutral state of ENSO, the Walker circulation is found in the climatological state, with ascent and wet conditions in the West Pacific and descent and drier conditions in the East Pacific. During El Niño the Walker circulation and low-level trade winds weaken which is associated with an eastward shift of deep convection along the equatorial Pacific (Figure 2.3), with convective rainfall becoming more frequent in the central and even eastern Pacific than normal (Neelin et al., 1998; Wang and Picaut, 2004). During La Niña the

opposite happens and the Walker circulation strengthens which leads to stronger convection in the West Pacific and stronger ascent on the East Pacific (Figure 2.3).

In other words, ENSO imposes a strong control on the location and strength of the Walker circulation (Figure 2.3). These changes to the strength and position of the convective regions in the Pacific Ocean can then propagate to other regions of the planet; these far-distant effects are commonly known as *teleconnections*. For example, ENSO has a direct effect over other tropical regions outside of the Pacific through the Walker circulation, see Figure 2.3, as upper-level wind anomalies induce anomalous vertical motions over the monsoons in West Africa (Ropelewski and Halpert, 1986, 1987) or South America (Sulca et al., 2018). Other mechanisms of ENSO teleconnections to higher latitudes include changes to the position and strength of sub-tropical jets (Fereday et al., 2020), changes to the Pacific and North American circulation patterns (Bayr et al., 2019) as well as impacts to the North Atlantic via the stratospheric polar vortex (Domeisen et al., 2019).

In South America, the effects of ENSO are felt throughout the continent and throughout economic sectors from Peruvian fishermen (Takahashi, 2004) to the Amazon rain-forest and the plainlands in South-eastern South America(Grimm, 2011; Marengo et al., 2012). One key aspect of current research on ENSO impacts to South America is the observed non-linearity and non-symmetry in the teleconnections, which has mainly been attributed to ENSO diversity (Tedeschi et al., 2015; Cai et al., 2020). A non-linear teleconnection refers to a non-linear scaling between the strength of an ENSO event, typically measured by an SST index, and the magnitude of the response, in most cases precipitation response.

Observations have shown that the maximum SST anomaly does not always appear in the same region of the Pacific Ocean (Ashok and Yamagata, 2009; Dommeneget et al., 2013). These differences in the SST patterns are referred to as ENSO *diversity* or *flavours* which can be broadly summarized as two flavours for each phase, based on the location of the SST anomaly these events are commonly separated into Central and Eastern Pacific events. In observations, each type of event is usually also associated with the strength of the event (Dommeneget et al., 2013).

The strength and patterns of ENSO teleconnections have been shown to depend on the type of event for the South American monsoon (Rodrigues et al., 2011; Sulca et al., 2018).

Cai et al. (2020) provides a recent review on the differences in the impacts that Central and Eastern Pacific (CP and EP) events have on South America. The observed record shows that the teleconnections affecting the Amazon and northeastern Brazil are most pronounced during EP El Niño events and CP La Niña events than the CP El Niño events and EP La Niña events. This recent review also highlights the need for further modelling work to test observation-driven hypothesis, as the observed record is too short to make confident statements about the mechanisms associated with ENSO teleconnections.

## 2.5 Stratosphere-Troposphere Coupling in the Tropics

The troposphere is the lowermost layer of the atmosphere ranging from the surface up to 10-15 km where the vertical temperature profile is characterized by a decrease of temperature with height. The layer above the troposphere is called the *stratosphere* where the vertical temperature gradient is reversed and temperatures increase with height, this layer spans from 10-20 km up to 50 km in altitude (Andrews et al., 1987). The layer in between the troposphere and the stratosphere is the tropopause, which is a transition region where the vertical temperature gradient reverses and the atmosphere is stable to upward motions.

Stratosphere-troposphere coupling refers to events or processes where the two layers are notably affected by each other so that the temperature or wind flow of the two layers vary together, or *couple*. One prominent example of this coupling is the effect of the stratospheric polar vortices over the zonal flow in the troposphere (Thompson et al., 2005; Domeisen et al., 2019). However, semi-periodic climatic variability in either layer can also have effects over the other layer. The dominant mode of interannual variability in the equatorial stratosphere is such an example and is introduced in the following section.

### 2.5.1 The Quasi-biennial oscillation (QBO)

The stratospheric quasi-biennial oscillation (QBO) was discovered 60 years ago through balloon observations that revealed that the zonal winds reverse direction in a semi-periodic way with accompanying temperature variations (Ebdon, 1960; Reed, 1964). The QBO has then been characterized by further observations as alternating easterly and westerly

wind regimes associated with a descending zonal wind shear from up to 50 km down to 10 km, with a mean oscillatory period of 28 months (Baldwin et al., 2001). The downward propagation of the easterly and westerly wind regimes, amplitude and the mean period have been explained by the interaction of a broad spectrum of gravity and Kelvin waves of tropospheric origin with the equatorial stratospheric zonal mean flow (Baldwin et al., 2001).

The wind variation in the middle stratosphere associated with the QBO are greater than the seasonal cycle (Andrews et al., 1987) and this vertical wind shear imposes a temperature signal through the thermal wind relationship, which can be expressed as:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = \frac{-R}{H\beta} \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial y^2}, \quad (2.1)$$

where  $\partial u / \partial z$  is the vertical shear of the zonal wind,  $R$  is the ideal gas constant,  $y$  is the latitude,  $H$  is a scale height of the atmosphere (7-8 km) and  $\beta$  is the first derivative of the Coriolis term in the meridional coordinate  $y$ .

Through this thermal wind relationship a westerly shear would have warm anomalies beneath whereas an easterly shear would impose cold temperature anomalies. In turn, these temperature anomalies couple to the mean meridional circulation (Baldwin et al., 2001) causing an anomaly on this circulation, an effect which is often referred as the secondary circulation of the QBO (Plumb and Bell, 1982; Li et al., 1995; Ribera et al., 2004). This anomalous circulation is characterized by reduced upwelling during westerly shear phases and increased upwelling during the easterly phase. These meridional circulation perturbations adiabatically warm (anomalous descent at the equator) and cool (anomalous ascent) for westerly and easterly shears, respectively, at the equator.

The combination of dynamic and thermodynamic effects of the QBO in the equatorial stratosphere are associated with long-distance impacts across the stratosphere (Holton and Tan, 1980; Lu et al., 2020) and down to the surface (Garfinkel and Hartmann, 2010; Gray et al., 2018). Even though the domain of the QBO is in the tropics, the better recognized effects of the QBO are in the extra tropics, particular how the direction of the zonal mean flow in the equatorial stratosphere modulates the propagation of extratropical waves and

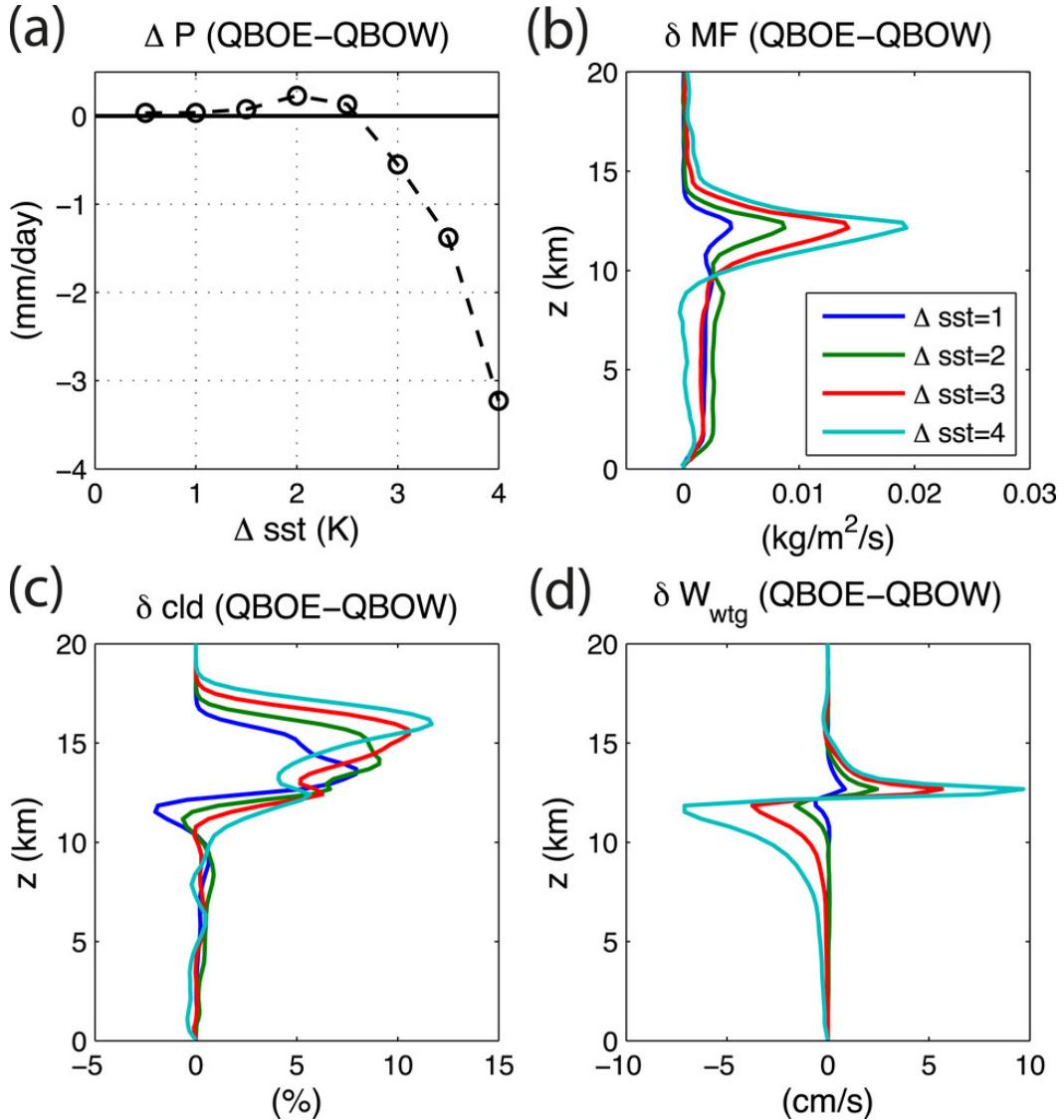
therefore also influences the wintertime stratospheric polar vortex (Lu et al., 2020), which can have profound impacts over the surface in polar and midlatitude regions.

The meridional circulation of the QBO and the associated temperature anomaly impact the height and temperature of the tropopause in the tropics (Baldwin et al., 2001; Tegtmeier et al., 2020a,b). The easterly phase of the QBO (QBOE) is associated with a higher and colder tropopause in the tropics whereas the westerly phase (QBOW) is observed with lower and warmer tropical tropopause (Tegtmeier et al., 2020a). These variations in the tropopause characteristics, amongst other effects associated with the QBO, have been hypothesized to affect, to different extents, a range of tropical phenomena, and in particular, deep convective systems.

### 2.5.2 Tropical teleconnections of the QBO

The influence of the QBO on the dynamic and thermodynamic characteristics of the tropical upper-troposphere-lower stratosphere (UTLS) region has raised interest in possible indirect effects of the QBO over tropical deep convection and clouds. Gray (1984) was amongst the first to suggest an influence of the QBO over tropical systems, in particular, that Atlantic tropical cyclone activity was enhanced during QBOW compared to QBOE. Gray et al. (1992) further argued that the anomalous vertical wind shear associated with the QBO affects the strength of convection in monsoonal and convergence zones to the extent that the vertical wind shear can modify ENSO frequency. Their results suggest that El Niño events are favoured during QBOE and La Niña events are more frequent during QBOW.

The evidence by Gray et al. (1992) has motivated further observational and modelling research on QBO tropical teleconnections; some of this research has contested Gray's results (e.g. Chan, 1995; Camargo and Sobel, 2010; Hansen et al., 2016). For example, Giorgetta et al. (1999) was amongst the first to use a global climate model (ECHAM4) to investigate the effects of the QBO over tropical convection. Giorgetta et al. (1999) focused on the role that the QBO plays in modulating the strength of the East Asian and Indian monsoons. Their findings suggest that monsoon variability was partially modulated by the QBO, with the strongest effects associated with the QBO found for cloudiness at 100 hPa. Giorgetta et al.



**Figure 2.4:** (a) QBO anomalous precipitation as a function of SST forcing. The  $\delta \text{sst}$  are increments over a baseline of 301 K throughout the whole model domain. (b)–(d) The differences of mass flux in cloud cores, cloud fraction, and the parametrized large-scale vertical velocity derived from the weak temperature gradient approximation, respectively, between experiments with the QBOE and QBOW temperature profiles. Figure 3 from Nie and Sobel (2015).

(1999) argued that these differences could be explained by the effect of the QBO on the UTLS static stability and a consequent effect over the vertical extent of deep tropical convection.

Further modelling work has been carried out, for instance by Garfinkel and Hartmann (2010) and Garfinkel and Hartmann (2011) that used the Whole Atmosphere Community Climate Model (WACCM) to understand the effect of the QBO over tropical precipitation, the subtropical jets and the wintertime polar vortex. Garfinkel and Hartmann (2010) shows

that the canonical ENSO teleconnections to the North Pacific are stronger during QBO W in WACCM and reanalysis suggesting that the QBO modulates the wave propagation activity associated with ENSO events.

Garfinkel and Hartmann (2011) uses perpetual winter conditions on the WACCM model and further shows that the effect of the QBO on the upper-tropospheric zonal wind in the equator and the strength and location of subtropical jets, particularly at the exit region of the jets. Their experiments show that the QBOE-QBOW zonal wind response in the upper troposphere is zonally asymmetric at the equator but zonally symmetric in the subtropics as the subtropical jet is weakened during QBOE conditions.

The response of convection to the QBO UTLS temperature anomalies was investigated in cloud-resolving model simulations by Nie and Sobel (2015). Their experimental design used the System for Atmospheric Modelling (SAM), varying SST boundary conditions with increments over a baseline SST level of 301 K, the use of the weak-temperature gradient approximation and an idealized vertical temperature profile to simulate the effect of the QBO temperature signal. Figure 2.4 shows that the precipitation and convective features differences between QBO phases depends on the SST forcing.

The precipitation difference QBOE-QBOW is positive under relatively small SST anomalies but in experiments with large SST anomalies this difference becomes negative and overall larger than under small SSTs. The difference in mass flux is also sensitive to the underlying SSTs, as increased mass flux during QBO E is increased for larger SSTs. In other words, the QBO influence on precipitation is non monotonic and largely depends on the underlying SST field.

The cloud fraction in the upper troposphere is increased during QBO E compared to QBO W whereas the ascending motions show peculiar behaviour with stronger ascent above 12 km for QBOE and weaker ascent below 12 km. Their results suggest that the QBO influences convection in two ways that are non-linear and are competing mechanisms. In agreement with previous arguments, Nie and Sobel (2015) finds that the mass flux in the upper troposphere is increased during QBO E but also that this increases the gross moist static stability (GMS) increasing the efficiency of large-scale vertical motions during QBO E for large SSTs, which acts to reduce precipitation. Secondly, the QBO modifies the fraction

of high-level clouds resulting from deep convection which modifies the radiative heating to the column which increases precipitation during QBOE. Figure 2.4a then shows how these competing effects change for different SSTs with the GMS effect dominating for large SSTs.

Various attempts have been made to determine a relationship between the QBO and deep convection in observations. One influential study by Collimore et al. (2003) analysed satellite-derived out-going long-wave radiation (OLR) in the tropics composited by QBO phase. These composites suggest that OLR is significantly different between QBO phases in most monsoon regions, such as Central America and the West Pacific, with an overall indication that convective activity is reduced during QBOW compared to QBOE. This influence, however, was not found to be zonally symmetric and in fact the longitudinal variations of the QBO-related OLR differences were suggestive enough that Collimore et al. (2003) argued for a possible role for the QBO to modulate the Walker circulation, which would explain the lack of zonal symmetry in their results.

Another relevant study by Liess and Geller (2012) found that satellite-derived cloud thickness and frequency and upper-level velocity potential had a significant and longitudinally asymmetric response to the QBO. In particular, their results show increased convective activity during QBOE in the West Pacific but the opposite for the East Pacific. For this reason, Liess and Geller (2012) also argued that the strength of the tropical overturning circulation may be modulated by the QBO, indicating the possible role of both the vertical wind shear and the upper-level static stability to modulate deep convection.

The topic of QBO tropical teleconnections has regained attention due to recent findings suggesting a link between the QBO and the Madden-Julian Oscillation (MJO) (Son et al., 2017) which motivated extensive research (see e.g. Lee and Klingaman, 2018; Wang et al., 2019; Martin et al., 2020) due to the worldwide impact of the MJO. The MJO in observations shows a stronger amplitude and more predictability during QBO E, but further inspection in cloud-permitting and forecast models have not provided conclusive answers to this puzzle (Martin et al., 2019, 2020).

Questions still arise as to whether this tropical link is real or due to chance, for instance Wang et al. (2019) argued that the increased predictability of the MJO under the QBO E phase is included in the initial conditions, and thus not a result of a mechanistic effect

of the QBO on the MJO. More generally, whether the QBO has a considerable effect on deep convection in general is debated as several plausible mechanisms exist in the literature (see e.g. Nie and Sobel, 2015) such as the effect of wind shear, the tropopause height, the cold-point temperature, static stability and/or feedbacks with very high cirrus and cumulonimbus clouds.

# 3

## Data and methods

### 3.1 Observations and reanalysis data

Continuous and reliable observations of Earth's atmosphere and ocean have only been possible in recent decades, due to the advent of satellites. In particular, precipitation analyses have benefited greatly from satellite-derived estimates of precipitation in regions where station-data is non-existent such as oceans. This thesis uses several data sources for precipitation from various gridded precipitation datasets. Several dynamic diagnostics are also used in this thesis, which are taken from the latest reanalysis from the European Centre from European Centre for Medium-Range Weather Forecasts, described below. Table 3.1 summarises relevant information of the observations and reanalysis datasets used in this study.

#### 3.1.1 Gridded precipitation datasets

The Tropical Rainfall Measurement Mission (TRMM) dataset is a multi-satellite multi-sensor infra-red precipitation product that is available on several versions that are made with different algorithms and calibrations with surface rain-gauge data (Huffman et al., 2007). This thesis uses the daily product TRMM version 7 3B42 provided by the Goddard Earth Sciences Data and Information Services Center (Mission, 2011) at [https://disc.gsfc.nasa.gov/datasets/TRMM\\_3B42\\_7/](https://disc.gsfc.nasa.gov/datasets/TRMM_3B42_7/).

### 3. Data and methods

**Table 3.1:** Summary of the datasets used in this study. For each dataset, the acronym used hereafter, the period of coverage, the field used and the horizontal resolution are shown. Some datasets extend further back in time, but only the satellite-era period is used in most of the datasets. The variables used are: precipitation, surface-air temperature ( $2mT$ ), sea-level pressure (SLP), SSTs, the x and y components of the wind ( $u, v$ ), the lagrangian tendency of air pressure ( $\omega$ ), outgoing longwave radiation (OLR), geopotential height (GPH) and specific humidity ( $q$ ).

Dataset/ Version	Acronym	Variable	Period	Data type	Resolution	Reference
Global Precipitation Climatology Project v2.3	GPCP	Precipitation	(1979-2018)	Surface and satellite	2.5°x2.5°	(Adler et al., 2003)
Global Precipitation Climatology Centre Climate Prediction Center Merged Analysis of Precipitation	GPCC CMAP	Precipitation	(1940-2013) (1979-2016)	Surface station Satellite calibrated with surface rain-gauge	0.5°x0.5°	(Becker et al., 2011)
Climatic Research Unit TS v4. Climate Hazards Infrared Precipitation with Stations Tropical Rainfall Measurement Mission 3B42 V7 Hadley Centre SST3	CRU4 CHIRPS	Surface temperature Precipitation	(1979-2017) (1981-2018)	Surface station Surface rain-gauge and satellite	0.5°x0.5°	(Harris et al., 2014)
European Centre for Medium-Range Forecasting ERA-5	TRMM HadSST ERA-5	Precipitation SST $2mT$ , SLP, $u$ , $v$ , $\omega$ , OLR, $q$ , SST, GPH, precipitation	(1999-2018) (1940-2018) (1979-2018)	Satellite calibrated with surface station Buoy and satellite Reanalysis	0.25°x0.25° 2.5°x2.5° 0.75x0.75°	(Funk et al., 2015) (Huffman et al., 2010) (Kennedy et al., 2011)
						(C3S, 2017; Hersbach et al., 2020)

A set of microwave and infra-red sensors onboard low earth orbit (LEO) satellites, such as the Microwave Imager (TMI) and the Advanced Microwave Scanning Radiometer-Earth Observing System (AMSR-E), provide the main source of information about hydrometeors for TRMM. The microwave sensor data is used to calibrate the infrared data to produce a first estimate of precipitation. However, even using the products of several satellites there is a sparse sampling of time-space precipitation in passive microwave techniques. Therefore, this data is complimented by infrared measurements onboard geosynchronous earth orbit satellites. Other sources of information include a radar onboard TRMM and rain gauge analysis. Details of the research product can be found in Huffman et al. (2007) and Huffman et al. (2010).

The Climate Prediction Center Merged Analysis of Precipitation (CMAP) dataset is a global merged product of satellite and ground based observations but also constrained by a numerical model (Xie et al., 2007). This dataset was first produced at monthly-mean resolution (Xie and Arkin, 1997) but is now available as a collection of products at several temporal scales. The pentad-scale version of CMAP is used in this study.

The Climate Hazards Infrared Precipitation with Stations (CHIRPS) is relatively more recent merged product of precipitation (Funk et al., 2015). This dataset uses high-resolution rain-gauge station data that is complimented by satellite cloud cold duration estimates on regions where station data is sparse. The products are calibrated with TRMM data (Funk et al., 2015), so they are cannot be considered an independent source of information from TRMM.

All these datasets have shortcomings, advantages and unceratainties in their representation of precipitation. The algorithm of merged products such as TRMM to combine different satellite sensors and calibration techniques as well as surface station rain-gauge data results in products that may have shortcomings to accurately depict extreme events (Trejo et al., 2016), As the source data of most of these datasets is shared, the datasets cannot be considered to be fully independent sources of information.

The TRMM dataset has a high horizontal and temporal resolution and was used in several CMIP assessments (Geil et al., 2013; Jones and Carvalho, 2013) as a reliable source of precipitation (Carvalho et al., 2012). Therefore, TRMM is used in this thesis as the best estimate for the spatial and temporal characteristics of rainfall. However, the period

covered by TRMM (1998-2018) is too short to analyse statistically robust teleconnections or variability, so GPCP, GPCC and CHIRPS are used to evaluate longer term variability for their longer period. Although a thorough validation and comparison of these datasets across the AMS domain is missing, several studies have analysed one or more of these datasets in regions of the AMS (e.g. Franchito et al., 2009; Dinku et al., 2010; Trejo et al., 2016).

### 3.1.2 ERA-5

A reanalysis is a numerical description of the state of the atmosphere in a global or regional scale of full of diagnostics in a gridded product that is available at multiple vertical levels, in other words "maps without gaps" (Hersbach et al., 2020). A reanalysis takes a set of physically consistent blend of observations that are then used to run the forecasting model. Reanalysis are key tools for climate and weather research as they provide full pictures of the atmospheric state for long periods, a feature that could not be possible with our current purely observational tools. For this reason, reanalyses are typically used to validate GCM output.

The latest reanalysis from ECMWF, the fifth generation of their reanalysis, is called ERA5. ERA5 uses the Integrated Forecasting System (IFS) model and a 4D variational data assimilation system (4D-Var), a larger number of data sources for assimilation and also provides output on higher horizontal resolution (Hersbach et al., 2020). The output is available on hourly to monthly-mean frequencies, from 1000 hPa to 0.1 hPa in the vertical and with horizontal resolutions as high as  $0.25^\circ$ . In this thesis, the resolution of all ERA5 data, unless otherwise stated is of  $0.75^\circ$  and all data was downloaded from the Climate Store at <https://climate.copernicus.eu/climate-reanalysis>.

ERA5 presents a notable improvement in the representation of the water cycle, by increasing the mean correlation to precipitation datasets such as GPCP. ERA5, as all reanalysis, resolves precipitation rates in the driving physical model using the convective scheme and parametrisation. However, this reanalysis also assimilates radiances from several satellite instruments such as Global precipitation monitoring mission Microwave Imager, TMI and ASMR-2 Hersbach et al. (2020). This assimilation of satellite data has improved the representation of the water cycle in ERA5 compared to older reanalysis such as ERA-interim (e.g. Hénin et al., 2018). These improvements are also due to changes to

the parametrisations of the microphysics of clouds and rain (Forbes and Ahlgrimm, 2014) and the diurnal cycle of convection (Bechtold et al., 2014).

## 3.2 The Unified Model of the Met Office Hadley Centre

The UK Met Office Hadley Centre (MOHC) released the first version of the Hadley Centre Global Environmental Model (HadGEM1) in 2006 (Johns et al., 2006), and has since continuously updated the HadGEM model and submitted experiments from the model to the various phases of the Coupled Model Intercomparison Project (CMIP), which is the backbone of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) reports. This section first describes the third generation of the HadGEM model and subsequently describes the experiments from these versions of the model submitted for CMIP6.

### 3.2.1 The Global Coupled Configurations of HadGEM3

The MOHC Unified Model (UM) is a weather and climate global model that is based on a seamless modelling approach, which means that the UM consists of a dynamical core and parametrization schemes that can be used across a wide range of temporal and spatial scales. The UM version that was used for CMIP6 experiments and is used throughout this thesis employs the Global Coupled (GC) configuration 3.1 (GC3.1) (Williams et al., 2018; Walters et al., 2019) which in turn is composed of the components: Global Atmosphere 7.0 (GA7.0), Global Land 7.0 (GL7.0), Global Ocean 6.0 (GO6.0), and Global Sea Ice 8.0 (GSI8.0). The GC3.1 configuration runs with 85 atmospheric levels, 4 soil levels and 75 ocean levels and can be run with atmospheric horizontal resolutions ranging from 10 - 135 km (at the midlatitudes) with varying resolutions for the ocean component as well. The model top of GC3.1 is 85 km above sea level (Walters et al., 2019).

The GA7.0 configuration, described in Walters et al. (2019), built on previous configurations principally by updating a number of parametrisation schemes including the rain and ice-cloud treatment as well as the convection scheme. Four critical errors were pinpointed and tackled by GA7.0 which include rainfall deficits in the Indian monsoon, temperature

and humidity biases in the tropopause layer, deficiencies in numerical conservation and surface flux biases over the Southern Ocean. The GO6.0 configuration (Storkey et al., 2018) is in turn based on the NEMO ocean model code (version 3.6) and is responsible for determining the sea-ice extent, the ocean mixed-layer depth and deep water formation, amongst other key ocean processes.

In most GCMs, precipitation is a result of two simulated processes. First, precipitation due to grid-scale processes referred to as large-scale precipitation, is estimated by the microphysics, or cloud scheme, that evaluates the cloud fraction and saturation within the grid-box column where precipitation occurs by processes such as warm rain (Walters et al., 2019). The second process that simulates precipitation is associated with convection of varying depths and is considered a sub-grid process calculated by the convection scheme. In GC3.1 the convective scheme follows three stages, according to Walters et al. (2019), first a diagnosis of the boundary layer to establish whether convection should occur at a given time-step and separately diagnosis shallow or deep convection, second, the shallow or deep convection schemes are called and third, a call for mid-level convection.

In other words, the convective scheme first decides whether the thermodynamic profile at each grid-point fits certain parameters that measure the buoyancy of the parcels and vertical velocity profile, which then separates areas of deep and shallow convection. After these routines, the model implements the mid-level convection scheme to remove instabilities from above the shallow convective regions or below the deep convective regions. The closure of the deep convective scheme follows the convective available potential energy (CAPE) closure of Fritsch and Chappell (1980) which regulates the amount, strength and duration of convection based on availability of buoyant energy. In addition, the scheme couples the detrainment rates of plumes to the column relative humidity and buoyancy as described in Derbyshire et al. (2011). Further details of the GC3 configuration including model description and biases can be found in Williams et al. (2018) and Kuhlbrodt et al. (2018).

### 3.2.2 The CMIP6 experiments

The MOHC submitted output from several experiments to various projects part of CMIP6 using different variations of the GC3.1 configuration, i.e., varying horizontal resolution and

**Table 3.2:** Summary of the CMIP6 simulations in this study. The experiment, CMIP activity name, acronym model years, and number of ensemble members used in this study are presented for each simulation.

Model / Resolution	Experiment	Period	Activity	Acronym	Ens.	Reference
HadGEM3 N96	re-industrial control	1850-2350	CMIP/DECK	GC3 N96-pi	1	(Menary et al., 2018; Ridley et al., 2018)
HadGEM3 N216	pre-industrial control	1850-2000	CMIP/Deck	GC3 N216-pi	1	(Menary et al., 2018; Ridley et al., 2019c)
HadGEM3 N96	historical	1979-2014	CMIP/DECK	GC3-hist	4	(Andrews et al., 2020; Ridley et al., 2019b)
HadGEM3 N216	historical	1979-2014	CMIP/DECK	N216-hist	1	(Ridley et al., 2019c)
HadGEM3 N96	amip	1979-2014	CMIP/AMIP	GC3-amip	5	(Ridley et al., 2019a)
HadGEM3 N216	amip	1979-2014	CMIP/AMIP	N216-amip	1	(Ridley et al., 2019a)
HadGEM3 N96	1%CO <sub>2</sub>	1950-2000	CMIP	GC3 1%CO <sub>2</sub>	1	(Ridley et al., 2019a)
HadGEM3 N216	abrupt-4×CO <sub>2</sub>	1950-2000	CMIP	GC3 abrupt-4×CO <sub>2</sub>	1	(Ridley et al., 2019a)
HadGEM3 N96	amip-lwoff	1979-2014	CFMIP	GC3-amip lwoff	1	(Webb et al., 2017)
HadGEM3 N216	amip-m4K	1979-2014	CFMIP	GC3-amip m4K	1	(Webb et al., 2017)
HadGEM3 N96	amip-p4K	1979-2014	CFMIP	GC3-amip p4K	1	(Webb et al., 2017)
HadGEM3 N96	SSP1	2050-2100	ScenarioMIP	GC3 SSP1	1	(O'Neill et al., 2016)
HadGEM3 N96	SSP2	2050-2100	ScenarioMIP	GC3 SSP2	1	(O'Neill et al., 2016)
HadGEM3 N96	SSP5	2050-2100	ScenarioMIP	GC3 SSP5	1	(O'Neill et al., 2016)
HadGEM3 N216	SSP1	2050-2100	ScenarioMIP	N216 SSP1	1	(O'Neill et al., 2016)
HadGEM3 N216	SSP2	2050-2100	ScenarioMIP	N216 SSP2	1	(O'Neill et al., 2016)
HadGEM3 N216	SSP5	2050-2100	ScenarioMIP	N216 SSP5	1	(O'Neill et al., 2016)
UKESM1	pre-industrial control	2060-2600	CMIP	UKESM-pi	1	(Tang et al., 2019b)
UKESM1	historical	1979-2014	CMIP	UKESM-hist	5	(Tang et al., 2019a)
UKESM1	SSP1	2050-2100	ScenarioMIP	UKESM SSP1	1	(O'Neill et al., 2016)
UKESM1	SSP2	2050-2100	ScenarioMIP	UKESM SSP2	1	(O'Neill et al., 2016)
UKESM1	SSP5	2050-2100	ScenarioMIP	UKESM SSP5	1	(O'Neill et al., 2016)

varying representation of processes. The main model, HadGEM3 GC3.1 (hereafter GC3) is the latest version of the HadGEM model, and was run at two horizontal resolutions for CMIP6: a low resolution configuration, labelled as N96, with an atmospheric resolution of  $1.875^\circ \times 1.25^\circ$  and a  $1^\circ$  resolution in the ocean model and a medium resolution configuration, labelled N216, with atmospheric resolutions of  $0.83^\circ \times 0.56^\circ$  and a  $0.25^\circ$  oceanic resolution (Menary et al., 2018).

The dynamical core the GC3.1 configuration, the core of the GC3 submissions to CMIP6, was used to build a slightly different model, one that aims to better capture ocean-biogeochemical, air-soil and air-chemistry interactions, the UKESM1. The UKESM1 was recently developed aiming to improve the UM climate model adding processes of the Earth System (Sellal et al., 2019). These additional components include ocean biogeochemistry with coupled chemical cycles, tropospheric-stratospheric interactive chemistry which aim to better characterise aerosol-cloud and aerosol-radiation interactions (Mulcahy et al., 2018; Sellal et al., 2019). The physical atmosphere-land-ocean-sea-ice core of the HadGEM3 GC3.1 underpins the UKESM1, so that the UKESM1 and the HadGEM3 have the same dynamical core but the UKESM1 has the additional components mentioned above.

This study uses output from several CMIP6 experiments, which are outlined in Table 3.2. First, the pre-industrial control (piControl) simulations, which are run with constant climate forcing that represents the best estimate for pre-industrial (1850) forcing of aerosols and greenhouse gas levels. Second, historical experiments are 164-yr integrations for 1850-2014 that include historical forcings of aerosol, greenhouse gas, volcanic and solar signals since 1850 (Eyring et al., 2016; Andrews et al., 2019). The historical experiments of HadGEM3 and UKESM1 are composed of 4 and 9 ensemble members, respectively, but the results will be presented as the ensemble mean for the 1979-2014 period. These experiments will be referred to as GC3-hist and UKESM1-hist hereafter. For further details, Andrews et al. (2020) extensively describes the historical simulations of HadGEM3-GC3.1.

In contrast to the pre-industrial control experiments, the historical experiments use time-varying aerosol and greenhouse gas emissions and land-use change (Eyring et al., 2016). In Latin-America, land-use change for agricultural purposes has dramatically decreased tree cover in Central America and south-eastern Brazil since the 1950s (Lawrence et al.,

2012), thereby affecting the surface energy balance. The regional emissions of carbonaceous aerosols, nitrogen oxides and volatile organic compound in Latin America are also considered in the historical experiments. These emissions are noteworthy, e.g., due to the impact of black carbon emissions by increased biomass burning in the Amazon and northern Central America (Chuvieco et al., 2008).

The Atmosphere Model Intercomparison Project (AMIP) is a CMIP project that uses atmosphere-only (AO) simulations of the climate to understand the role of SST biases, variability and forcing climate signals. The standard AMIP experiment covers the period 1979-2014 and uses the observed SST fields in this period to drive the models with the same forcing as the historical simulations. Other AMIP experiments may use model-driven SSTs of other experiments to disentangle other processes. This thesis uses the five ensemble members of the AMIP experiment from GC3.

### 3.3 The Moist Static Energy Budget

The moist static energy (MSE) measures the gravitational, sensible heat and latent heat energy within a column and is therefore conserved following air parcels under moist adiabatic processes (Neelin and Su, 2005; Back and Bretherton, 2006; Ma et al., 2019). The use of the MSE budget has proven useful to understand tropical convective phenomena such as ENSO biases (Annamalai, 2020) and teleconnections (Neelin and Su, 2005), tropical cyclones (e.g. Wing et al., 2019), the MJO (Inoue and Back, 2015), axi-symmetric monsoons (e.g. Bordoni and Schneider, 2008) and regional monsoons (e.g. Smyth et al., 2018; Ma et al., 2019), to name a few examples.

The MSE arises from the first law of thermodynamics which decomposes the internal energy of a system into two components: one associated with heat in or out of the system and the second component associated with work done by the system. The MSE, also denoted as  $h$  is given by:

$$h = Lq + C_p T + gz = Lq + s \quad (3.1)$$

where  $C_p$  is the heat capacity at constant pressure,  $T$  is the air temperature,  $L$  is the latent heat of vaporization,  $q$  is the specific humidity and  $s$  is the dry static energy. Equation 3.1 separates the total moist energy of a parcel into a dry component also referred as dry-air enthalpy or heat content (Emanuel, 2007), and the last term is the potential energy associated with the gravitational acceleration. The MSE is conserved under pseudo-adiabatic processes and thus is considered to be a key variable of a moist system, a state variable that is not created or destroyed by convection but rather re-distributed by the coupling of convection with the large-scale circulation (Chou and Neelin, 2004; Emanuel, 2007).

The MSE budget equation can be derived from adding the thermodynamic and moisture equations that arise from the primitive equation (Neelin and Su, 2005), first by writing the material derivative as:

$$\frac{Dh}{dt} = \frac{\partial h}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \vec{u} h_p + \frac{\partial p}{\partial t} \frac{\partial h}{\partial p} \quad (3.2)$$

where  $\vec{u}$  is the horizontal wind vector,  $p$  is the air pressure used as a vertical coordinate so that  $\partial p / \partial t = \omega$ . The vertically integrated budget equation arises by rearranging and integrating equation 3.2 in the pressure coordinate (Back and Bretherton, 2006; Inoue and Back, 2015; Annamalai, 2020), leading to:

$$\left\langle \frac{dh}{dt} \right\rangle = - \left\langle \vec{u} \cdot \nabla_p h \right\rangle - \left\langle \omega \frac{\partial h}{\partial p} \right\rangle + F, \quad (3.3)$$

where the angle brackets  $\langle \rangle$  denote vertical integrals from the surface pressure level until the 100 hPa level, i.e.:

$$\left\langle \right\rangle = \int_{p_0}^{100} dp, \quad (3.4)$$

and the term  $F$  denotes the net forcing of MSE which is given by the surface fluxes and the radiative heating of the column:

$$F = LH + SH + \langle LW \rangle + \langle SW \rangle \quad (3.5)$$

where  $SH$  and  $LH$  are the surface turbulent sensible and latent heat fluxes, respectively, and  $LW$  and  $SW$  are the longwave and shortwave column-integrated heating rates, respectively.

The gross moist stability (GMS or  $\gamma$ ) was derived by Neelin and Held (1987) from the MSE budget in equation 3.3 aiming to quantify the strength of convection to the outflow of energy in the tropics. The GMS has been continuously used (Raymond et al., 2009; Inoue and Back, 2015; Nie and Sobel, 2015; Inoue et al., 2021) as a ratio of a lateral outflow of entropy or energy divided by a measure of the strength of convection per unit area. In this thesis, the vertical component of the GMS, referred to as  $M_v$  is used following (Inoue and Back, 2015):

$$\gamma_v = M_v = \frac{\left\langle \omega \frac{\partial h}{\partial p} \right\rangle}{\left\langle \omega \frac{\partial s}{\partial p} \right\rangle}. \quad (3.6)$$

The  $M_v$  in addition to the MSE budget is used in two chapters of these thesis to understand how the large or regional-scale circulation is related to convection.

# 4

## The American monsoon system in UKESM1 and HadGEM3

This chapter evaluates the representation of the AMS in the contributions to CMIP6 from UKESM1 and HadGEM3. The pre-industrial control, historical and AMIP experiments described in section 3.2 are evaluated for their large and regional-scale biases, as well as their representation of key teleconnection patterns. The simulations show a good representation of the seasonal cycle of temperature, although the historical experiments overestimate the observed summer temperature in the Amazon, Mexico and Central America by more than 1.5 K. The seasonal cycle of rainfall and general characteristics of the North American Monsoon in all the simulations agree well with observations, suggesting a notable improvement from previous versions of the HadGEM model. The models reasonably simulate the bimodal regime of precipitation in southern Mexico, Central America and the Caribbean known as the midsummer drought, although with a stronger than observed difference between the two peaks of precipitation and the dry period. Austral summer biases in the modelled Atlantic Intertropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ), cloud cover and regional temperature patterns are noteworthy and influence the simulated regional rainfall in the South American Monsoon. These biases are associated with an overestimation of precipitation in southeastern Brazil and an underestimation of precipitation in the Amazon which are greatly reduced in the AMIP simulations, highlighting that an accurate simulation

of the Atlantic SSTs is key for representing precipitation in the South American Monsoon. El Niño Southern Oscillation (ENSO) teleconnections, of precipitation and temperature, to the AMS are reasonably simulated by all the experiments. The precipitation responses to the positive and negative phase of ENSO in subtropical America are linear in both pre-industrial and historical experiments, in contrast to observations. Overall, the biases in UKESM1 and the low resolution configuration of GC3 are very similar for precipitation, ITCZs and the Walker circulation, i.e., the inclusion of Earth System processes appears to make no significant difference for the representation of the AMS rainfall. In contrast, the medium resolution HadGEM3 N216 simulation outperforms the low-resolution simulations due to improved SSTs and circulation.

## 4.1 Introduction

The response of regional monsoons to greenhouse forcing remains an open question (Zhou et al., 2016; Pascale et al., 2019) because the observational record is too short to exhibit significant trends but also because biases in GCMs increase uncertainty in future model projections. Although the thermodynamical response to greenhouse forcing in tropics seems to be relatively well constrained, the dynamical response is less clear (Shepherd, 2014). The American Monsoon System (AMS), as most monsoon regions is shaped by regional dynamical features which makes the dynamical biases particularly relevant when understanding the precipitation response to forcing in a monsoon region.

In spite of current recognition as a monsoon, the AMS has received less attention by the modelling community compared to the Asian or African monsoons. The assessment of climate models in monsoon regions is key to understand current and future changes to the water cycle in tropics. However, in the AMS, model assessments are usually only done in a handful of studies per CMIP phase. These studies only provide a wide view of the biases of each generation of models while usually highlighting which biases have improved and which biases remain from previous model generations (see e.g. Geil et al., 2013; Ryu and Hayhoe, 2014). However, a deeper evaluation of individual models can be used to provide better

insight into the processes associated with climatological biases in the large-scale circulation and ultimately better understand the causes for the model biases in AMS rainfall.

For example, in the South American Monsoon, CMIP5 models improved from CMIP3 in the simulated distribution of precipitation during monsoon maturity and exhibited an improved seasonal cycle (Jones and Carvalho, 2013; Yin et al., 2013). However, biases in the South American Monsoon, e.g., the underestimation of rainfall in the central Amazon, have persisted from the first generation of GCMs up until CMIP5 (Li et al., 2006; Yin et al., 2013). The geographic distribution of rainfall during austral fall and several characteristics of the South Atlantic Convergence Zone are also poorly represented in CMIP5. However, these studies provided little evidence as for the reasons for the improvements or the remaining biases in the models. A clear motivation to evaluate models in the South American Monsoon is that the accurate simulation of the geographic distribution and seasonality of rainfall in the Amazon rainforest is a relevant issue due to the impact of the rainforest on climate and society (e.g. Li et al., 2006; Malhi et al., 2009; Yin et al., 2013) and thus more research on the representation of the South American Monsoon is warranted.

Climate research in recent decades has aimed to reduce uncertainty in climate projections by improving GCMs, but different approaches taken by modelling centres are seemingly disconnected (Jakob, 2014). One approach is to reduce horizontal grid spacing down to km resolution to rely less on parametrizations and more on physical laws to represent clouds and convection (Palmer and Stevens, 2019). A second approach aims to include new explicit representation of Earth System processes to better characterise complex land-atmosphere-ocean biogeochemical cycles that may provide a better constraint on large-scale aspects of the climate such as climate sensitivity, a parameter that depends on the carbon cycle (Marotzke et al., 2017; Sellar et al., 2019; Andrews et al., 2019). Finally, recent modelling centres have chosen to include stochastic parametrisations of sub-grid processes since this approach has improved seasonal forecasts and may therefore improve climate projections (Palmer, 2019).

Model validation and assessment is important to analyse the effect of new parametrisations and to highlight missing processes but also evaluate which route provides the more substantial model improvement, stochastic parametrisations, increased resolution or Earth System processes. The focus of this chapter is then to evaluate the CMIP6 experiments from

HadGEM3 GC3.1 (GC3) and UKESM1 in the AMS. In this chapter and remainder of the thesis, the AMS is considered to be composed of the North and South American monsoon systems, while also including the Midsummer drought region of southern Mexico and Central America as part of the AMS (as in e.g. Vera et al., 2006; Pascale et al., 2019).

The remainder of this chapter is organised as follows. The following section described the data and methods used in this chapter. Section 4.3 compares modelled and observed climatological temperature, sea-level pressure and low-level wind fields, whereas section 4.4 analyses the Pacific and Atlantic ITCZs. Section 4.5 analyses the spatial and temporal characteristics of rainfall and convection in the AMS while section 4.6 documents the simulated teleconnections of ENSO. A summary and discussion of the results is provided at the end of the chapter.

## 4.2 Methods and data

The model assessment of this chapter will use a range of experiments from the MOHC. The piControl experiments from GC3 and GC3 N216 are used to evaluate the role of resolution whereas the historical experiments from UKESM1 and GC3 are used to evaluate model skill in reproducing the observed period whereas the AMIP experiment from GC3 is used to highlight the role of SST biases. The historical experiment data is used only in the 1970-2014 period whereas the whole pre-industrial and AMIP available data is used. All the datasets used in this chapter are thoroughly described in chapter 3 but in summary in this chapter, the surface or near-surface air temperature data is taken from the CRU4 dataset and ERA5, whereas precipitation is used from the different datasets described in the previous chapter. The dynamical features such as wind speed and vertical velocity are taken from ERA5.

The climate indices of ENSO and the QBO used in this chapter were obtained by the following process. For ENSO, the deseasonalized and detrended time-series of the area-averaged SSTs (EN3.4 region [190-240°W, 5°S-5°N]) is used as an index to composite months into positive, negative and neutral phases. A month is determined to be in the positive, El Niño, phase when the index is higher than +0.65 K and a negative phase, La Niña, when the index is more negative than -0.65 K. A neutral month is found where the magnitude of

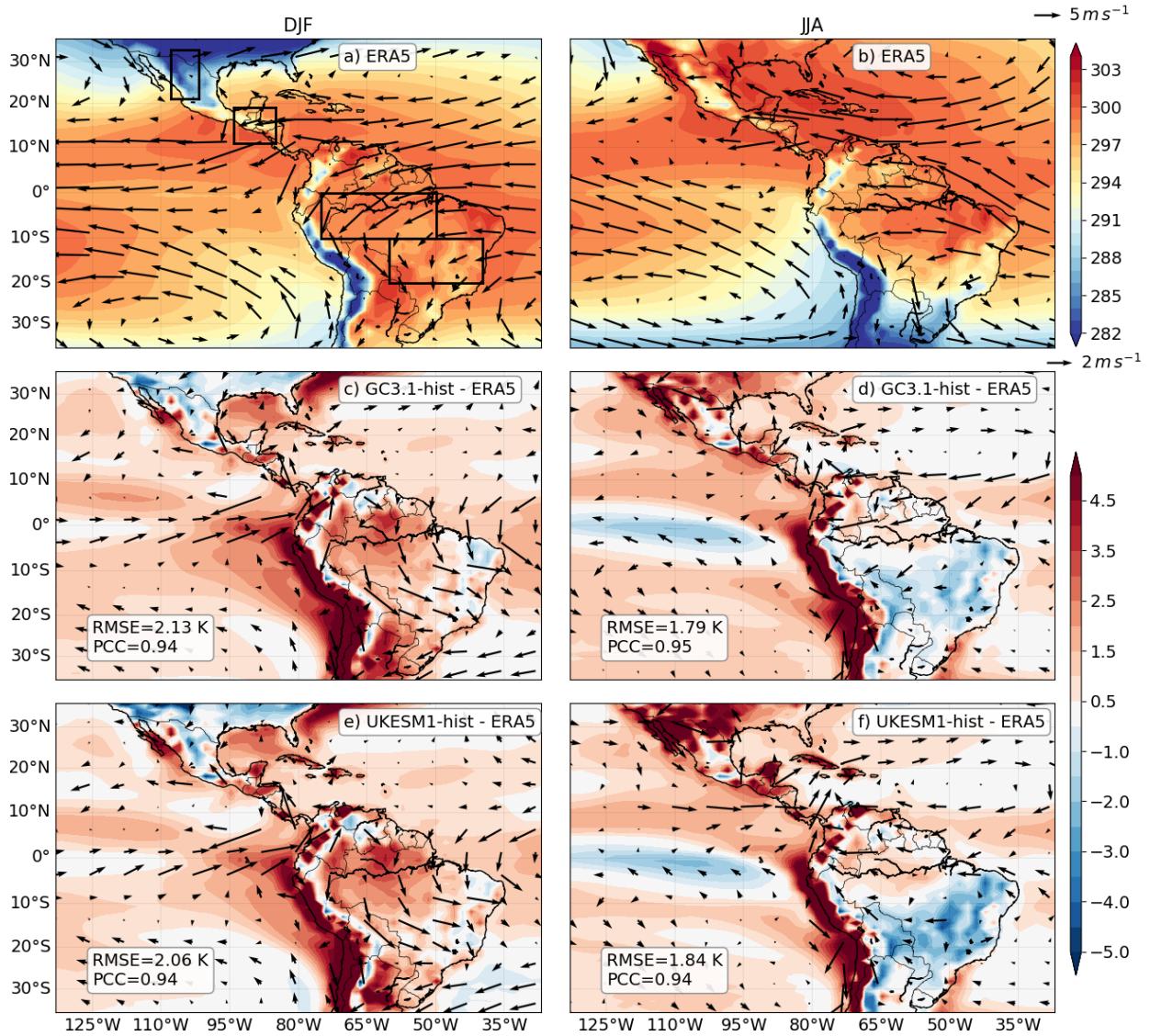
the index is smaller than 0.5 K. Other indices, including the use of a 5-month running mean (Trenberth et al., 1998), were tested without significantly changing the results. Previous studies (e.g. Menary et al., 2018; Kuhlbrodt et al., 2018) showed that the MOHC models reasonably simulate several characteristics of ENSO such as the period and SST patterns.

Similarly, for the QBO, the deseasonalized and detrended time-series of the equatorially averaged [10°S-10°N] zonal-mean zonal wind at the 70 hPa level is used as the QBO index for both reanalysis and model data. The westerly phase of the QBO (QBOw) is determined when the index is greater than  $2 \text{ m s}^{-1}$  and the easterly phase (QBOe) when the index is less than  $-2 \text{ m s}^{-1}$ .

### 4.3 Climatological temperature and low-level wind biases

This section evaluates the simulated climatological temperature and low-level wind structure in the AMS region. The climatological representation of the near-surface air temperature and low-level winds in the models is compared to ERA5 in Figures 4.1 and 4.2, the climatology of DJF and JJA of ERA5 is shown in Figure 4.1a, b. The biases of the historical experiments, computed as the differences between the model and observed fields, are shown in Figures 4.1c, d) for GC3-hist and e, f) for UKESM1-hist. Only statistically significant differences are shown, according to a Welch t-test (Wilks, 2011), which accounts for the difference in sample size and variance between model and observations/reanalysis data. The significance for simulations with multiple ensemble members is estimated first for each ensemble member and then combined into a single probability or p-value using Fisher's method (Fisher, 1992). Pattern correlations and root-mean square error (RMSE) are shown in Figures 4.1c-f and in Table 4.1.

During DJF, the simulations show a colder-than-observed sub-tropical North America and a warm bias over the Amazon ( $\approx +3.5 \text{ K}$ ). The west coast of South America also shows a significant warm bias ( $> +4 \text{ K}$ ) in the historical simulations. The simulated circulation in austral summer in South America has a significant bias in the easterly flow coming from the equatorial and subtropical Atlantic. The low-level wind biases suggest a weaker easterly flow from the Atlantic into southeastern Brazil but also a strong southward flow from northern to



**Figure 4.1:** (a, b) Temperature (color-contours in K) and wind speed (vectors) at 850 hPa DJF and JJA climatologies in ERA5. The biases are shown as the differences between the ensemble mean from the historical experiment of (c, d) GC3 and (e, f) UKESM1 and ERA5. The climatogies and biases are shown for (a, c, e) boreal winter (DJF) and (b, d, f) boreal summer (JJA). Only differences statistically significant to the 95% level are shown, according to a Welch t-test for each field. The key for the size of the wind vectors is shown in the top right corner of panels b) and d). The root-mean square error (RMSE) and pattern correlation coefficient (PCC) are shown on the bottom left of c-f.

southern South America. The South America Low-Level Jet, i.e., the low-level northwesterly flow in Bolivia, observed in Figure 1a, is stronger in the simulations. This stronger than observed jet is suggestive of a stronger moisture transport to the La Plata Basin, which has been associated with a drying of the Amazon and positive precipitation anomalies at

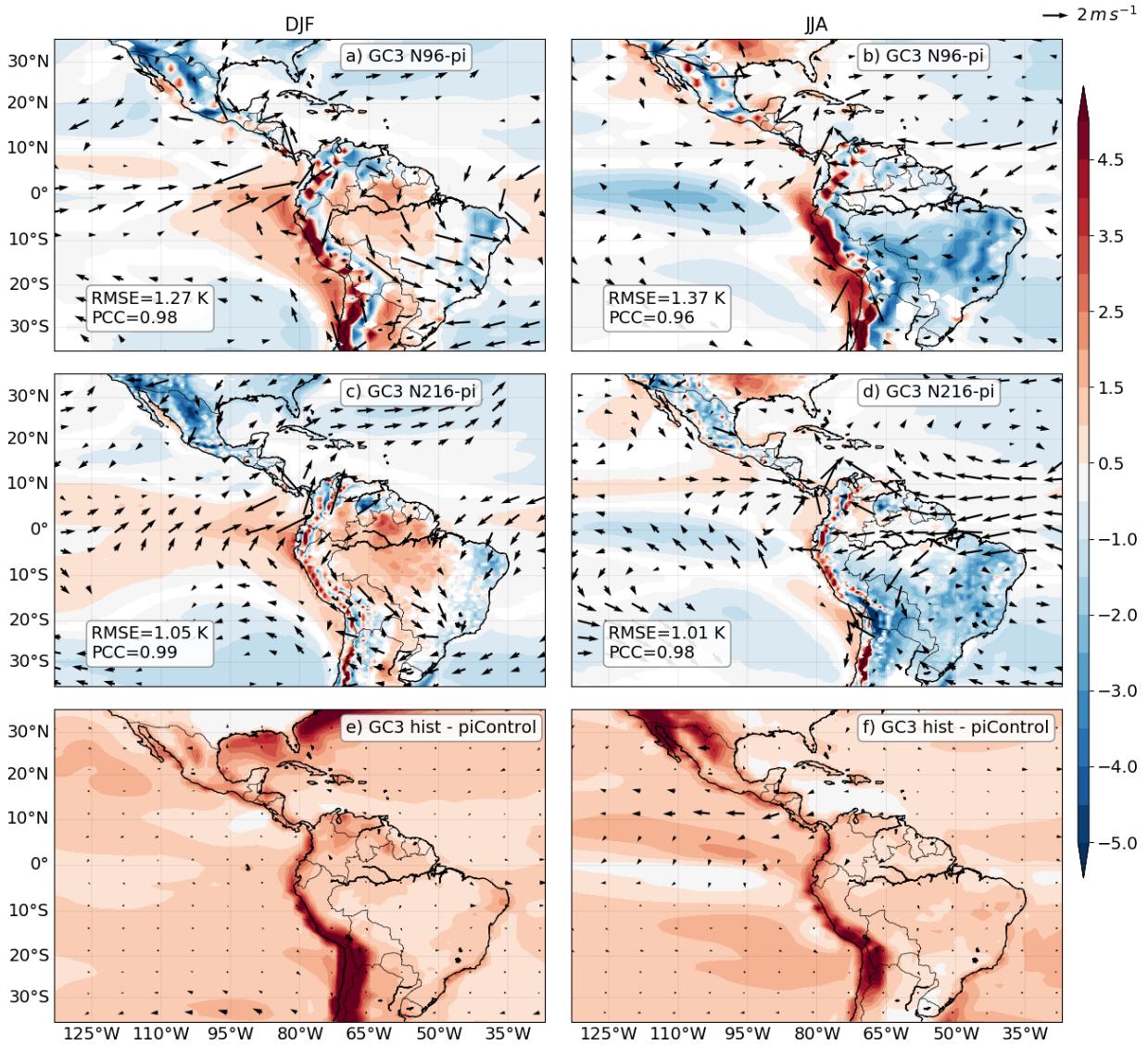
**Table 4.1:** Root-mean square error (RMSE) and pattern correlation coefficients (PCC) for each season and each model experiment. Near surface air temperature ( $t2m$ ), wind components ( $u$  and  $v$ ) and mean-sea level pressure ( $mslp$ ) are assessed against ERA-5 and precipitation ( $pr$ ) against TRMM.

Variable	Experiment	DJF	DJF	MAM	MAM	JJA	JJA	SON	SON
		RMSE	PCC	RMSE	PCC	RMSE	PCC	RMSE	PCC
t2m	GC3 N96	1.28	0.98	1.3	0.96	1.38	0.96	1.31	0.96
t2m	GC3 N216	1.05	0.99	1.07	0.98	1.02	0.98	0.98	0.98
t2m	GC3 Hist	2.06	0.94	1.75	0.93	1.73	0.94	2.05	0.92
t2m	UKESM-hist	2.03	0.94	1.77	0.93	1.8	0.94	2.0	0.93
t2m	GC3 AMIP	1.17	0.98	1.12	0.97	1.2	0.97	1.2	0.97
u	GC3 N96	0.78	0.99	0.59	0.99	0.9	0.98	0.87	0.98
u	GC3 N216	0.78	0.99	0.59	0.99	0.9	0.98	0.87	0.98
u	GC3 Hist	1.02	0.98	1.04	0.97	0.92	0.98	0.84	0.98
u	UKESM-hist	1.04	0.98	1.01	0.97	0.91	0.98	0.82	0.98
u	GC3 AMIP	0.96	0.98	0.77	0.99	1.18	0.97	1.09	0.96
v	GC3 N96	0.75	0.93	0.66	0.93	0.65	0.95	0.59	0.94
v	GC3 N216	0.6	0.96	0.5	0.95	0.57	0.96	0.54	0.94
v	GC3 Hist	0.76	0.94	0.72	0.92	0.66	0.95	0.59	0.94
v	UKESM-hist	0.75	0.93	0.69	0.92	0.65	0.95	0.6	0.93
v	GC3 AMIP	0.67	0.95	0.52	0.95	0.68	0.94	0.61	0.93
mslp	GC3 N96	1.33	0.96	1.03	0.97	1.15	0.96	0.95	0.97
mslp	GC3 N216	1.11	0.97	0.9	0.97	1.1	0.96	0.89	0.97
mslp	GC3 Hist	1.31	0.97	1.12	0.96	1.08	0.96	0.94	0.97
mslp	UKESM-hist	1.4	0.97	1.15	0.96	1.14	0.95	0.99	0.97
mslp	GC3 AMIP	1.15	0.97	0.87	0.97	1.09	0.96	0.93	0.97
pr	GC3 N96	2.02	0.79	2.24	0.71	1.62	0.9	1.69	0.86
pr	GC3 N216	1.58	0.88	1.72	0.85	1.4	0.93	1.57	0.89
pr	GC3 Hist	2.05	0.78	2.49	0.64	1.69	0.88	1.69	0.86
pr	UKESM-hist	1.96	0.8	2.39	0.66	1.71	0.88	1.62	0.87
pr	GC3 AMIP	1.42	0.9	1.61	0.88	1.95	0.88	1.8	0.88

the exit region of the jet (Marengo et al., 2012; Jones and Carvalho, 2018).

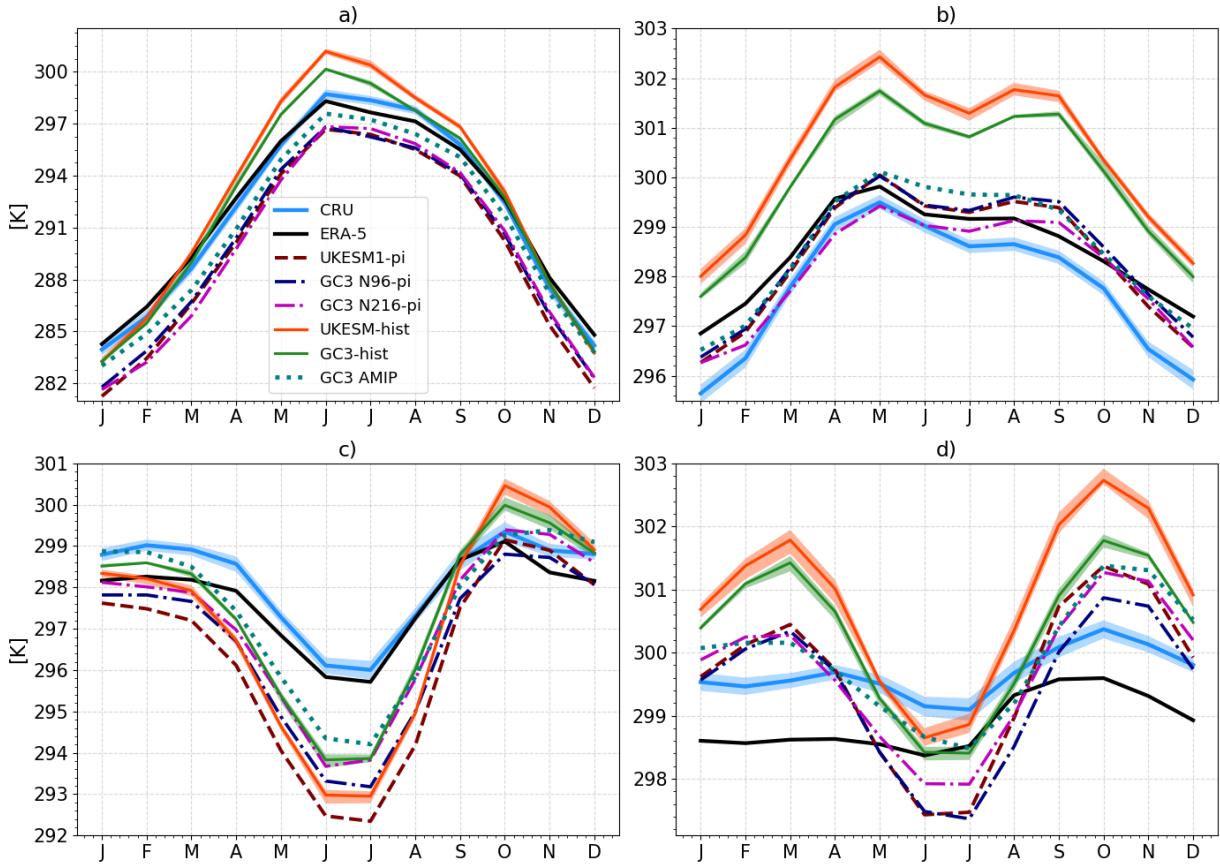
In turn, in boreal summer (Figures 4.1d, f), positive temperature biases are observed in southwestern North America ( $> +3.5$  K), which are higher in UKESM1-hist than in GC3-hist. The easterly flow west of Central America has a negative bias in UKESM1 suggesting a weaker flow that crosses from the Caribbean Sea into the East Pacific Ocean. Also in JJA, the simulated East Pacific surface temperatures are colder than observed for both historical experiments. The inclusion of Earth System processes appears to make no improvement on the low-level circulation biases.

The piControl simulations (Figures 4.2a-d) have some similar biases to the historical



**Figure 4.2:** As in Figure 4.1, but showing the differences between the piControl simulations of (a, b) GC3 N96-pi and (c, d) GC3 N216-pi, and ERA5. (e, f) show the statistically significant differences between the historical (1979-2014) and piControl experiments of GC3. The RMSE and PCC are shown on the bottom left of a-d.

simulations. In DJF, the piControl simulations show a similar but smaller positive bias in the Amazon than the historical experiments, as well as a similar bias in the circulation in South America, with the smallest biases in GC3 N216 piControl. In JJA, the piControl simulations do not show the positive temperature bias in northwestern North America. However, the bias in the zonal wind over the easternmost Pacific is present in both piControl and historical simulations.



**Figure 4.3:** Monthly-mean temperature in the (a) North American Monsoon [ $19\text{--}35^{\circ}\text{N}, 110\text{--}103^{\circ}\text{W}$ ], (b) the Midsummer drought [ $11\text{--}19^{\circ}\text{N}, 95\text{--}85^{\circ}\text{W}$ ] (c) Eastern Brazil [ $20\text{--}10^{\circ}\text{S}, 60\text{--}40^{\circ}\text{W}$ ] and (d) the Amazon basin [ $-10\text{--}0^{\circ}\text{S}, 75\text{--}50^{\circ}\text{W}$ ] regions. The shadings for the CRU dataset represents the observational uncertainties and for the historical simulations the shading is the ensemble spread. The regions for this plot are shown in Figure 4.1a.

Figures 4.2e, f show the difference between the historical and piControl experiment of GC3, illustrating the response to historical forcing in GC3. The temperature response in austral summer in South America is observed as 1.5 K whereas in JJA in North America temperatures were 4 K higher in the historical experiment than in the piControl. A very similar temperature pattern response to historical forcing was observed for UKESM1 (not shown) although of slightly different magnitude. The only significant difference in low-level winds, as a response to historical forcing, are the easterlies in the East Pacific Ocean during JJA, which are stronger in the historical simulation.

The seasonal cycle of temperature in key regions (depicted in Figure 4.1a) of the AMS is shown in Figure 4.3, comparing the simulations to ERA5 and the CRU4 dataset. The

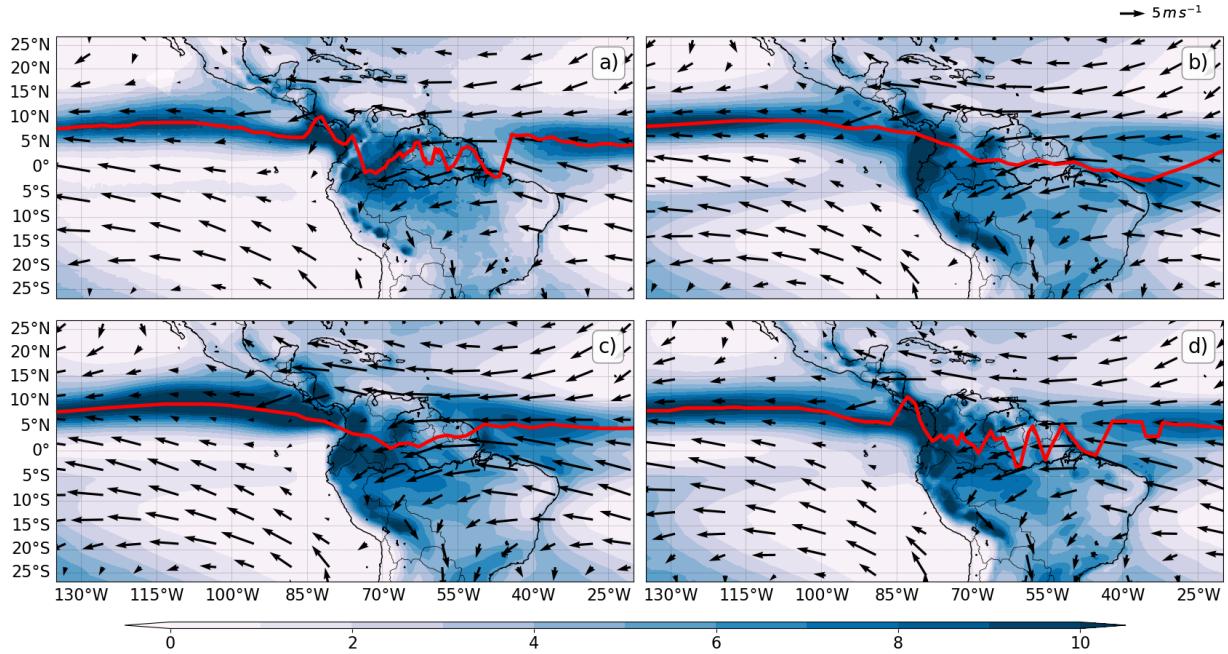
temperature in the North American Monsoon region ranges from the boreal winter mean temperature of 12°C to a maximum in June close to 27°C. Although the piControl simulated temperatures are colder than observed throughout the year, the models reasonably reproduce the seasonal cycle, which may be relevant for the simulated monsoon onset timing and strength (Turrent and Cavazos, 2009). The historical experiments notably show a colder than observed winter and a warmer than observed summer.

The piControl simulations show a colder-than-observed winter in southern Mexico and northern Central America. The historical experiments show a warming signal, when compared to the piControl simulations, of about 1.5 K in winter and 2 K in the summer in this region. In spite of these biases, all the experiments follow closely the seasonal cycle in North and Central America.

However, the seasonal cycle in South American regions (Figures 4.3 c, d) of southeastern Brazil and the central Amazon shows notable temperature biases. The simulations show a stronger than observed seasonal cycle, especially the historical experiments. For example, the modelled temperature difference between late austral winter and spring was  $\approx 4$  K whereas the observed temperature varies by less than 1 K in the same period. The models show a warm bias in the Amazon region (Fig. 4.3 d) which peaks in austral spring (SON), during the development of the monsoon (Marengo et al., 2012). In southeastern Brazil, the seasonal cycle is reasonably well reproduced but with a significant cold bias throughout the year which maximizes during austral winter (JJA), as models (e.g. UKESM1) simulate a temperature 4 K lower than observed. In all panels of Figure 4.3, the historical experiments show a significant warming signal as a response to historical forcing, which is generally stronger in UKESM1 than in GC3.

## 4.4 The Atlantic and Pacific ITCZs and the SACZ

The AMS is intertwined with the seasonal migration of the East Pacific and Atlantic ITCZ as the ITCZ largely determines regions of ascending and descending motions, moisture transport and the hemispheric energy balance (Oueslati and Bellon, 2013; Li and Xie, 2014; Zhou et al., 2016; Cai et al., 2019). In particular, the North American monsoon and MSD are mostly

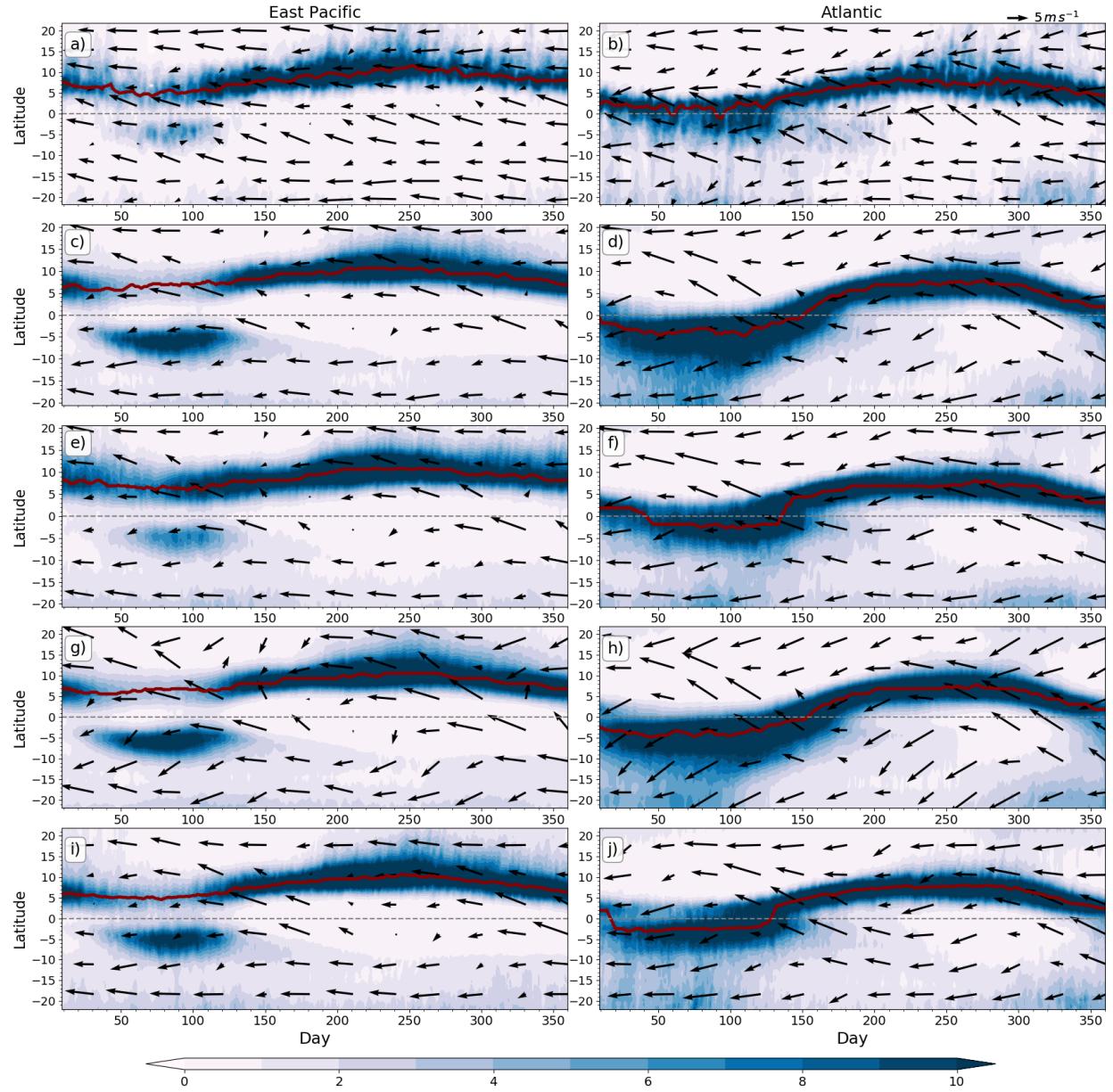


**Figure 4.4:** Climatological precipitation [ $\text{mm day}^{-1}$ ] and low-level wind speed (850-hPa) in (a) TRMM and ERA-5, (b) the ensemble-mean UKESM-historical, (c) GC3-amip and (d) GC3 N216-pi. The red line highlights the maximum rainfall for each longitude as a proxy for the position of the ITCZ.

influenced by the East Pacific ITCZ whereas the South American monsoon is affected by the strength and position of the Atlantic ITCZ (Yoon and Zeng, 2010; Marengo et al., 2012).

Figure 4.4 shows the observed and modelled climatological rainfall and the ITCZ climatological positions. Three simulations are shown: the ensemble-mean UKESM1-historical, the ensemble mean GC3 AMIP and GC3 N216-pi. Other simulations are not shown as all the coupled low resolution simulations showed very similar precipitation and ITCZ characteristics whereas the AMIP and medium-resolution experiments showed notable differences.

The climatological ITCZ in TRMM (Figure 4.4a) is found, on average, at  $8^\circ\text{N}$  in the East Pacific and at  $6^\circ\text{N}$  in the Atlantic. All the simulations reasonably represent the climatological position of the East Pacific (EP) ITCZ; however, the modelled Atlantic ITCZ near the coast of Brazil is found south of the equator at  $3^\circ\text{S}$  in the coupled model simulations. The location of the ITCZ in GC3 N216-pi and the spatial distribution of rainfall is more consistent with TRMM dataset than the rest of experiments. Rainfall near the Amazon river mouth is significantly larger in the low resolution simulations than in the TRMM dataset. However, the GC3 AMIP shows the best agreement with TRMM in ITCZ position and rainfall distribution.



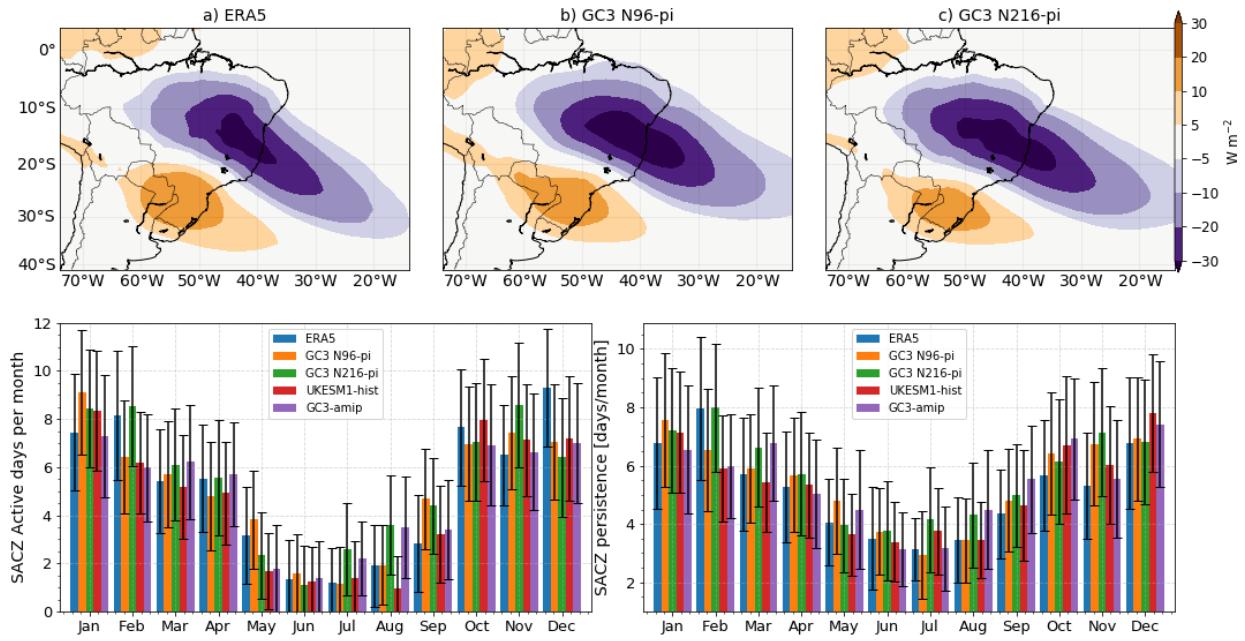
**Figure 4.5:** Time-Latitude plot of daily mean rainfall (colour contours) and low-level wind speed (850 hPa) longitudinally averaged over the (a, c, e, g) East Pacific [ $150^{\circ}\text{W}$ - $100^{\circ}\text{W}$ ] and (b, d, f, h) Atlantic [ $40^{\circ}\text{W}$ - $20^{\circ}\text{W}$ ] Oceans. (a, b) show rainfall from TRMM and winds from ERA-5, (c, d) the ensemble-mean UKESM-historical, (e, f) GC3 AMIP, (g, h) N96-pi and (i, j) GC3 N216-pi. The solid red line shows the ITCZ as the latitude of maximum precipitation.

The seasonal cycle of the ITCZ location, precipitation rates and low-level winds in both basins are shown in Figure 4.5, for TRMM, UKESM1-hist, GC3 AMIP, GC3 N96-pi and GC3 N216-pi. The EP ITCZ in observations (Fig. 4.5a) migrates southwards during the first days of the year and is weakest and at its southernmost position at  $5^{\circ}\text{N}$  around day 100

(mid-April). During boreal spring, the EP ITCZ migrates northward reaching a peak latitude and maximum rainfall at  $10^{\circ}\text{N}$  by day 250, or early September. The EP ITCZ during boreal winter is weaker than during the rest of the seasons. The low-level winds are predominantly easterly, which are stronger away from the ITCZ and weaker and convergent near the ITCZ position. The position and seasonal migration of the EP ITCZ is reasonably well represented in the four simulations (Figs. 4.5c, e, g, i), but a noticeable bias in precipitation is observed in boreal winter south of the equator in the coupled simulations. The modelled low-level winds in the coupled simulations show significant biases near the ITCZ. These wind biases are observed as stronger wind vectors converging toward the ITCZ during boreal summer and spring and stronger wind vectors diverging away from the equator during boreal winter.

The observed Atlantic ITCZ (Figure 4.5b) has a similar seasonal cycle to the EP ITCZ. The Atlantic ITCZ is close to  $4^{\circ}\text{N}$  at day 1 and migrates southwards at the start of the year reaching its southernmost position at  $0^{\circ}$  at the end of March. During boreal spring, the Atlantic ITCZ migrates north, reaching  $8^{\circ}\text{N}$  at the start of boreal summer. In contrast to the EP ITCZ, the maximum rainfall in the Atlantic ITCZ does not weaken during any season. The boreal winter position of the modelled ITCZ is displaced south with respect to the observations. The simulated ITCZ crosses south of the equator during boreal winter, as high rainfall rates above  $12 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  covering the  $10\text{S}-0$  region. After boreal spring, the modelled ITCZ crosses back north of the equator and matches the observed ITCZ reasonably well for boreal summer and fall. Low-level wind vectors near the Atlantic ITCZ (Figures 4.5f and h) suggest a simulated southerly bias north of the equator and a stronger northerly flow south of  $10^{\circ}\text{S}$ .

The biases in the Atlantic ITCZ can also be observed in the overturning circulation (not shown) and the associated Walker circulation as significant negative  $\omega$  and  $q$  biases just north and south of equatorial South America indicative of weaker convective activity. The simulated Atlantic Ocean has a biased negative  $\omega$  (more ascent) south of the equator and a positive  $\omega$  bias (less ascent) north of the equator in the low resolution simulations. These biases in the Atlantic ITCZ and overturning circulations described above were found to be of similar magnitude in all the coupled model simulations run at lower resolution,



**Figure 4.6:** (a, b, c) OLR anomalies during active South Atlantic Convergence Zone (SACZ) events. (d, e) Frequency of active SACZ days and length of active SACZ events in reanalysis and model data, the standard deviation is shown as the error bar. The SACZ active days are constructed by first computing the first EOF of the monthly-mean deseasonalized OLR and then the daily OLR, previously filtered to remove periods higher than 99 days, is projected on the EOF pattern to produce a time-series of pseudo-principal components. Active SACZ days are found when this time-series of pseudo-PCs is greater than 1, and the persistence is measured as the number of continuous days where the time-series is greater than 1.

both historical and piControl experiments, however, these biases improved in the medium resolution GC3 N216-pi and in the AMIP simulations (Figures 4.5f, j).

The South Atlantic Convergence Zone (SACZ) is a northwest-southeast oriented band of convection and is a prominent influence on the South American Monsoon mean and extreme rainfall (Carvalho et al., 2004; Marengo et al., 2012; Jorgetti et al., 2014). The SACZ is primarily characterized by convergence oriented northwest-to-southeast that promotes rainfall in southeastern Brazil. The position of the SACZ and strength are an important factor for variability of the South American monsoon on different temporal and spatial scales (Carvalho et al., 2004; Marengo et al., 2012; Jorgetti et al., 2014).

The SACZ in this simulations, defined by the outgoing long-wave radiation empirical orthogonal function analysis (Figure 4.6) closely resembles the pattern found in ERA5. The SACZ active days and the persistence of the SACZ are also compared and found to be in

relatively good agreement between reanalysis and model datasets. The simulations from UKESM1, and GC3 N96 and N216 appear to reasonably simulate the spatial pattern of active SACZ days characterized by the low OLR in southeastern Brazil and higher OLR in the La Plata Basin. Similarly, the seasonal cycle of the frequency and persistence of SACZ active days is very well represented by the models with peak activity found from November through January and very little activity during austral winter. The impact that an accurate representation of the SACZ activity in GCMs has for representing short-scale variability of the South American Monsoon System is an open question, as the SACZ is rarely assessed in CMIP analyses.

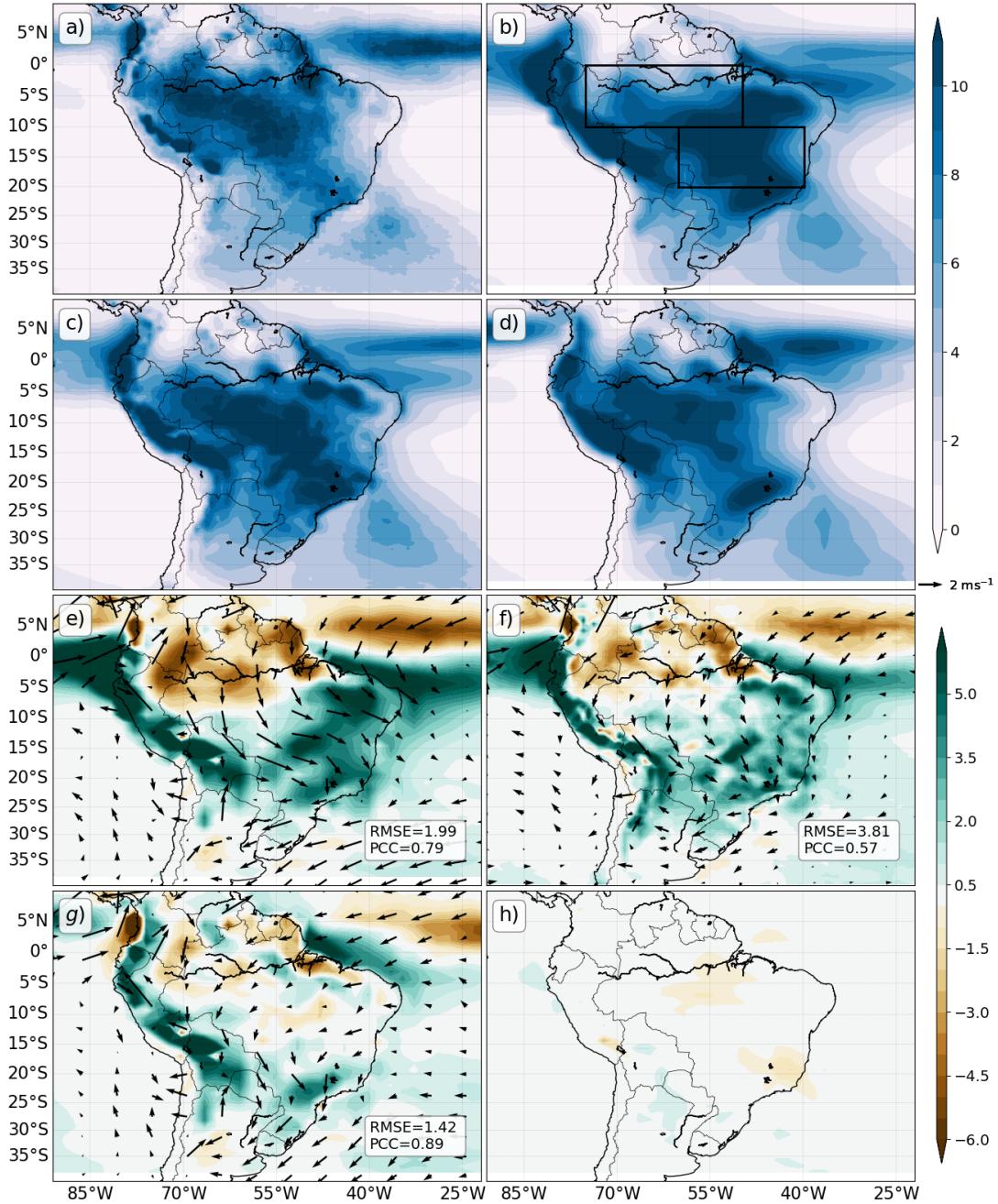
## 4.5 Precipitation and convection in the AMS

### 4.5.1 Mean seasonal precipitation

The austral summer (DJF) rainfall distribution in South America of the TRMM dataset and the simulations for GC3 N216-pi, UKESM-hist and GC3-amip (Figure 4.7) shows several noteworthy biases in the coupled simulations. The maximum austral summer rainfall in TRMM (Figure 4.7a) is found as a northwest-southeast oriented band of precipitation from the core Amazon region into southeastern Brazil, which is related to the SACZ. The biases are illustrated (Figures 4.7e-h) as the precipitation difference between the simulations and TRMM.

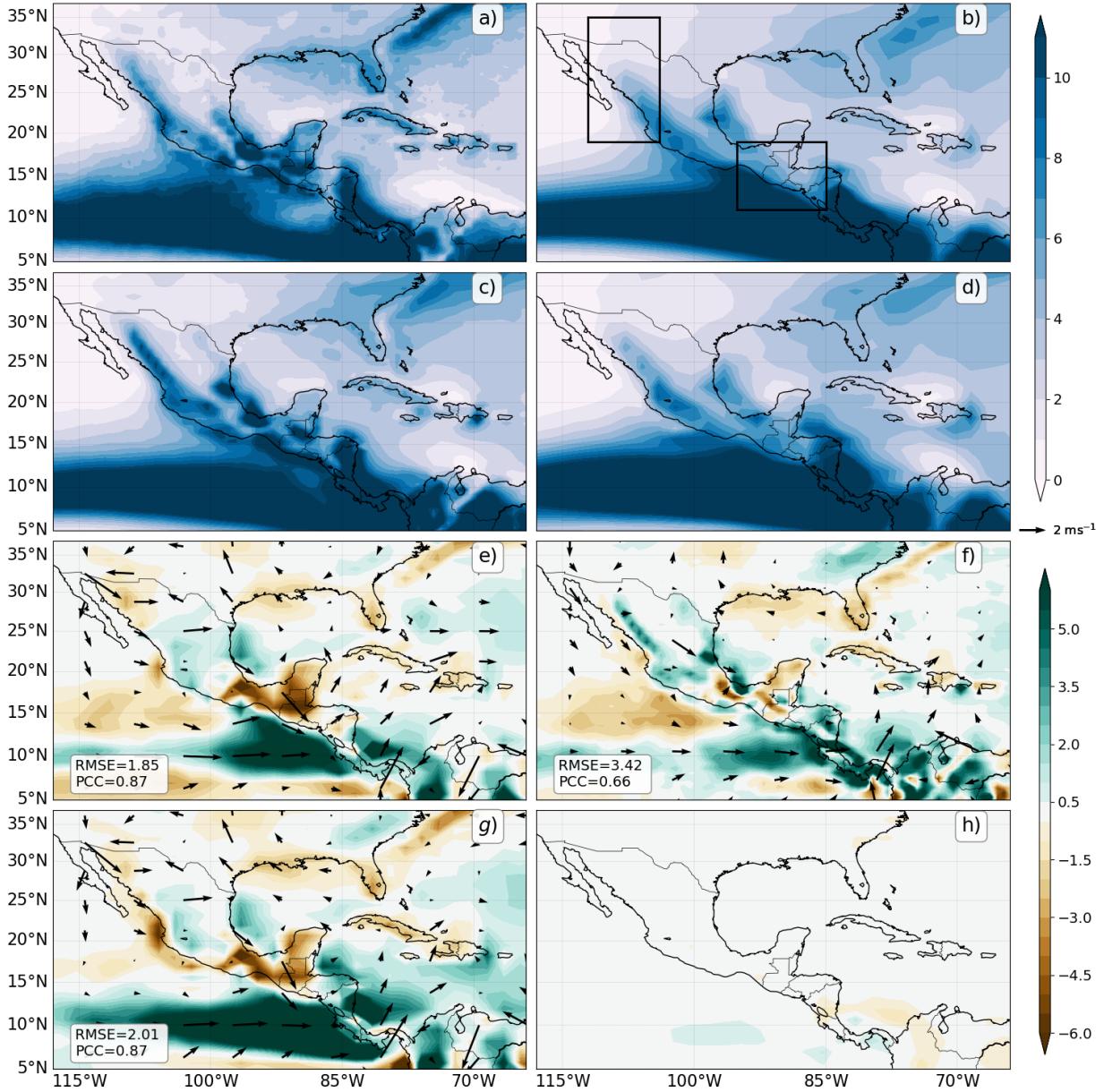
The coupled simulations show three main biases. Rainfall in the Atlantic ITCZ in these simulations is displaced southwards, observed as positive ( $+5 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$ ) biases south of the equator and negative biases ( $-5 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$ ) north of the equator in the Atlantic. Second, the models underestimate rainfall in the core Amazon basin by  $-3 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  on average, and the third major bias is that rainfall in southeastern Brazil is overestimated by more than  $+5 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$ , approximately +100% of the observed rainfall in this region.

The precipitation biases are associated with a stronger northerly flow in South America, transporting moisture from the Amazon into southeastern Brazil and the La Plata Basin. The magnitude of these biases is smaller in GC3 N216 (Figure 4.7f) than in the low resolution simulations, such as UKESM1-hist. The ensemble mean GC3 AMIP (Figure 4.7d) shows



**Figure 4.7:** DJF mean rainfall [ $\text{mm day}^{-1}$ ] from (a) TRMM, (b) UKESM1-historical, (c) GC3 N216-pi and (d) GC3-amip. (e, f, g) show the statistically significant differences between panels (b, c, d) and (a) TRMM, respectively. (h) Precipitation difference between UKESM1-historical and UKESM1-pi, only statistically significant differences (95%) confidence level is shown. The biases in the 850-hPa winds are shown as vectors.

a better representation of the austral summer rainfall and circulation patterns, removing the main circulation biases (Figure 4.7g) of the coupled simulations. The response to



**Figure 4.8:** As in Figure 4.7 but for JJA in the northern part of subtropical America.

historical forcing, illustrated by the difference between UKESM1-hist and UKESM1-pi (Figure 4.7h), is much weaker than the magnitude of the biases and is characterized by a weak drying of the Amazon and southeastern Brazil.

The modelled and observed JJA mean rainfall and biases for Mexico and Central America are shown in Figure 4.8. The main feature is the East Pacific (EP) ITCZ which extends north to  $15^{\circ}\text{N}$  near the western coast of Mexico as a broad band of rainfall ( $>11 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$ ).

The modelled EP ITCZ (Figures 4.8e, f, g) rainfall is overestimated by more than 5 mm day<sup>-1</sup>, especially in GC3-amip. This wet bias is associated with a westerly bias in the low-level circulation, suggesting a weaker flow from the Caribbean into the East Pacific.

The North American Monsoon can be observed as a band of precipitation across western Mexico. In the core monsoon region, near the Sierra Madre Occidental (Adams and Comrie, 1997; Zhou et al., 2016), the JJA-mean rainfall is higher than 8 mm day<sup>-1</sup>. The distribution of rainfall in the North American Monsoon region is relatively well represented in all the simulations, as only a moderate wet bias (+2 mm day<sup>-1</sup>) in western Mexico is observed. The northernmost part of the North American Monsoon (southwestern US) is best simulated by GC3 N216-pi, as the other simulations show a dry bias in this region. The low-resolution simulations (Figure 4.8e) underestimate rainfall (-5 mm day<sup>-1</sup>) over land in southern Mexico, Guatemala and Belize. Rainfall in the Caribbean islands and Florida is underestimated (-1 mm day<sup>-1</sup>) in all simulations.

In most cases for JJA in this region, the precipitation and wind biases were reduced in the high-resolution simulation (Figure 4.8f) and little-to-no difference was observed between UKESM1-hist and GC3-hist (not shown). The precipitation response to historical forcing is much lower than the biases (Figure 4.8h) with no significant precipitation differences over land due to the historical forcing.

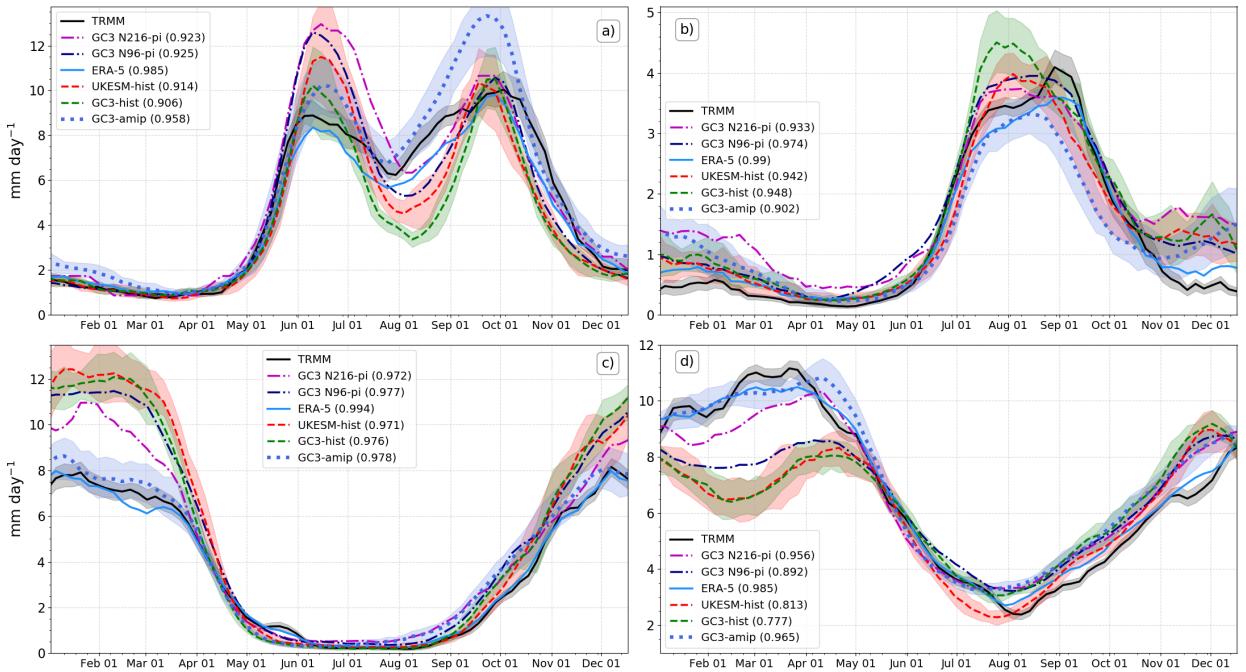
#### 4.5.2 The annual cycle of rainfall

Figure 4.9 shows the seasonal cycle of rainfall at the pentad (5-day) scale over the North American Monsoon, the Midsummer drought (MSD), the Amazon and eastern Brazil regions. The correlation between TRMM and the model and reanalysis data (ERA5) is also shown in each panel.

The seasonal cycle of precipitation in the MSD region in the simulations is well represented as all the simulations show the characteristic bimodal distribution, a feature that is uncommon for a climate model to be able to reproduce (Ryu and Hayhoe, 2014). However, the characteristics of the simulated MSD are different from observations. For example, the magnitude of the first peak and second peaks in the simulations are different. For instance, most of the first peak simulated magnitudes are higher than TRMM by 4 mm day<sup>-1</sup>, and

the AMIP simulation overestimates the second maximum of rainfall by 2-3 mm day<sup>-1</sup>. Similarly, the differences between the first peak and the MSD and between the MSD and the second peak are more pronounced in the coupled simulations. The timing of the MSD period is different in the models, as the simulations show the driest period taking place 10 days after TRMM and ERA5.

In the North American Monsoon (Figure 4.9b), the observed seasonal cycle is characterized by a very long and dry period ranging from the end of November to the start of June, which is followed by a sharp increase of rainfall around mid-June. The timing of the increase of rainfall in models coincides with observations, suggesting that onset timing and strength is well represented in these models. Moreover, the modelled and observed mean precipitation rates during monsoon maturity are 4 mm day<sup>-1</sup>, from mid-July until early September, which suggests notable ability of the models to reproduce the peak monsoon rainfall. The historical simulations show a shorter wet season characterised by an earlier retreat of the



**Figure 4.9:** Annual cycle of pentad-mean rainfall in the regions (a) the Midsummer drought, (b) the North American Monsoon, (c) Eastern Brazil and (d) the Amazon Basin. The regions are defined as in Figure 4.3 and are illustrated in Figure 4.8b and Figure 4.9b. The shaded regions represent observational uncertainty for TRMM and ensemble spread for the historical experiments. The correlation coefficient for each of the simulated seasonal cycles with TRMM is given in brackets in each panel.

monsoon rainfall and, as all the simulations, a positive boreal fall rainfall bias ( $+1 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$ ), a feature that has been shown in these models in CMIP5 (Geil et al., 2013).

The seasonal cycle of precipitation in eastern Brazil is characterised by a very wet summer ( $\sim 8 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$ ) compared to a very dry ( $\sim 0.2 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$ ) winter (Figure 4.9c). Rainfall in TRMM and ERA5 increases steadily from austral spring (September) to a maximum found in early January ( $\sim 8 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$ ). Rainfall in this region decreases to  $\sim 6 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  by late March as the monsoon migrates northward and then sharply decreases in austral fall.

The models (Figure 4.9c) show a positive bias during monsoon maturity. This bias was found to be of  $+4 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  and  $+2.5 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  for the low and medium resolution simulations, respectively. This positive bias in the maximum rainfall is consistent with the biases shown in Figure 4.7, which showed that rainfall in southeastern Brazil is overestimated, especially in the low resolution coupled simulations. In contrast to the coupled simulations, GC3-amip shows a very good agreement with the observed maximum summer rainfall and the seasonal cycle ( $r=0.978$ ) throughout the year.

Finally, the seasonal cycle in the Amazon (Figure 4.9d) has a weaker contrast as rainfall greater than  $2 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  is found year-round. The coupled simulations show a dry bias during austral summer and a good agreement with the observations during austral winter. Rainfall rates in the Amazon from January to March, in both TRMM and ERA-5, is close to  $10 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$ , yet the low resolution simulations show rainfall rates of  $8 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  in mid-February, particularly the historical experiments. GC3 N216-pi shows a better agreement with observations but still underestimates summertime rainfall by  $1 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$ .

This dry Amazon bias has been a known feature of GCMs, including the MOHC models, since CMIP3 (Li et al., 2006; Yin et al., 2013). In these simulations the dry Amazon bias is only alleviated in GC3-amip whose seasonal cycle and maximum summer rainfall agree well with observations. The models, however, represent with reasonable skill the timing of the transition from early austral spring ( $4 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  in September) to summertime rainfall ( $6 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  in November).

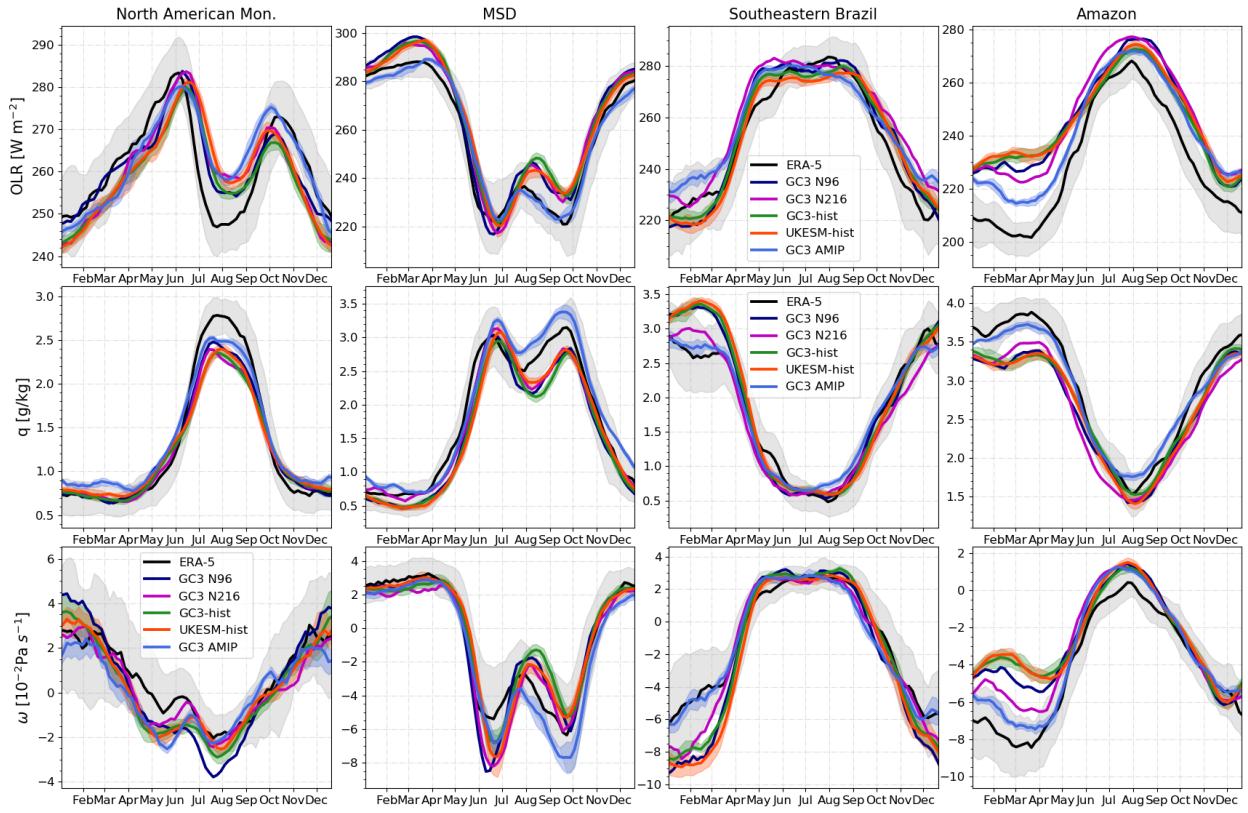
### 4.5.3 Characteristics of convective activity

The seasonal cycles of outgoing long-wave radiation (OLR), vertical velocity ( $\omega$ ) and specific humidity ( $q$ ) are key features of a monsoon since these quantities characterise the strength and height of deep convection, as well as the moisture within the column. shows The pentad-mean annual cycle of OLR,  $q$  and  $\omega$  at the 500-hPa level in four regions of the AMS (Figure 4.10) are used as process oriented diagnostics to further evaluate the biases in the spatial distribution and seasonal cycle of rainfall.

For the North American Monsoon the seasonal cycle of OLR,  $q$  and  $\omega$  is relatively well represented in the simulations. During late boreal winter and early spring, OLR increases steadily as a result of surface warming. However, in early June, near the onset date (Douglas et al., 1993; Geil et al., 2013), OLR sharply decreases reaching a minimum value of  $246 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  by mid-July. The vertical velocity decreases steadily from January to a minimum in August, indicating ascent from May 1st until September 15th. The models show similar seasonal cycles but overestimate the summertime OLR by  $\approx 6 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  and underestimate mid-level moisture by  $0.3 \text{ g/kg}$  and  $\omega$  by  $0.01 \text{ Pa s}^{-1}$ . The simulated shallower convection and drier mid-troposphere is seemingly compensated by stronger mid-level ascent.

In the MSD region, OLR and  $q$  show signs of convective activity from mid-April, as OLR sharply decreases and moisture increases. The characteristic MSD bimodal distribution of precipitation can also be observed as two peaks of low OLR, high  $q$  and low  $\omega$ . These periods are separated by a period of relatively higher OLR, lower  $q$  and weaker ascent from June 15 until late August. Although arguably with a small dry bias with shallower convection after mid-July, the simulations follow closely the observed seasonal cycle.

The simulated conditions during the first peak period show similar OLR and mid-level moisture but stronger ascending motions, which may explain the positive rainfall bias in this period showed in Figure 4.9a. In the period between the first peak and the MSD, the simulated OLR increases more sharply than observations from  $220 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  (June 15) to  $250 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  (early August), with similar behaviour in  $\omega$  and  $q$ , which may also be related to the strong MSD precipitation differences described in the previous section. The period



**Figure 4.10:** Pentad-mean (upper) outgoing long-wave radiation (OLR), (middle) specific humidity at 500-hPa and (lower)  $\omega$  500-hPa. These are shown from left to right for the North American Monsoon, the Midsummer drought, southeastern Brazil and the core Amazon. The uncertainty in ERA-5 data, shown as faint gray shading was estimating by bootstrapping with replacement the ERA-5 record 10,000 times.

during the second peak of rainfall in September shows signs of shallower convection and a drier mid-level when compared to ERA5.

In southeastern Brazil, the simulations reasonably follow the timings of the annual cycle of OLR,  $q$  and  $\omega$  of the reanalysis, particularly during austral winter. The moisture  $q$  in ERA5 during the dry seasons of austral fall, winter and spring is reasonably simulated by all the experiments. However, during austral summer, the coupled model simulations show significant biases characterised by stronger ascent and increased specific humidity in the mid-levels, although the height of convection (OLR  $225 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ ) is only modestly higher in the simulations.

The simulated OLR,  $q$  and  $\omega$  exhibit the highest biases in the Amazon. During austral summer, particularly January and February, the simulated convective activity is shallower

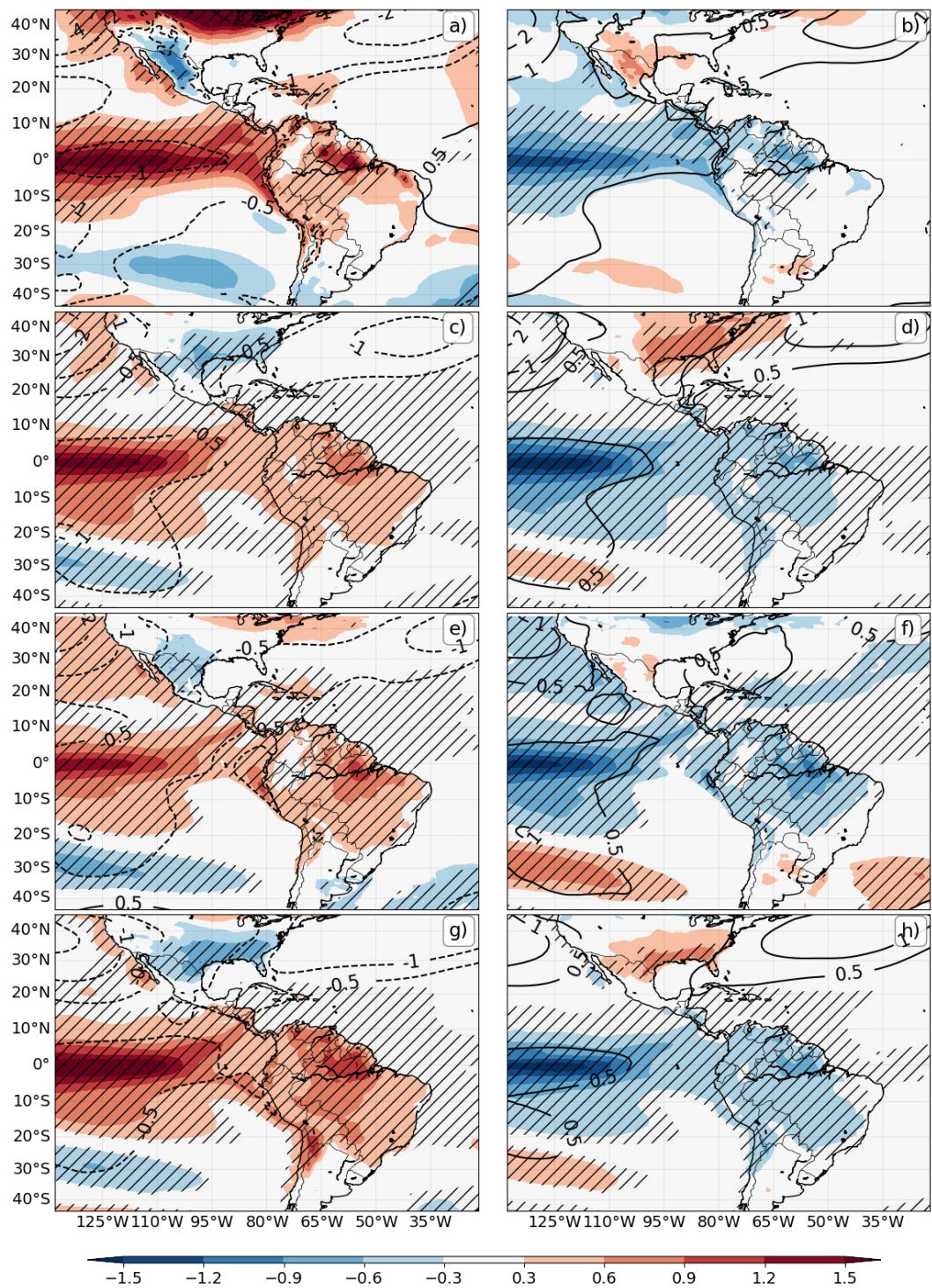
(OLR bias of  $+25 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ ) and weaker (positive  $\omega$  bias  $+0.02 \text{ Pa s}^{-1}$ ) and the mid-level troposphere is drier ( $-0.5 \text{ g/kg}$ ) than in ERA5. All these biases are in agreement with the dry Amazon bias described in the previous section. In spite of biases in the magnitude of OLR,  $q$  and  $\omega$  during peak convective activity, the seasonal variation is very well simulated so that convective activity, as evidenced by these metrics, starts and ends in the simulations within one or two pentads of the reanalysis. The smallest biases in coupled simulations are those of GC3 N216-pi, not just for the Amazon region but for the other regions as well. The simulated OLR,  $q$  and  $\omega$  in GC3-amip in southeastern Brazil and the Amazon show a much better agreement with the reanalysis during austral summer than the rest of the simulations.

## 4.6 ENSO Teleconnections

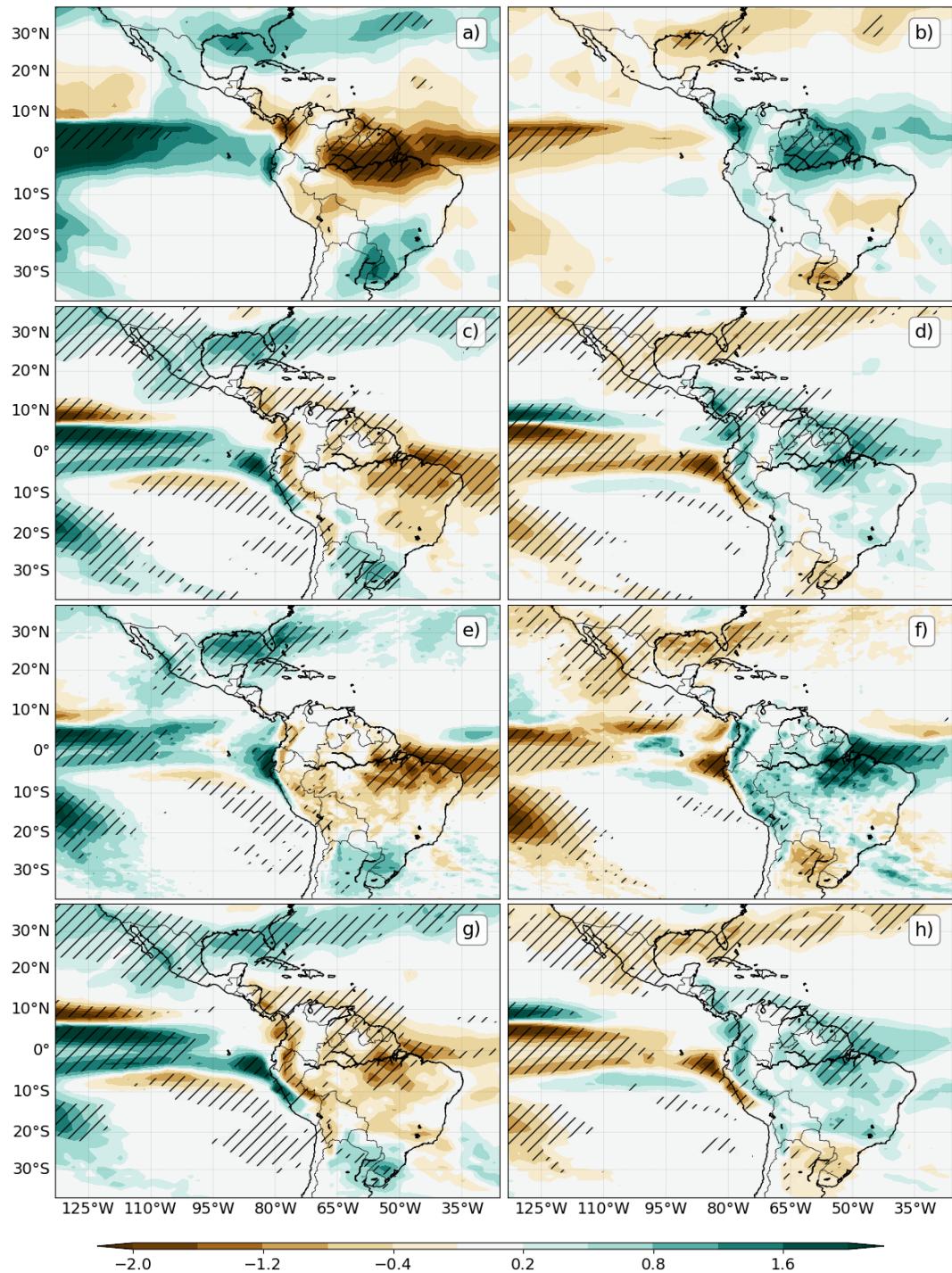
El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) teleconnections are the prominent source of interannual variability for the AMS (Vera et al., 2006), as summarized in section 2.4. The response to ENSO events in UKESM1 and HadGEM3 is investigated in this section, which first shows the temperature, sea-level pressure (SLP) and precipitation responses to observed and simulated ENSO events in the AMS, to then analyse the effect of ENSO flavours on the AMS. Finally, results show a possible influence of the QBO for the teleconnections of ENSO.

### 4.6.1 Canonical teleconnections

The surface temperature and sea-level pressure (SLP) responses to ENSO events are shown in Figure 4.11 for HadGEM3, UKESM1 and ERA5 data during DJF, the season of strongest impact of ENSO events. The characteristic warm anomaly during El Niño events in the East Pacific Ocean does not extend to the east in all the simulations as the observed warm anomaly. In turn, the cold anomalies during La Niña events in the Central Pacific are colder in the simulations than in ERA5. The teleconnection to southern North America, i.e., colder (warmer) conditions in southern (northern) North America during El Niño events is relatively well simulated. For example, the simulated and observed teleconnection patterns to South America, e.g., the cold anomalies during La Niña events in northern South America



**Figure 4.11:** DJF Temperature anomalies (colour contours in K) and SLP (line contours in hPa) during (a, c, e, g) El Niño and (b, d, f, h) La Niña events. Results are shown for (a, b) ERA-5, (c, d) UKESM1-hist, (e, f) GC3 N96-pi and (g, h) GC3 N216-pi. The hatched regions denote differences between ENSO phases and the climatological state with significance to the 99% confidence level from a Welch t-test for the temperature field.



**Figure 4.12:** As in Figure 4.11 but for the rainfall response [ $\text{mm day}^{-1}$ ] using GPCP as the observational dataset.

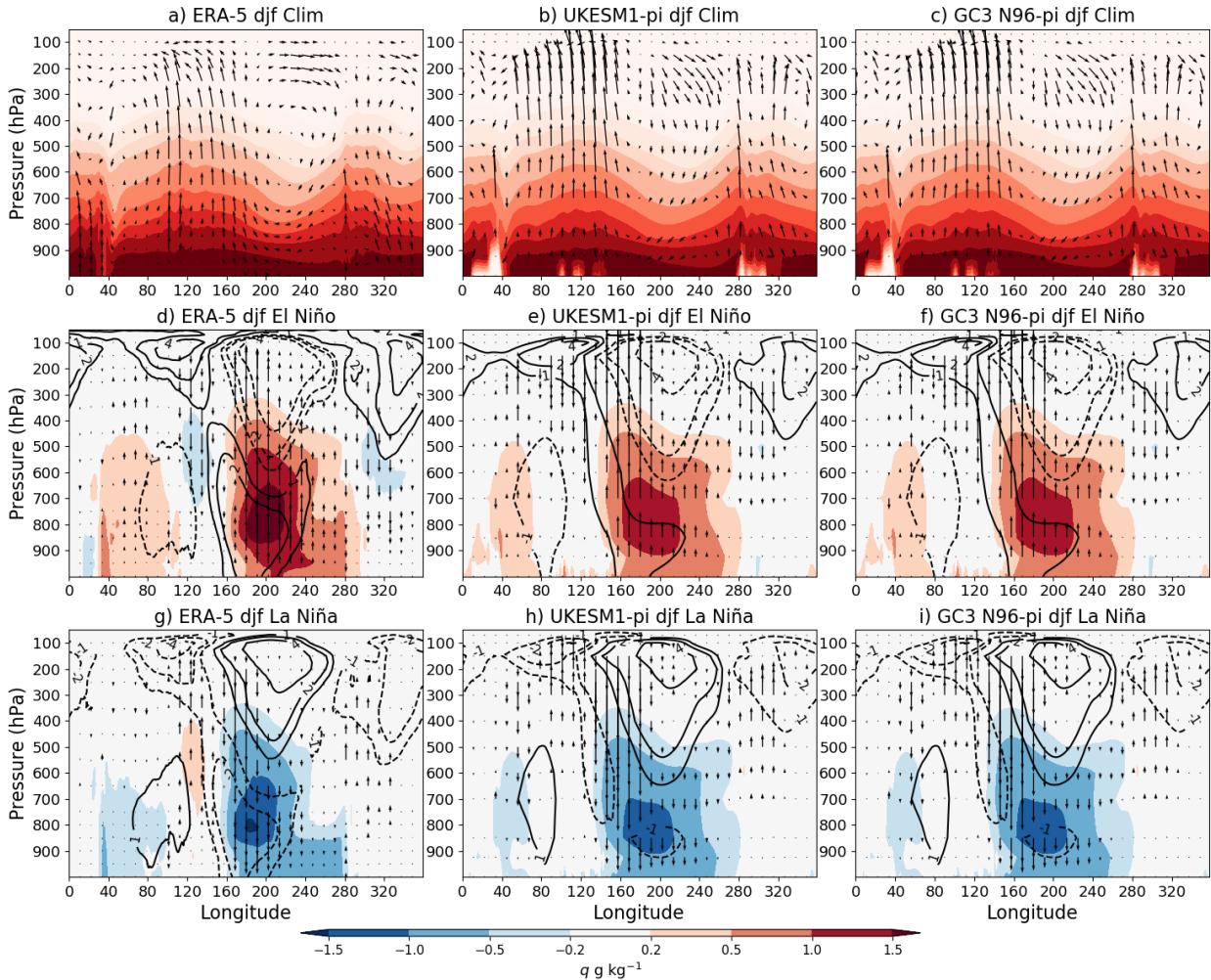
are well simulated. However, the low resolution simulations show a broader and stronger than observed negative response in southeastern US to El Niño events.

The SLP response in the north Pacific and North America, known as the Pacific North-American pattern, is linked with a displacement of the subtropical jet affecting the eastward propagation of wave activity that reaches the North Atlantic (e.g. Bayr et al., 2019; Jiménez-Esteve and Domeisen, 2020). During El Niño events, the Aleutian Low is strengthened in ERA5, with a strong SLP anomaly (-4 hPa) off the coast of California. The models show a similar but smaller SLP response in the same region. El Niño events events are associated with a negative phase of the North Atlantic Oscillation (NAO), with an opposite response for La Niña events. While the models seem to be able to capture this response of the NAO, the simulated response is weaker than observed. A sensible representation of the ENSO-NAO tropospheric teleconnection may be relevant to then simulate the effect of the NAO on Central American and northern South American rainfall (Giannini et al., 2000, 2004).

The rainfall anomalies associated with ENSO events are shown in Figure 4.12. Three regions in the AMS have a significant precipitation response to ENSO events in the observations and simulations. In southern North America, rainfall increases (decreases) during El Niño (La Niña) events due to the effects of the PNA pattern on the subtropical jet, which influences the frequency and latitude of propagation of wintertime midlatitude disturbances which are the main source of rainfall in the region during the dry season (Vera et al., 2006; Bayr et al., 2019).

The GPCP dataset (Figure 4.12a, b) shows significant boreal winter rainfall increases in southeastern US and the Gulf of Mexico during El Niño events, and an opposite response to La Niña phases. All the simulations reproduce this teleconnection rainfall pattern. The models also simulate the observed response in southeastern South America (SESA) of positive anomalies during El Niño and negative anomalies during La Niña events. This teleconnections is also associated with the effect of ENSO on midlatitude and subtropical jet activity, but for the Southern Hemisphere.

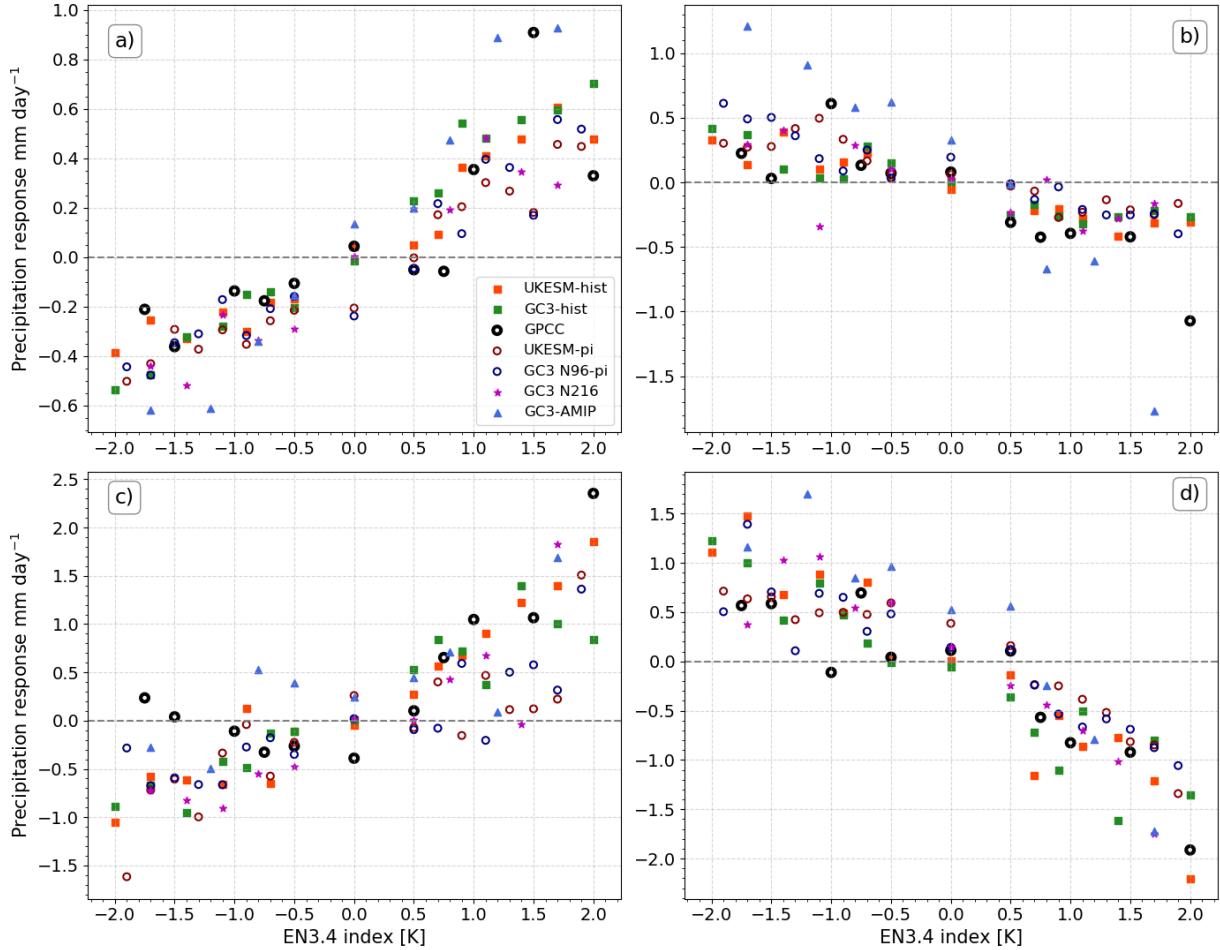
The anomalies in the Amazon show the strongest response to ENSO events in the observations. Significant positive (negative) rainfall anomalies during the negative (positive) phase of ENSO in northern South America are observed in GPCP. All the simulations show a very similar and statistically significant response. This teleconnection works through



**Figure 4.13:** DJF Longitude-height Walker circulation anomalies of specific humidity (colour-contours),  $\omega$  (vectors) and zonal wind (line-contours) during El Niño events (left) and La Niña events (right). Results are shown for ERA-5 (upper), UKESM-pi (middle) and HadGEM3 piControl (lower).

the coupling of ENSO with the Walker circulation (Vera et al., 2006; Cai et al., 2019), which is illustrated in Figure 4.13.

The climatological Walker circulation during DJF shows strong ascent in the 100-160°E and the 280-310°E regions, which correspond to the maritime continent and South America (Figure 4.13a). During El Niño events, there is increased specific humidity throughout the lower troposphere in the Central and Eastern Pacific, associated with ascending motions in this region and negative low-level wind anomalies and positive upper-level wind anomalies (Figure 4.13d). In other words, an eastward shift of the Walker circulation. The wind, vertical velocity and specific humidity anomalies are the opposite during La Niña events, indicative

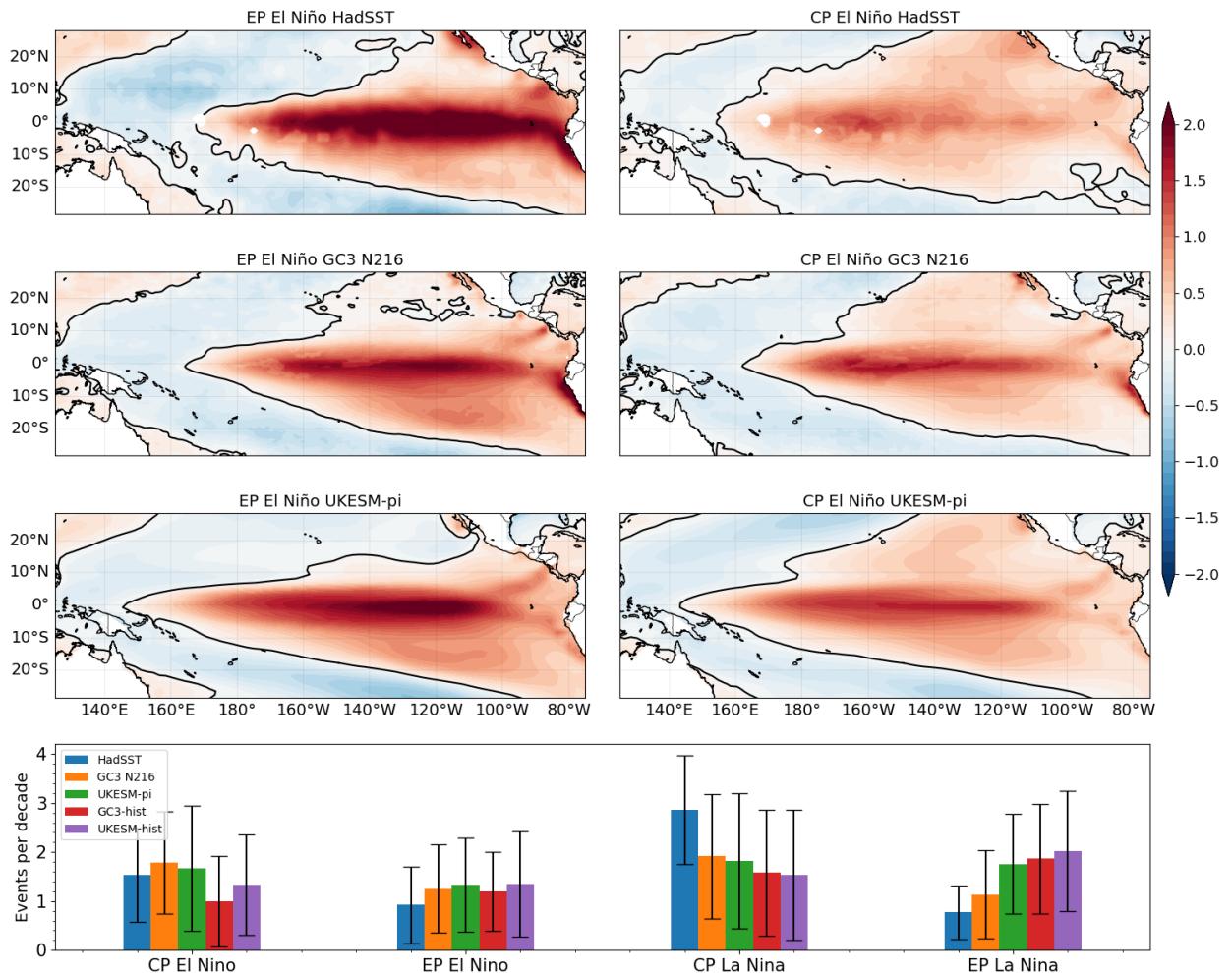


**Figure 4.14:** Precipitation response [ $\text{mm day}^{-1}$ ] as a function of the El Niño 3.4 index (see text) for (a) southwestern North America [ $20\text{-}37^\circ\text{N}, 112\text{-}98^\circ\text{W}$ ], (b) Central America and southern Mexico [ $5\text{-}19^\circ\text{N}, 95\text{-}83^\circ\text{W}$ ], (c) South Eastern South America [ $35\text{-}25^\circ\text{S}, 60\text{-}50^\circ\text{W}$ ], and (d) the Amazon [ $10\text{-}0^\circ\text{S}, 70\text{-}45^\circ\text{W}$ ]. The observation scatter points are from GPCC in the period of 1940–2013.

of a stronger Walker circulation, slightly shifted to the west. The models seem to broadly reproduce the observed changes to the Walker circulation during ENSO events (Figure 4.13).

Figure 4.14 shows the observed and simulated precipitation responses in four regions of the AMS to different magnitudes of ENSO events, by binning events for their magnitude of the EN3.4 index and the corresponding precipitation anomaly from the climatology in each region. This figure aims to show the degree of linearity of ENSO teleconnections to the AMS. While the observed response shows some degree of linearity for El Niño events in South America (panels c, d), the majority of the observed responses, particularly to La Niña phases, are not linear.

However, the simulations show several signs of linearity. For instance, consider the historical experiments, UKESM1-hist and GC3-hist, which show that the precipitation responses in southwestern North America, SESA and the Amazon increases roughly linearly as the magnitude of SST anomaly increases. In contrast, some other simulated responses, e.g. to La Niña phases in South America in the piControl simulations, show signs of non-linearity.



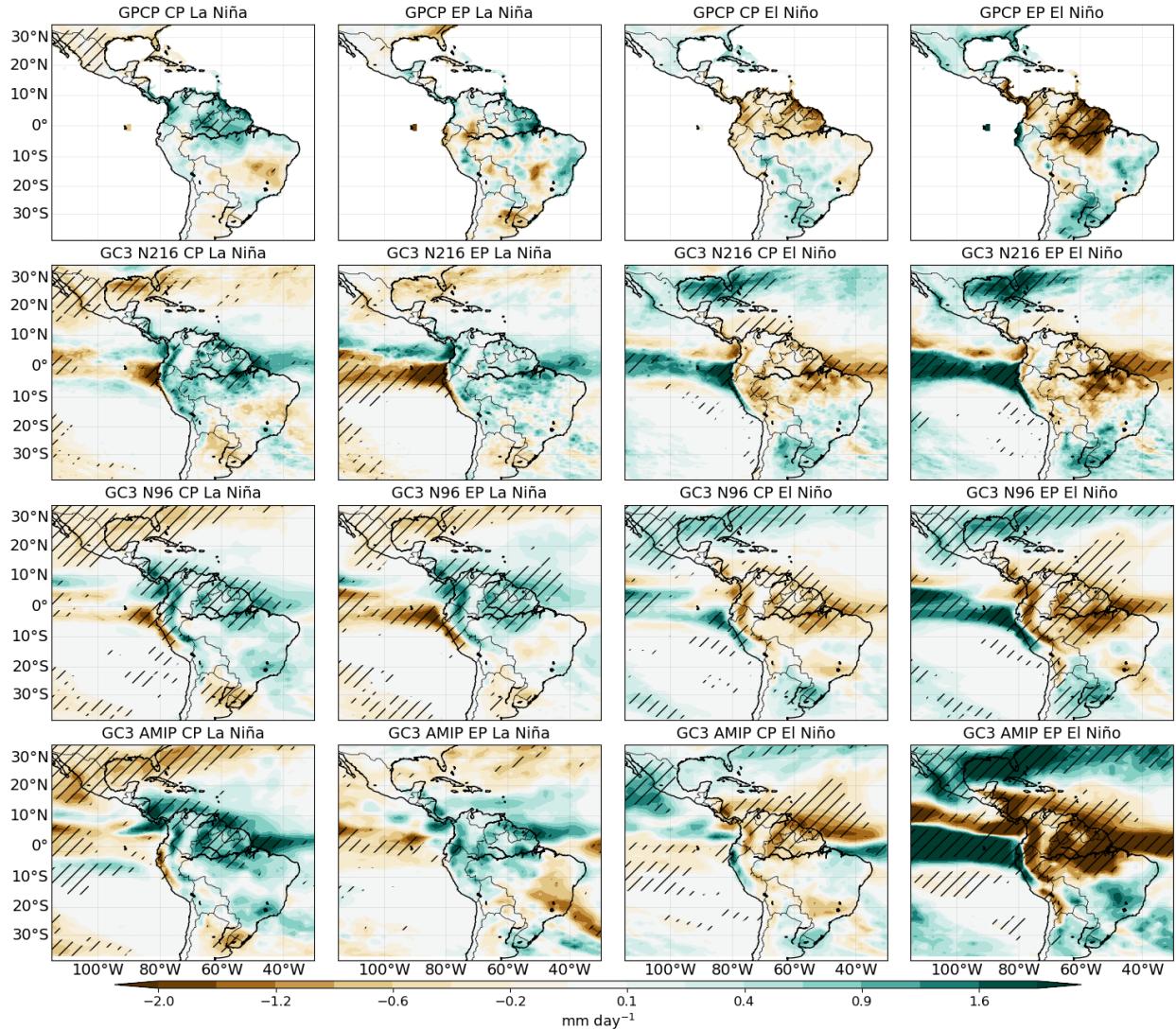
**Figure 4.15:** SST anomalies [K] for East Pacific (EP) and Central Pacific El Niño events in HadSST, GC3 N216 and UKESM piControl. EP (CP) events were defined where the E-index (C-index) was greater than 1. In the bottom panel, the frequency of events per decade (with standard deviation as error bar) is shown for HadSST and the simulations used in this study. The E-index is computed from  $(PC1 - PC2)/\sqrt{2}$  and the C-index from  $(PC1 + PC2)/\sqrt{2}$ .

### 4.6.2 The role of ENSO flavours

As described in section 2.4, not all ENSO events are observed with the same SST anomaly pattern in the Pacific Ocean. These different SST patterns for each ENSO event are considered to be a source of non-linearity of ENSO impacts over South America (Sulca et al., 2018; Cai et al., 2020). Principal component analysis has shown that ENSO events may be separated into two categories: Central Pacific (CP) and East Pacific (EP) events (Cai et al., 2020), which highlight where the peak SST anomaly is found in the Pacific Ocean. Figure 4.15 shows that both UKESM1 and GC3 reasonably simulate the observed SST patterns associated with EP and CP El Niño events, although the simulations show CP SST patterns to spread further to the east than the HadSST dataset. The simulations are also able to replicate very broadly the observed differences in the frequency of each event as CP La Niña events are more frequent than EP La Niña events, while the opposite is true for El Niño events.

Furthermore, Figure 4.16 compares the precipitation anomalies for each type of ENSO event in observations with three simulations: GC3 N96-pi, GC3 N216-pi and GC3-amip. The observed precipitation response in the GPCC dataset to EP La Niña over equatorial South America is not significant and is smaller than the strong positive response to CP La Niña events in the same region. However, the simulated response in GC3 N96-pi and GC3 N216 during La Niña events appears to be more independent of the type of event. In contrast, GC3-amip shows different magnitudes of responses to different types of La Niña events, in particular a positive, and significant, anomaly for CP La Niña events in the Amazon and weaker and not significant anomalies during EP events, which agrees with observations.

The observed response to El Niño events in GPCC is also dependent on the type of event. EP EL Niño events show significant negative anomalies over the Amazon and positive anomalies over SESA whereas CP events only show significant anomalies ( $-1 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$ ) over northeastern South America. While the coupled models (GC3 N96-pi and GC3 N216) do show a stronger response to EP EL Niño events than to CP events, the patterns of the response are very similar. In contrast, the response in GC3-amip agrees with observations. For this experiment, stronger negative responses to EP El Niño events are observed in the Amazon but the response to CP events is much weaker and is only



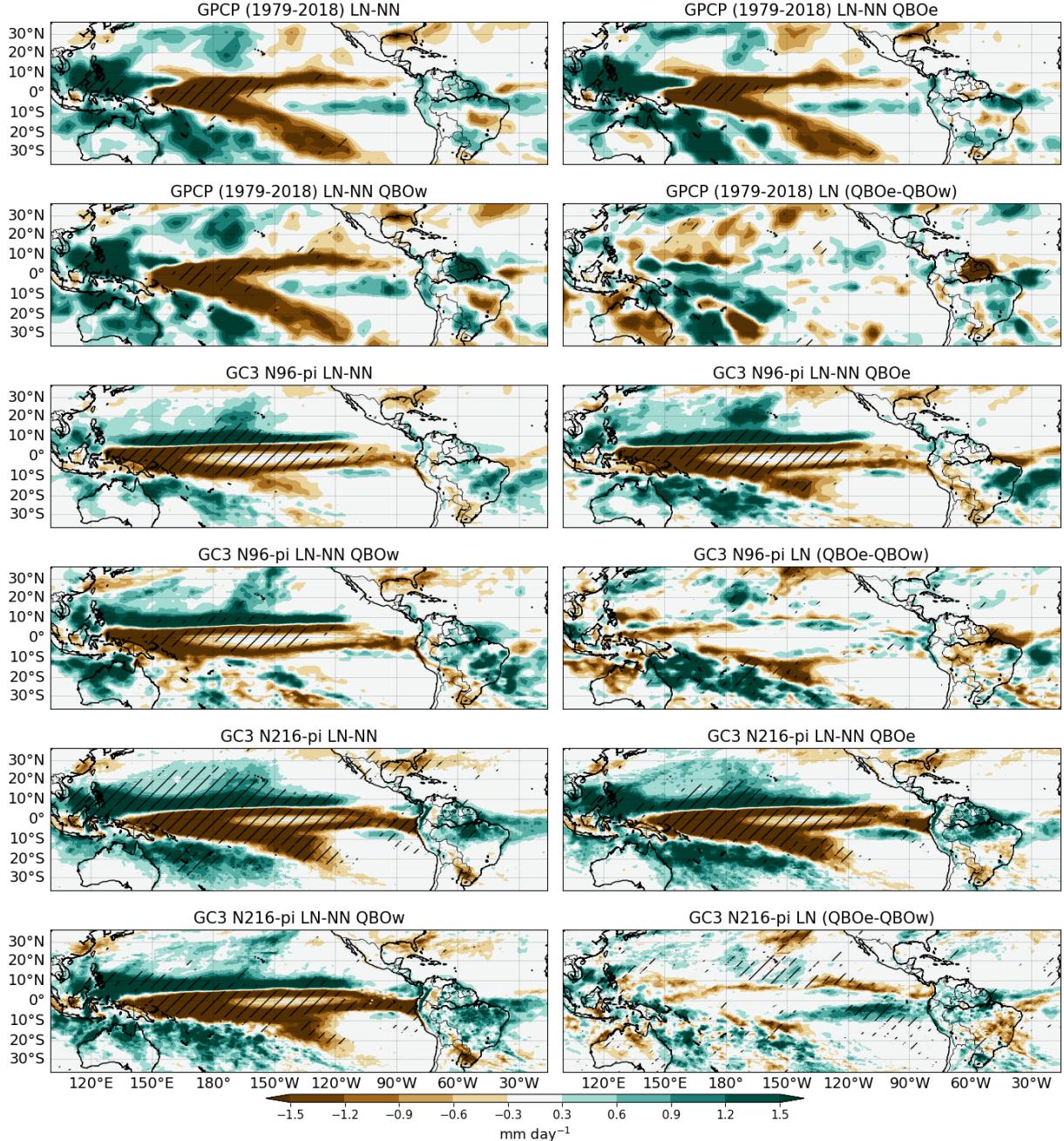
**Figure 4.16:** Precipitation anomalies in GPCC 1940-2013, GC3 N216-pi, GC3 N96-pi and GC3 AMIP for the four different types of ENSO events, as defined by Cai et al. (2020). Statistically significant anomalies (95% confidence level) are hatched.

significant in northeastern South America. In other words, GC3-amip agrees well with the observed non-linear teleconnection patterns whereas the teleconnections in the coupled models do not depend on the type of ENSO event.

#### 4.6.3 A possible influence of the QBO on tropical ENSO teleconnections

Section 2.5 discussed the observational and modelling evidence of the effects on deep convection associated with the stratospheric quasi-biennial oscillation (QBO). In particular,

some evidence suggest that the QBO may play a role to determine interannual variability of the Walker circulation and monsoons (Giorgetta et al., 1999; Collimore et al., 2003;



**Figure 4.17:** Composite precipitation differences during JFMA in GPCP (1979-2018), GC3 N216-pi and GC3 N96-pi between (top) La Niña and Neutral ENSO conditions. The two middle panels show a subset of the top panel, by separating the La Niña composite based on the phase of the QBO. The lower panel shows the differences QBO E-W during La Niña periods. Statistically significant anomalies (95% confidence level) are hatched.

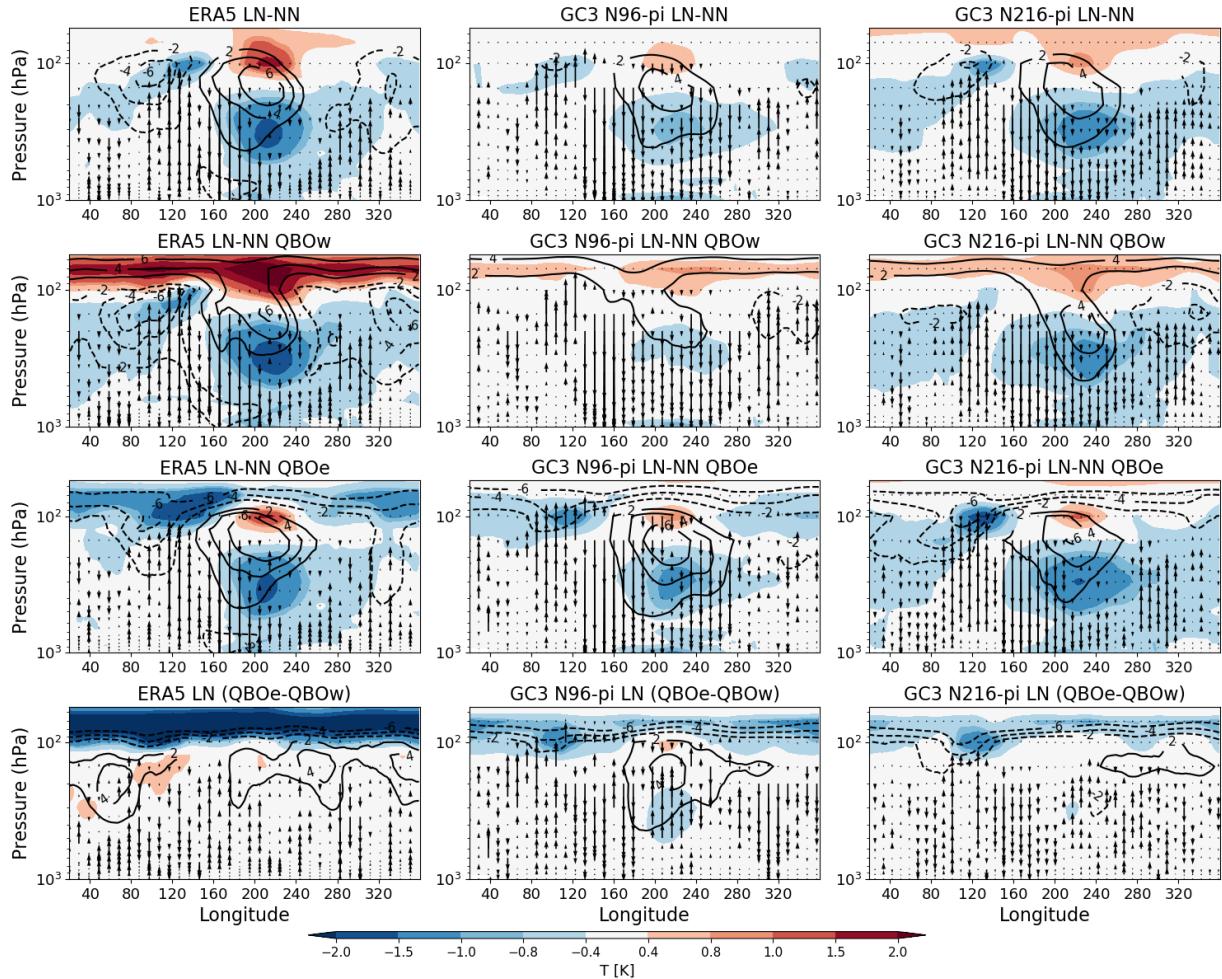
Liess and Geller, 2012).

This section evaluates whether the simulations analysed in this chapter, as well as observations, show signs of an influence of the QBO on the AMS. In particular, the analysis aims to understand whether the QBO may be a source of non-linearity and non-asymmetry for the teleconnections of ENSO associated with deep convection and the Walker circulation. In all cases, the phases of the QBO were defined using a 70 hPa zonal mean zonal wind index, with a threshold of  $+2 \text{ m s}^{-1}$  for the westerly phase (QBOw) and  $-2 \text{ m s}^{-1}$  for the easterly phase (QBOe).

Composites of the precipitation response to La Niña (LN) events in Figure 4.17 show that the phase of the QBO may determine the strength and location of the teleconnection. While the precipitation difference in the western Pacific is relatively similar during QBOe than during QBOw in observations and simulations, the teleconnections to Australia, South America and the maritime continent are notably different depending on the QBO phase. In the GPCP dataset, the composite difference QBOe-QBOw during LN events suggests that the characteristic positive precipitation response during LN events in the Amazon, is largely associated with QBOw phases, whereas LN events during QBOe appear to have little effect over South America. A similar result is obtained for GC3 N96-pi.

These precipitation responses are further investigated by changes in the overturning circulation (Figure 4.18). As depicted in Figure 4.13, La Niña events are associated with a westward shift in the Walker circulation with a strengthening of the low-level easterlies in the Pacific Ocean. Figure 4.18 shows that during LN the tropical troposphere cools and the UTLS region in the Central Pacific warms. These temperature anomalies are weaker in the simulations than in ERA5.

The zonal wind anomalies in the upper-troposphere associated with LN events show different patterns and strengths during QBOw than during QBOe. The mean teleconnections during LN show positive upper-tropospheric anomalies above the Pacific Ocean, but these anomalies are stronger during QBOe than during QBOw in ERA5 and the two simulations shown. In ERA5, most of the upper troposphere shows positive zonal wind differences in the QBOe-QBOw panel.



**Figure 4.18:** Longitude-height differences (JFMA) of equatorial (10S-10N) air temperature (color shading), zonal wind (contours) and vertical velocity ( $\omega$  - vectors). The differences shown from top to bottom are between all La Niña (LN) periods and Neutral conditions (NN), between LN and NN during QBOw, LN-NN during QBOe, and the difference between LN events on different QBO phases (LN QBOe-QBOw).

There are three regions where ascending and descending motions are more greatly affected by LN events: the maritime continent, the Pacific Ocean and South America. The observed effect of the mean LN teleconnection is the following: anomalous ascent is seen in the maritime continent and in South America, in agreement with a stronger Walker circulation, whereas anomalous descending motions is observed in the Central and eastern Pacific associated with a westward shift of the Walker circulation.

The effect of LN over ascending and descending motions is seemingly also affected by the QBO phase, according to the bottom panels of Figure 4.18. In ERA5 and the simulations,

the anomalous ascent observed in South America during LN events is mostly associated with QBOw, whereas only small anomalous ascent is observed during QBOe. However, ERA5 disagrees with the simulations in the western Pacific region (140-180E), as the simulations suggest larger anomalous descent during QBOe than during QBOw, whereas in ERA5 these descending anomalies are larger during QBOw.

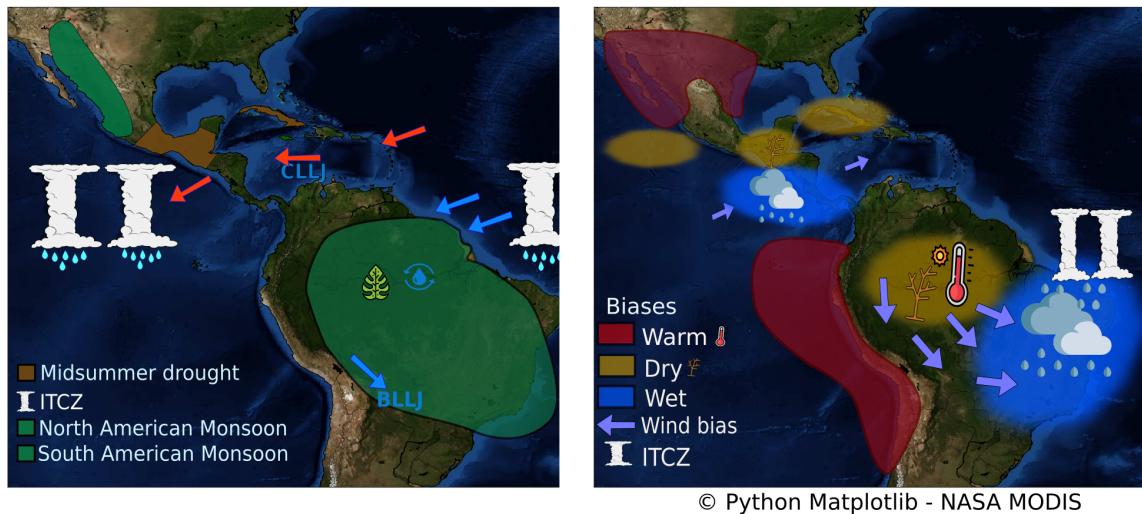
A similar analysis was conducted to evaluate the effect of the QBO during the positive and the neutral phases of ENSO. These results are not shown because, although tentative suggestions were found that the QBO may play a role during these other phases of ENSO, there was little agreement between the models and ERA5/observations. Furthermore, the QBO representation in these CMIP6 models is biased in the UTLS region. In particular, the temperature signal associated with circulation of the QBO, most clearly seen in the bottom panels of Figure 4.18, is much weaker in the models.

As suggested by the literature summarised in section 2.5, this temperature signal could be the key aspect of any effect of the QBO on deep convective systems, and as such, the evidence from a short record (ERA5) or models with key biases in possible processes involved presented in this chapter warrants both caution and more work. This topic will be investigated in the next chapters.

## 4.7 Summary and discussion

This chapter assessed the MOHC models, HadGEM3 and UKESM1, in their pre-industrial control, historical and AMIP experiment contributions to CMIP6 with specific emphasis on the AMS and associated large-scale tropical circulation. The selected CMIP6 experiments allow to assess the effect of including Earth System processes or increasing resolution for representing regional monsoon rainfall. A schematic in Figure 4.19 shows the primary components of the AMS climate and summarises the main biases found in these simulations and this chapter.

Rainfall in the North American Monsoon was particularly well simulated by the models. The seasonal cycle, peak monsoon rainfall rates and timings of monsoon onset and retreat in the simulations agreed well with TRMM. The historical experiments overestimate the



**Figure 4.19:** Schematics of (a) the main features in the AMS and (b) the main biases in UKESM1 and HadGEM3. In (a) the boreal summer easterlies (red) and austral summer circulation (blue) are shown with the Caribbean and Bolivian Low-level Jets (CLLJ and BLLJ, respectively). In (b) the biases are shown for the respective northern and southern Hemisphere summers. The ITCZ bias in (b) refers to the southward displacement bias of the Atlantic ITCZ in the simulations.

mean temperature in most of the Americas by 1.5 K, but particularly in boreal summer in southwestern North America (+4 K). In spite of this warm bias, the temperature seasonal cycle is well represented by these models.

These results suggest model improvement on the simulation of the North American Monsoon from previous versions of the MOHC models (Arritt et al., 2000), and most of the model cohorts of CMIP3 and CMIP5 (Geil et al., 2013). For example, most of CMIP5 models showed a very wet bias during monsoon maturity whereas rainfall during monsoon maturity in all the experiments of this chapter are within less than  $1 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  of observations, during the maturity stage. However, these models continue to show biases during monsoon retreat as rainfall does not decrease as sharply as in observations after mid-September, which suggests a continued bias in the winter-time precipitation associated with cold-fronts (Adams and Comrie, 1997). Further research into variability of the North American seasonality may be explored using these models given their skillfull representation fo the seasonal cycle.

The Midsummer Drought (MSD) of southern Mexico and Central America is a regional feature of precipitation that most of CMIP5 models had difficulty capturing, with the MOHC models being amongst the few exceptions (Ryu and Hayhoe, 2014). The MSD in UKESM1

and GC3 continues to be relatively well represented; however, the experiments analysed in this chapter showed various differences in the timing and strength of the bimodal cycle when compared to observed gridded-datasets and ERA5.

The models simulate a wetter-than-observed first peak of precipitation and a drier MSD period, therefore simulating a larger difference between the first peak and the dry period. While in observations this difference between the first peak and the MSD period ranges between 2-3 mm day<sup>-1</sup>, in the simulations this difference is closer to 6 mm day<sup>-1</sup>. Rainfall during the first peak has been too wet in these models since CMIP3, suggesting a persistent wet bias in this region, likely associated with the bias in East Pacific ITCZ also shown in this chapter and in recent studies (Ryu and Hayhoe, 2014; Mulcahy et al., 2018). In contrast, the so-called second peak of precipitation, observed in late August, is simulated in close agreement with TRMM, except in the AMIP experiment, which has a wet bias of 2 mm day<sup>-1</sup> at this stage.

The skill of UKESM1 and HadGEM to simulate the MSD's bimodal regime of precipitation makes these simulations ideal to understand the mechanisms underpinning the MSD and answer the question of why the MOHC do represent a MSD regime but other models fail. Furthermore, section 2.3 discusses several open questions regarding the mechanisms that cause the observed MSD. These simulations will then be used in future chapters to address the evaluate previous hypotheses of the causes for the MSD.

The East Pacific ITCZ migration and position was shown to be relatively well represented by the models (Figs. 4.4 and 4.5). However, the models showed an overestimation of boreal summer rainfall near the coast of Central America (Figure 4.9). These biases are associated with an easterly wind bias at low-levels, suggesting a bias in the flow from the Caribbean Sea into the Eastern Pacific (Herrera et al., 2015; Durán-Quesada et al., 2017). The simulations also showed a biased Atlantic ITCZ that was displaced south of the observed ITCZ position during boreal winter (Figure 4.5), particularly in the low resolution coupled simulations.

In the Amazon, the simulations showed a warm bias (+2 K) during austral spring and summer, a bias that existed since CMIP5 (Jones and Carvalho, 2013), and a colder than observed southeastern Brazil. These biases were linked with decreased cloud cover and less rainfall over the Amazon and more convective clouds and rainfall in southeastern Brazil

(Figures 4.8 and 4.10). The low cloud cover, warm and dry Amazon biases are intertwined with the low-level circulation from the Atlantic into the South American continent. The biases in the circulation during austral summer were observed as a northerly flow anomaly over the central and southern Amazon, a feature that has been associated with a stronger moisture transport away from the Amazon (Marengo et al., 2012; Jones and Carvalho, 2018).

During the period of maximum rainfall rates in February, the simulations overestimate rainfall by  $3 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  in southeastern Brazil and underestimate rainfall in the Amazon by a similar rate. The historical experiments show a small drying response to historical forcing in the Amazon therefore slightly increasing the magnitude of this dry bias compared to the unforced piControl experiments. The AMIP simulation with the SST biases removed improved the representation of the Atlantic ITCZ and the precipitation, cloud cover and temperature biases over the South American Monsoon. The improvement in the circulation and precipitation biases in the AMIP simulation suggest that the origin of the dry Amazon bias are the biases in the Atlantic SSTs.

The canonical teleconnection responses of temperature, SLP and precipitation in the AMS to ENSO events are well represented in these models. For example, the simulated spatial patterns and strength of the positive (negative) precipitation anomalies observed in northern Mexico and South Eastern South America during El Niño (La Niña) agree well with observations and reanalysis. Similarly, the teleconnection to the Amazon is well represented for both phases of ENSO, in spite of relevant biases in the mean state of the South American monsoon discussed above.

ENSO teleconnections in these simulations were found to be approximately linear, i.e., the precipitation response is linearly related to the magnitude of the SST perturbation in the EN 3.4 region. These experiments also show signs of symmetric teleconnections as positive and negative phases produce the opposite and equivalent precipitation response in the AMS. In contrast to observations and the GC3 AMIP simulation, the precipitation response in the coupled models appears to be independent of the type or flavour of ENSO events into Central and East Pacific events. The fact that these models show a reasonable representation of ENSO diversity in SST patterns but the models do not replicate the observed non-linear dependance to ENSO events warrants further analysis.

The QBO appears to be a source of non-linearity for ENSO teleconnections to the Amazon. La Niña canonical teleconnections in the Amazon are characterized by a stronger ascent associated with a stronger Walker circulation. This teleconnection pattern occurs in observations and these simulations primarily during the westerly phase of the QBO, whereas the teleconnection during the easterly phase is much weaker and barely different from the climatological mean-state. Whether the stratospheric QBO poses such an important control to the main source of interannual variability for monsoon rainfall in the Amazon merits a separate chapter of this thesis.

The main biases (Fig. 4.19), in these experiments are generally smaller in the medium resolution GC3 N216 compared to the low resolution experiments, which suggests improved model performance with increased horizontal resolution. In contrast, including Earth System processes in the UM model only affects the surface temperature response to historical forcing and not the dynamical biases that drive the precipitation and ITCZ biases.

In short, the main dynamical biases in UKESM1 are very similar to those in GC3 N96 as these two models share the same dynamical core; only when resolution is increased these biases are reduced notably. A noteworthy difference between UKESM1 and GC3 is that warming over the historical period in Mexico and the Amazon is higher in UKESM1 than in GC3. In general, UKESM1-hist shows a stronger temperature response to forcing than GC3-hist, as UKESM1 has been reported to have a greater climate sensitivity than GC3 (Andrews et al., 2019; Sellar et al., 2019). This differential warming may be a consequence of the land-use change in these regions playing a role in the UKESM1 representation of soil-atmosphere feedbacks.

The improvement in the medium resolution simulation compared to the low-resolution simulations may be associated to the improved dynamics of the ocean or the atmosphere. For example, the Atlantic ITCZ biases have been shown to be directly affected by processes in the convective scheme (Bellucci et al., 2010), such as the treatment of entrainment and moisture-cloud feedbacks (Oueslati and Bellon, 2013; Li and Xie, 2014). The resolution of the ocean model has been shown to impact the eddy heat flux parametrisation and the associated heat uptake and transport of the ocean (Kuhlbrodt et al., 2018). The improvement in the Atlantic SSTs and ITCZ and the associated dynamics in GC3 N216-pi also improves the

associated circulation biases and moisture transport in the South American Monsoon. In other words, the oceanic resolution may play an important role in the cross-equatorial heat and moisture transport, SST gradients over the equatorial Atlantic which in turns improves the land-sea circulation over the Amazon during austral summer, a circulation that is key for representing the spatial distribution of rainfall in South America.

# 5

## A wavelet transform method to determine monsoon onset and retreat from precipitation time-series

A new method<sup>is described</sup> to determine monsoon onset and retreat timings using wavelet transform methodology applied to precipitation time-series at the pentad scale ~~is described~~. The principal advantage of this method is its portability, since it can be easily adapted for any region and dataset. The application of the method is illustrated for the North American Monsoon and the Indian Monsoon using four different precipitation datasets and climate model output. The method is shown to be robust across all the datasets and both monsoon regions. The mean onset and retreat dates agree well with previous methods. Spatial patterns of precipitation and circulation anomalies identified around the onset and retreat dates are also consistent with previous work. Several examples illustrate that this method may be used at the grid-box scale, not just over large area-averaged regions. The method is also used to characterise the strength and timing of the Midsummer drought in southern Mexico and Central America. A two-peak structure is found to be a robust structure in only <sup>A</sup> ~~in~~ 33% of the years, with other years showing only one peak or no signs of a bimodal distribution. The two-peak structure analysed at the grid-box scale is shown to be a significant signal in several regions of Central America and southern Mexico. The

methodology is also applied to climate model output from the Met Office Hadley Centre UKESM1 and HadGEM3 CMIP6 experiments. The modelled onset and retreat dates agree well with observations in the North American Monsoon but not in the Indian Monsoon. The start and end of the modelled Midsummer drought in southern Mexico and Central America is delayed by one pentad and has a stronger bimodal signal than observed.

## 5.1 Introduction

The timing and strength of the rainy season are key aspects of the climate of monsoon regions as the onset or start and the retreat or end of the monsoon rainfall greatly influences sectors such as agriculture (Sultan et al., 2005; Gadgil and Rupa Kumar, 2006; Jain et al., 2015; Harvey et al., 2018) and water management (Turner and Annamalai, 2012; Bussmann et al., 2016). Scientific and societal motivation has led climate and weather research to objectively determine onset and retreat dates for purposes such as the characterisation of variability and trends, and forecasting (e.g. Kitoh and Uchiyama, 2006; Cook and Buckley, 2009; Lucas-Picher et al., 2011; Nieto-Ferreira and Rickenbach, 2011; Htway and Matsumoto, 2011).

For this reason, a wide range of methods exist to diagnose the onset and retreat dates from a number of variables and datasets. Bombardi et al. (2020) provides a recent review of these methods and highlights the technical differences and purposes of each. Methods can be divided into those that evaluate monsoon onset and retreat on a regional scale (e.g. Webster and Yang, 1992; Fasullo and Webster, 2003; Garcia and Kayano, 2013) or at a local or grid-box scale (e.g. Liebmann and Marengo, 2001; Cook and Buckley, 2009).

Threshold methods are the most commonly used local-scale methods that typically diagnose onset and retreat from a precipitation time-series (Bombardi et al., 2020). These methods evaluate the accumulated (Liebmann and Marengo, 2001) or daily/pentad-mean rainfall rates (Geil et al., 2013) and determine the onset and retreat dates when the time-series exceeds or falls below a pre-defined value (threshold) for a given amount of time (persistence). The persistence parameter aims to decrease the effect of noise of precipitation in the calculation. The threshold parameter can be a statistical measure

of the seasonal cycle such as the total annual mean rainfall (Arias et al., 2012) or tuned to a specific dataset (e.g. Geil et al., 2013).

**for a given purpose**

In other words, each threshold method is tailored to a monsoon region using a specific dataset and a specific variable ~~for a given purpose~~. This characteristic of the threshold methods poses various shortcomings. Firstly, practical shortcomings of the threshold methods, particularly rigid thresholds, include false hits (Moron and Robertson, 2014) or some years not meeting the threshold and persistence criteria (Arias et al., 2012) requiring further relaxation of the parameters. Secondly, given that threshold methods are tailored to a specific dataset in a given region, statistical corrections are needed to implement the same threshold method in a different dataset or in another region.

The Coupled Model Intercomparison Project (CMIP) assessments of monsoon onset and retreat typically use precipitation threshold methods due to the lack of high temporal or vertical resolution output from all models to estimate vertically integrated quantities required for some methods (e.g. Geil et al., 2013; Zou and Zhou, 2015; Ha et al., 2020). Threshold methods have multiple shortcomings for CMIP assessments as the persistence and threshold parameters are tuned for observations with a specific seasonal cycle but models have a range of biases in the seasonality, magnitude and spatial distribution of rainfall (Pascale et al., 2019; García-Franco et al., 2020). The use of pre-defined threshold values may also not be suitable to compare different model experiments with changes in forcing where the climatological mean rainfall or the seasonal cycle may change within the model run. These shortcomings are relevant because a proper diagnosis of the seasonal cycle in CMIP assessments is key to understand and diagnose current and future changes to monsoon seasonality as a result of greenhouse forcing (Zhou et al., 2016; Wang et al., 2017).

The objective diagnosis of shorter time-scale rainfall variability, such as bimodal regimes and active and break phases of a monsoon, also requires methods that can separate relatively drier and wetter periods within the rainy season. For example, for the MSD of Central America and the Caribbean (section 2.3) the objective determination of the strength, spatial distribution and robustness of the bimodal signals is not straightforward. For example, the global method used in Bombardi et al. (2020) fails to diagnose the region of southern Mexico, Central America and the Caribbean as a bi-modal regime.

The majority of existing methods to diagnose bimodal signals in this region use geometric or statistical measures of the monthly-mean rainfall that measure the difference between the months of maximum rainfall and the drier months. However, this approach fails to capture the shorter-scale changes that have been shown to occur in both observations and model data, as the MSD does not start or end exactly on given calendar months (Magaña et al., 1999; García-Franco et al., 2020). Zhao and Zhang (2021) review and compare several methods to detect and measure the MSD, finding that using monthly-mean data and prior assumptions of the dates of the first and second peaks can lead to errors.

Only a handful of methods exist that can determine the characteristics of the MSD in Central America on sub-monthly timescales. Anderson et al. (2019) analysed the pentad-mean time-series from the Climate Hazards Infrared Precipitation with Stations (CHIRPS) dataset. After a double temporal smoothing of the time-series, Anderson et al. (2019) determined the MSD timings through a threshold method with parameters tailored to the CHIRPS dataset. In turn, Zhao et al. (2020) used daily-mean time-series and determined the two-peak structure through linear-regression analysis.

In short, multiple methods exist, each with various parameters fit for different purposes, but these methods present shortcomings for studies that compare results from multiple datasets or investigate model experiments where climatological rainfall and the seasonal cycle change. Both the objective determination of monsoon onset and retreat and the timings of bimodal regimes require a method that can analyse temporal changes to precipitation on several scales and that can be used on any gridded dataset.

The purpose of this chapter is then to present an objective approach that is more portable across datasets, regions, less prone to false-hits and robust for various purposes. This chapter introduces a wavelet transform method to determine monsoon onset and retreat dates using pentad-mean precipitation time-series. Wavelet algorithms have been extensively used in atmospheric research for multiple purposes, such as the detection of the boundary layer height (e.g. Brooks, 2003), as well as to analyse time-frequency features of a signal (e.g. Whitcher et al., 2000; Dimdore-Miles et al., 2021). In fact, Allen and Mapes (2017) used a wavelet analysis to determine monsoon onset and retreat using daily OLR data. The remainder of this chapter is organised as follows: section 2 describes the methods and datasets. Section

3 shows the results of applying the method to the Indian and North American Monsoons and the MSD. Section 4 summarises the method and discusses the results.

## 5.2 Data

### 5.2.1 Precipitation datasets and reanalysis data

This chapter uses three gridded precipitation datasets described in chapter 3: the TRMM v7 3B42, the CHIRPS, and the CMAP datasets. These three precipitation datasets are merged products, TRMM and CMAP mainly use microwave satellite measurements complimented by several other sensors and calibrated with rain-gauge data whereas CHIRPS uses several products from TRMM, as well as high-resolution station data. These datasets also differ in their end-product horizontal resolutions.

The precipitation output from the latest ECMWF reanalysis, ERA5, is used, which has been shown to exhibit a relatively good representation of the temporal characteristics of rainfall in the AMS in chapter 4. Other variables from ERA5 used to diagnose changes to the circulation associated with monsoon onset were daily-mean geopotential height at 500 hPa and wind speed ( $\vec{u}$ ) at several vertical levels.

### 5.2.2 Model data

Daily precipitation data from the CMIP6 archive are used, <sup>and</sup> retrieved from: <https://esgf-index1.ceda.ac.uk/projects/cmip6-ceda/>, to illustrate the method using standard climate model output. In particular, we use results from the piControl and historical simulations of HadGEM3 GC3.1 and UKESM1, described in chapter 3. The daily precipitation data were converted to pentad-scales.

## 5.3 The wavelet transform method

Wavelets are band-limited wave-like functions with specific mathematical properties that include a finite energy and zero-mean (Whitcher et al., 2000; Addison, 2017). The wavelet function is defined using two parameters, a dilation (a width or temporal scale) and a translation (centroid in time/space).

Wavelet transforms are the result of the inner product (convolution) of a wavelet function with a time-series or a signal (Addison, 2017). The wavelet transform can be thought of as a local comparison between the wavelet function and the observed signal for different frequencies. The information provided by a wavelet transform largely depends on the characteristics of the wavelet function used so that different wavelet functions are **used fit** for different purposes (Addison, 2017). For the purpose of finding the onset and retreat dates, the wavelet based on the Haar function is useful as this wavelet is suitable to find sudden changes in a signal (Addison, 2017; Brooks, 2003). The Haar wavelet is defined as the non-continuous piece-wise function:

$$\psi\left(\frac{t-b}{a}\right) = \begin{cases} 1 & b \leq t \leq b + \frac{a}{2} \\ -1 & b - \frac{a}{2} \leq t \leq b \\ 0 & elsewhere, \end{cases} \quad (5.1)$$

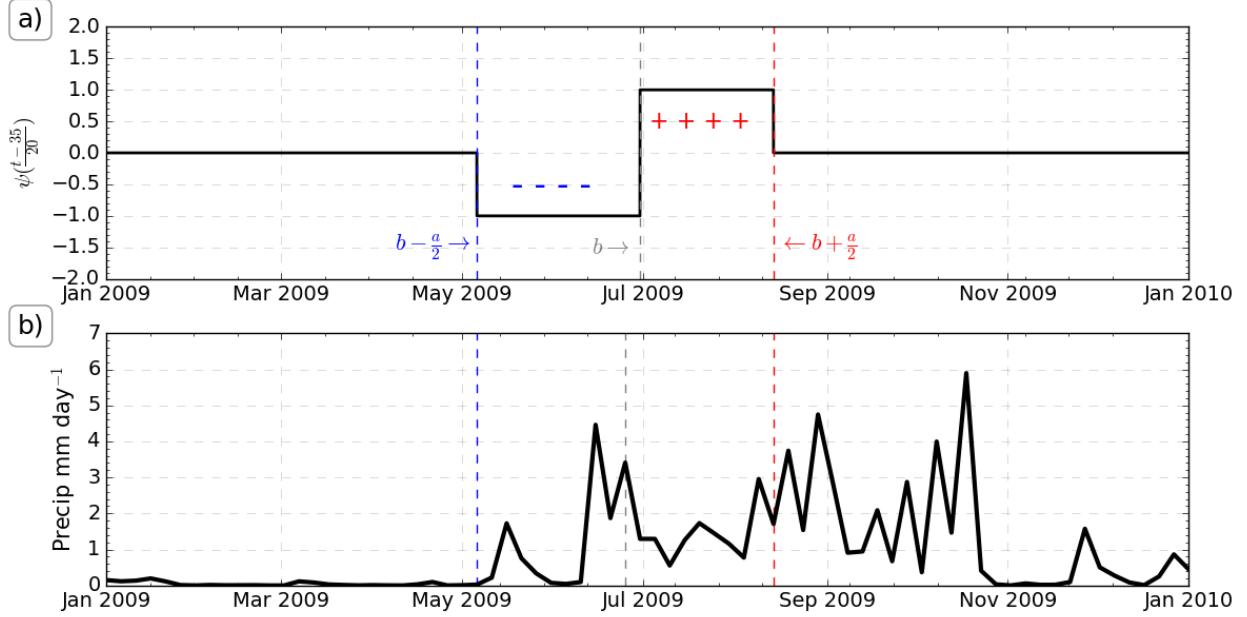
where  $a$  is the dilation coefficient,  $b$  is the centre of the wavelet or the translation coefficient and  $t$  is the time coordinate.

The wavelet covariant transform is then the inner product of the Haar wavelet with a timeseries (Brooks, 2003), i.e. 

$$W_f(a, b) = \frac{1}{a} \int_{t_i}^{t_f} pr(t) \psi\left(\frac{t-b}{a}\right) dt, \quad (5.2)$$

where  $pr(t)$  is a time-series of precipitation, either on daily or pentad scales and  $W_f(a, b)$  is the matrix of the covariant transform and  $t_i$  and  $t_f$  are the start and end time-points. No statistical treatment, normalization or anomaly, *a priori*, is calculated on the precipitation time-series  $pr(t)$  so the units of  $W_f$  are the same as the precipitation time-series (e.g. mm d<sup>-1</sup>).

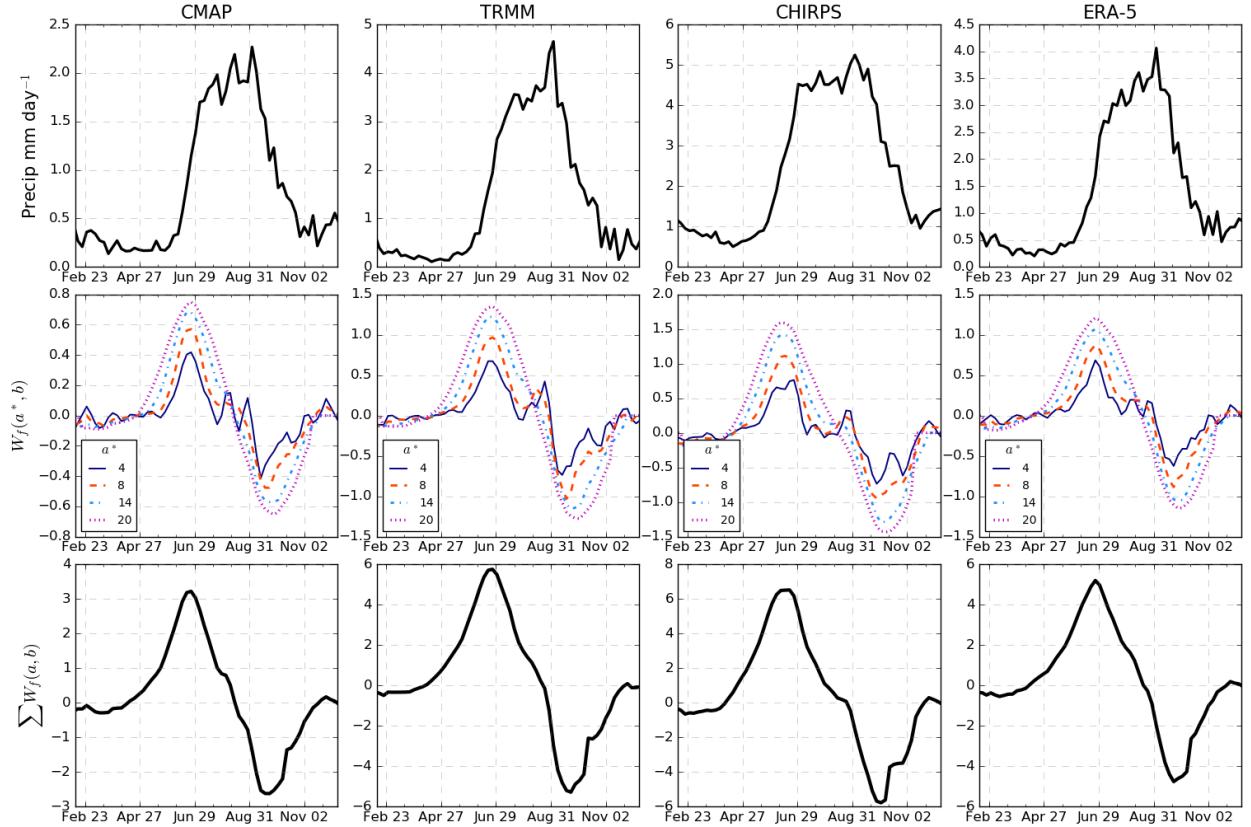
Monsoon timings can be observed as sharp changes to precipitation, i.e., rainfall sharply increases at onset and sharply decreases at retreat. However, measuring these changes can be difficult since precipitation time-series are typically noisy. The Haar wavelet is useful in these cases for signal detection since the wavelet transform is interpreted as gradients across different temporal scales and can smooth out the high-frequency variability using sufficiently large dilation scales. In other words, the wavelet covariant transform ( $W_f(a, b)$ ) measures gradients on a dilation scale  $a$  for each time-step ( $b$ ). 



**Figure 5.1:** (a) Haar wavelet at a dilation  $a = 20$  and translation  $b = 35$ , which is the 35th pentad around June 22. The positive and negative parts of the wavelet are highlighted in red and blue, respectively. (b) CMAP precipitation in 2009 in the North American Monsoon [20-27°N, 110-103°W].

Figure 5.1 shows the Haar wavelet and one year of observed precipitation in the North American Monsoon from the CMAP dataset. Figure 5.1a illustrates how the wavelet function compares the observed signal in the interval  $b < t \leq b + \frac{a}{2}$  with the values of the signal in the interval  $b - \frac{a}{2} \leq t < b$  where  $b$  in this case is a pentad time step. The wavelet transform coefficient for dilation  $a = 20$  pentads at the translation of  $b = 35$ , i.e., pentad 35, is a measure of the precipitation difference between the sum of the observed rainfall 10 pentads after pentad 35 and the sum of the observed rainfall 10 pentads before pentad 35 as illustrated in Figure 5.1b.

Figure 5.2 shows an example of the wavelet transform (WT) application using the observed climatological precipitation in the North American Monsoon in four different precipitation datasets. The mean climatological rainfall rates (upper panel) differ in their peak summer rainfall rates but qualitatively show similarities in the start and end dates of the rainy season. The wavelet transform coefficients ( $W_f(a, b)$  in the middle panel) for a small dilation  $a = 4$  are relatively noisy but show a clear maximum and minimum that correspond well with the maximum and minimum of longer dilations ( $a = 14, 20$ ). The sum of these four coefficients at each translation or pentad  $b$ , highlight a maximum found around June 22 and a



**Figure 5.2:** (upper) Climatological pentad-mean precipitation in four different observational datasets in the North American Monsoon [19–35°N, 110–103°W]. (middle) The wavelet transform coefficients ( $\text{mm d}^{-1}$ ) for four different dilations  $a$ . (lower) The sum of the wavelet transform coefficients ( $\text{mm d}^{-1}$ ) over dilations  $a = 4, 8, 14, 20$ .

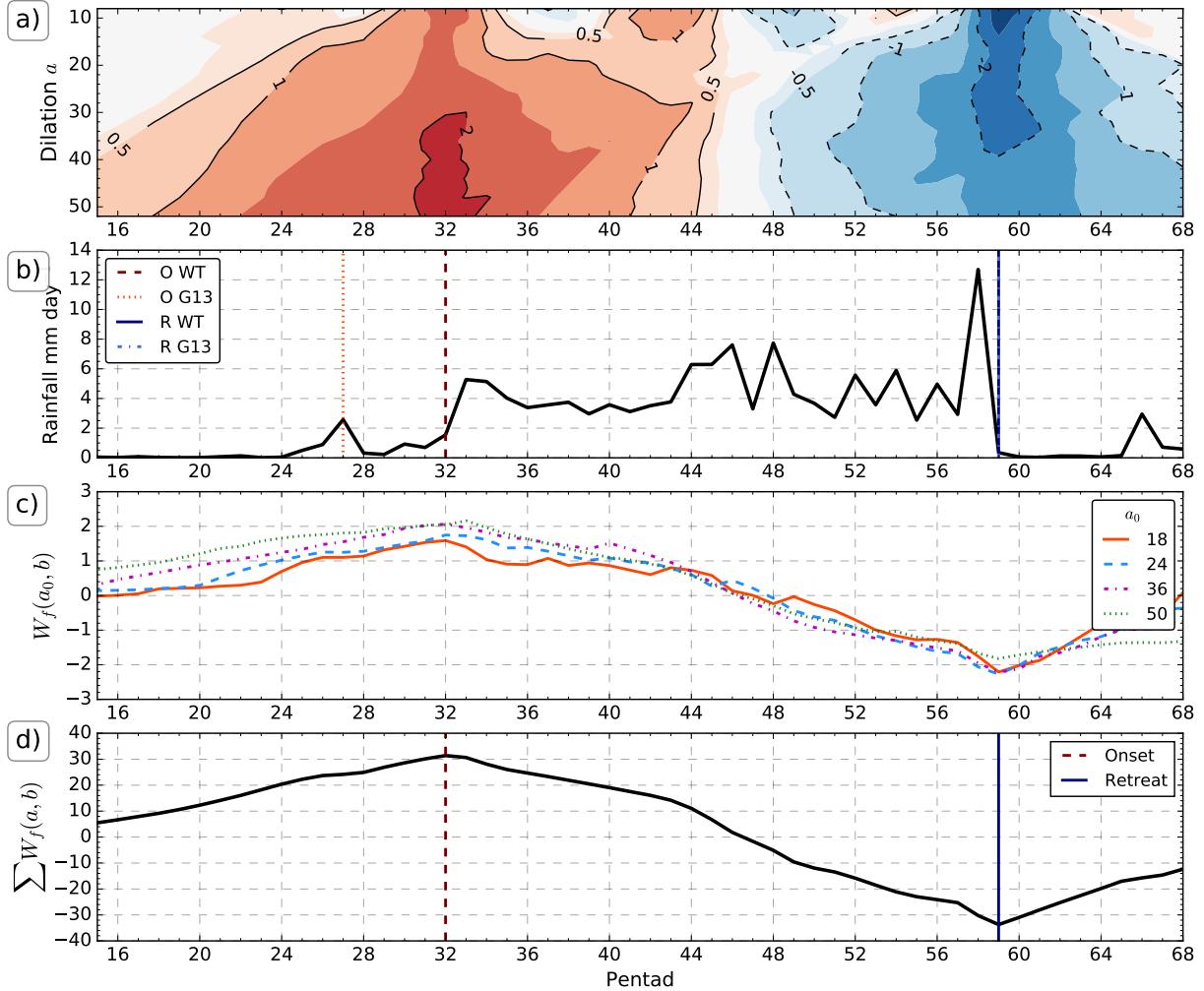
minimum found around September 21<sup>st</sup>, which agree well with previous results of mean onset and retreat dates in the North American Monsoon (e.g. Arias et al., 2012; Geil et al., 2013).

### 5.3.1 Identification of Monsoon Onset and Retreat

Local maxima in the wavelet transform highlight positive steps in the precipitation time-series with a coherent scale of  $a$  pentad steps. This interpretation is then extended to diagnose monsoon onset. The pentad ( $b^*$ ) corresponding to the maximum of the sum of the transform over a set of scales is defined as monsoon onset (MO), i.e:

$$MO = b^* \Leftrightarrow \sum_{a_0}^{a_f} W_f(a, b^*) = \max \left( \sum_{a_0}^{a_f} W_f(a, b) \right). \quad (5.3)$$

where  $a_0$  and  $a_f$  are the limits of the pentad scales, i.e., the dilation coefficients,  $b^*$  is the pentad of maximum  $\sum W_f(a, b)$  and the monsoon onset pentad. Similarly, the monsoon



**Figure 5.3:** Example determination of monsoon onset and retreat dates for the North American Monsoon [20–27°N, 109–103°W] in the TRMM dataset for 2009. (a) Wavelet transform coefficient matrix ( $\text{mm d}^{-1}$ ) as a function of time and dilation coefficient  $a$ . The shading is from -3 to 3  $\text{mm d}^{-1}$  with an interval of 0.5  $\text{mm d}^{-1}$ . (b) Observed precipitation, the onset and retreat dates as determined by the wavelet transform (WT) method (dashed) and Geil et al. (2013)'s threshold method (solid) are shown. (c) The wavelet transform coefficients for different dilations. (d) The sum of the WT ( $\sum W_f(a, b)$ ) ( $\text{mm d}^{-1}$ ); the maximum and minimum are shown in red and blue, representing onset and retreat pentads, respectively.

retreat pentad is found at the minimum of the sum of the wavelet transforms, i.e.,

$$MR = b^* \Leftrightarrow \sum_{a_0}^{a_f} W_f(a, b^*) = \min \left( \sum_{a_0}^{a_f} W_f(a, b) \right). \quad (5.4)$$

In other words, we seek to find monsoon onset and retreat using the maximum and minimum the wavelet power spectrum over a range of temporal scales. Several sensitivity

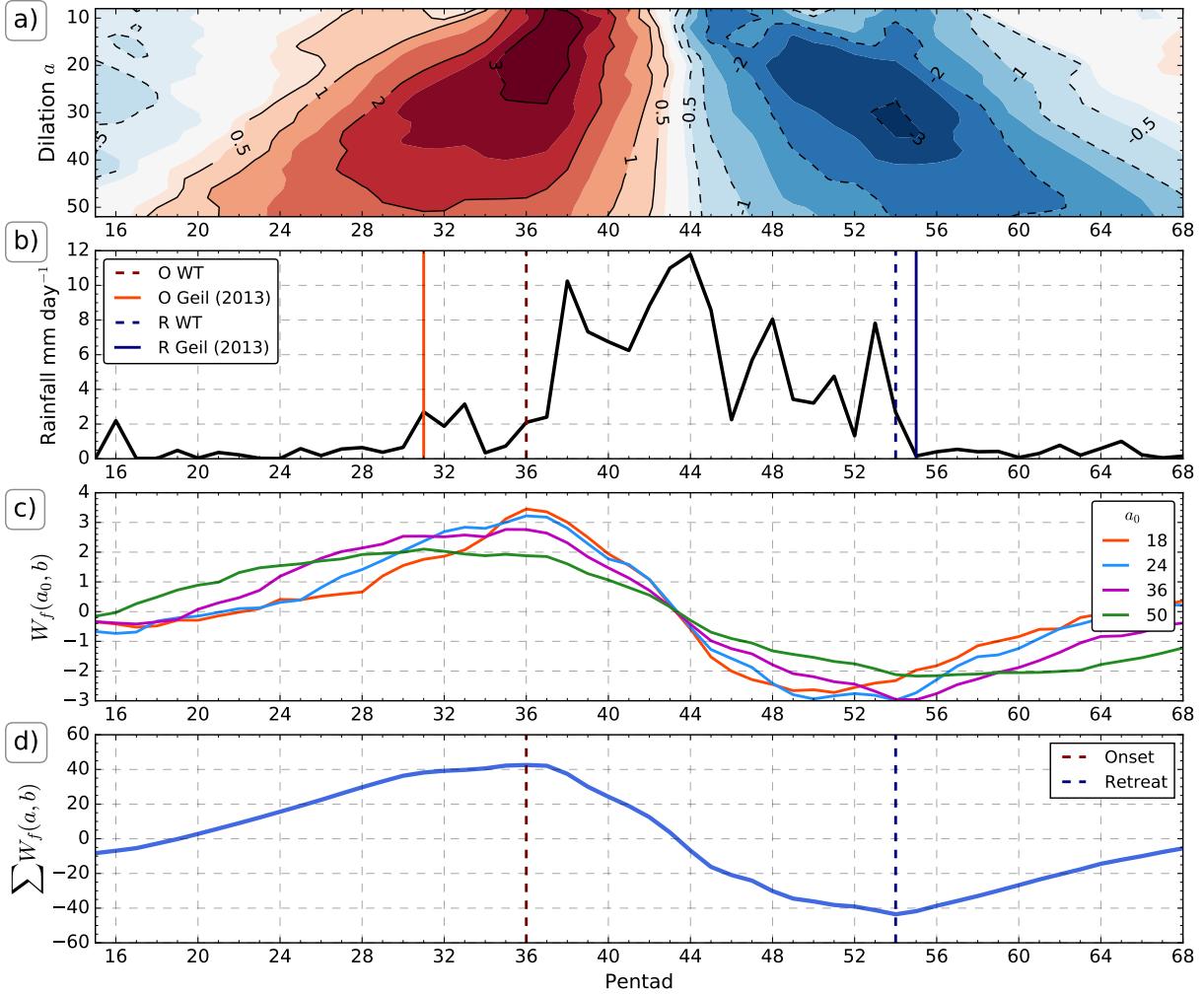
tests were performed with different dilation coefficients ( $a$ ) in the different observational datasets, models and regions and a set or vector of dilation scales was found to be optimal ~~to be used~~ for all purposes. The set of dilation coefficients  $\vec{a} = (28, 30, \dots, 54)$  was found to be robust, i.e., was able to capture the onset and retreat dates in all the datasets.

Monsoon onset is defined as the maximum sum of wavelet coefficients, capturing positive gradients within the scales of 14 to 27 pentads (half of the elements of vector  $a$  defined above). Monsoon Retreat has a similar definition, capturing the greatest negative gradient of precipitation over the same pentad scales.

For example, Figure 5.3 illustrates the method in the North American Monsoon in the TRMM dataset for 2009. Figure 5.3a shows the WT coefficient matrix, showing the changes in precipitation for dilations ranging from 10 to ~~40~~<sup>50(?)</sup>. A clear signal of positive coefficients is observed between pentads 28 to 34 and a similar negative signal observed in pentads 56 to 60. Figure 5.3b shows the time-series of the observed precipitation, which suggests that monsoon onset occurs sometime between pentads 28 and 34. Observed rainfall rapidly decreases after pentad 59 suggesting that monsoon retreat can be diagnosed around this pentad.

Figure 5.3c shows the WT coefficients as a function of pentad for several dilations ( $a_0$ ). The coefficients for all scales seem to follow a very similar behaviour, increasing during spring to reach a maximum around pentad 32 and thereafter decreasing to a minimum around pentad 59. When the sum of the wavelet transform coefficients across the dilations is computed (Figure 5.3d) this behaviour becomes much clearer. The maximum and minimum are found at pentads 32 and 59, respectively and these pentads define the onset and retreat times. For comparison, the results from the method of Geil et al. (2013) are shown in Figure 5.3b, indicating that this method may have found an earlier onset.

As a proof of concept, Figure 5.4 shows a similar example using precipitation area-averaged in the same region but using model data from the piControl simulation of HadGEM3 GC3.1 N216. The results show that the WT method can capture the onset and retreat dates with relatively high skill and that these dates are different from the dates computed using the method of G13, with the threshold method suggesting an earlier onset and a later retreat.



**Figure 5.4:** As in Figure 5.3, but for a year (1875) in the HadGEMGC3.1 N216 pre-industrial control simulation.

### 5.3.2 Extension for Application to the MSD signal

The wavelet method can be extended to characterise the shorter scale variations of precipitation of the MSD in Central America and the Caribbean. First, the monsoon onset and retreat dates are determined in the time-series from the area-averaged precipitation in the MSD region via the approach described in the previous section. Once the onset and retreat dates are established, an additional wavelet analysis determines the dates in which the MSD starts and ends. The onset and end of the drier period of the MSD can be found by computing the wavelet transform again but using smaller dilations and over a limited temporal range. In particular, the WT is only calculated in the 20 pentads before and after

the dates defining monsoon retreat and onset, respectively. The MSD Onset (MSDO) and MSD End (MSDE) are defined as the minimum and maximum, respectively, of the sum of the wavelet transforms (equations 5.3 and 5.4) using dilation coefficients  $\vec{a^*} = (10, 12, \dots, 24)$ .

Figure 5.5 illustrates the use of the WT method to determine the dates of MSDO and MSDE for the precipitation of 2017 in ERA-5. Figure 5.5a depicts the wavelet covariant transform matrix, showing the  $W_f$  coefficients for each dilation  $a$  at each pentad  $b$ . The onset of rainfall is diagnosed around the time-steps of highest positive  $W_f$  coefficients – around pentads 24 to 32 for almost all dilations. These positive coefficients are followed by a period of negative values from pentad 32 to pentad 40, which represent the decrease in precipitation, or relative drought, in the midsummer. The MSD is followed by another period of positive coefficients from pentad 44 to pentad 52, illustrating the so-called second peak of precipitation and, finally, a period of negative coefficients associated with monsoon retreat.

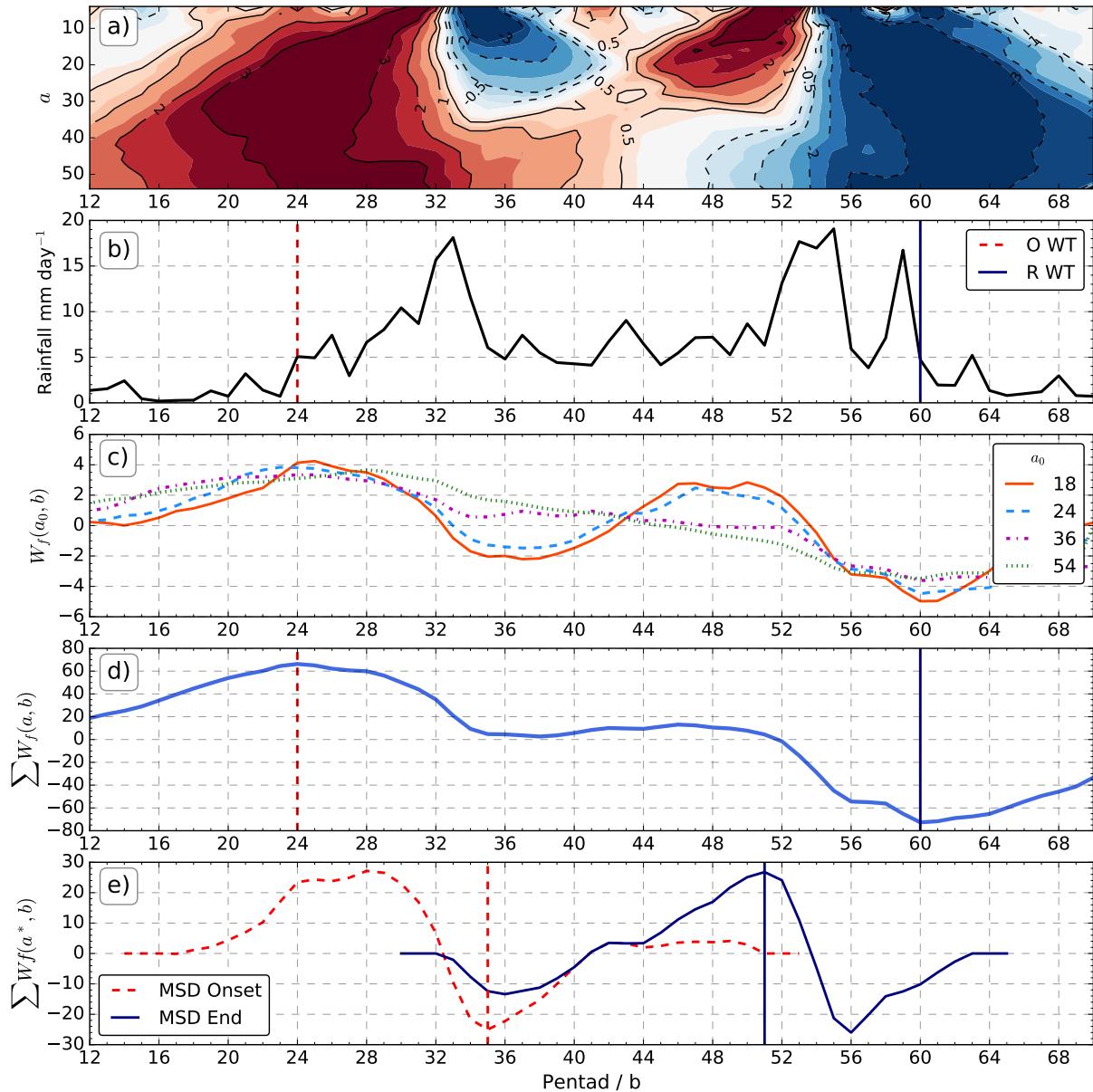
The coefficients of the wavelet transform ( $W_f(a_0, b)$ ) for selected dilations  $a_0$  (Figure 5.5c) show that the smaller dilations are more sensitive to smaller scale variations in the time series and longer dilations better highlight the long-term change of the time series. For example  $a_0 = 18$  shows signs of a MSD by showing two local maxima and two local minima, whereas  $a_0 = 54$  only shows a local maximum and a local minimum associated with onset and retreat.

The maximum and minimum of the sum over all dilations (Figure 5.5) depict the rainfall onset and retreat dates, respectively. The second wavelet transform  $W_f(a^*, b)$  is computed over smaller dilation coefficients ( $a^*$ ) near the onset and retreat dates as described above to highlight the MSDO and the MSDE. Figure 5.5e shows the sum of the wavelet transform coefficients  $W_f(a^*, b)$  and the pentad of the MSDO, 34, and MSDE, 49, corresponding to the minimum and maximum of the sum of these wavelet transform coefficients, respectively.

The strength of the MSD can be measured through the maximum and minimum sum of the coefficients  $\sum W_f(a^*, b)$  used to define the start and end dates of the MSD. For example, in Figure 5.5e the minimum of the  $\sum W_f(a^*, b)$  was  $-20 \text{ mm d}^{-1}$  found at pentad 35 and an opposite local maximum of  $+20 \text{ mm d}^{-1}$  at pentad 49. These two values, hereafter *coef1* and *coef2*, provide a quantitative measure of the strength of the MSD for this year in this dataset and will be used to measure the spatial variability of the magnitude of the MSD in the different datasets.

### 5.3.3 Comparative Methodologies

For validation purposes, the wavelet transform method is compared with existing methods which that determine onset and retreat in the North American and Indian monsoons. The threshold



**Figure 5.5:** Example characterisation of the MSD [11-19°N, 95-85°W] using ERA-5 data for 2017. (a) Wavelet transform spectra, (b) observed precipitation with the onset and retreat pentads shown in red and blue, respectively. (c) Wavelet transform coefficients for four different dilations ( $\text{mm d}^{-1}$ ). (d) The sum of the wavelet transform coefficients ( $\text{mm d}^{-1}$ ) for  $a = 28, \dots, 51$ . (e) The sum of  $W_f(a^*, b)$  ( $\text{mm d}^{-1}$ ) for dilation coefficients  $a = 12, \dots, 24$  showing the start (MSD Onset) and end (MSD End) of the midsummer drought.

methods of Geil et al. (2013) (hereafter G13) and Arias et al. (2012) (hereafter A12) are compared to the results of the wavelet transform in the North American Monsoon. G13 used a threshold of  $1.3 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  for at least 3 days for onset and 7 days for retreat for daily TRMM observations. In this study we adapt this method for TRMM to the same threshold value, but the onset pentad is the first pentad above the threshold whereas for retreat, we require rainfall to be below the threshold for two consecutive pentads. The method of A12 defines onset with two conditions. The first condition to find the onset pentad is that six out of the eight subsequent pentads must have rain-rates above the annual-mean climatological rainfall. The second condition is that at least six out of the eight previous pentads must be below the annual-mean climatological rainfall. The opposite definition is used to determine the pentad of monsoon retreat.

**In relation to**

In the Indian Monsoon region, a commonly used metric is known as the hydrological onset and withdrawal index (HOWI) based on moisture transport over the Arabian Sea (Fasullo and Webster, 2003; Sahana et al., 2015; Chevuturi et al., 2019). To compute the HOWI index, first, the vertically integrated moisture transport (VIMT) is computed from daily ERA-5 data in the Arabian sea, as described by Fasullo and Webster (2003), i.e.:

$$\chi = \frac{1}{g} \int_{p_0}^0 q \mathbf{V} dp, \quad (5.5)$$

where  $\chi$  is the VIMT,  $g$  is the gravitational acceleration,  $p$  are the pressure levels,  $q$  is the specific humidity and  $\mathbf{V}$  is the wind vector. The VIMT is then normalized using the transformation:

$$HOWI = 2 \left( \frac{\chi - \min(\bar{\chi})}{\max(\bar{\chi}) - \min(\bar{\chi})} \right) \quad (5.6)$$

where  $\chi$  is the unnormalized time-series,  $\bar{\chi}$  is the mean seasonal cycle of the unnormalized index and HOWI is the normalized index. The onset date is defined as the first day of each year where the HOWI index is greater than zero and the retreat date is the first day after the onset date that the HOWI index is negative (Fasullo and Webster, 2003; Sahana et al., 2015). The necessary daily data of moisture and wind speed on sufficient vertical levels to compute the HOWI index in the MOHC submissions to CMIP6 was not available,

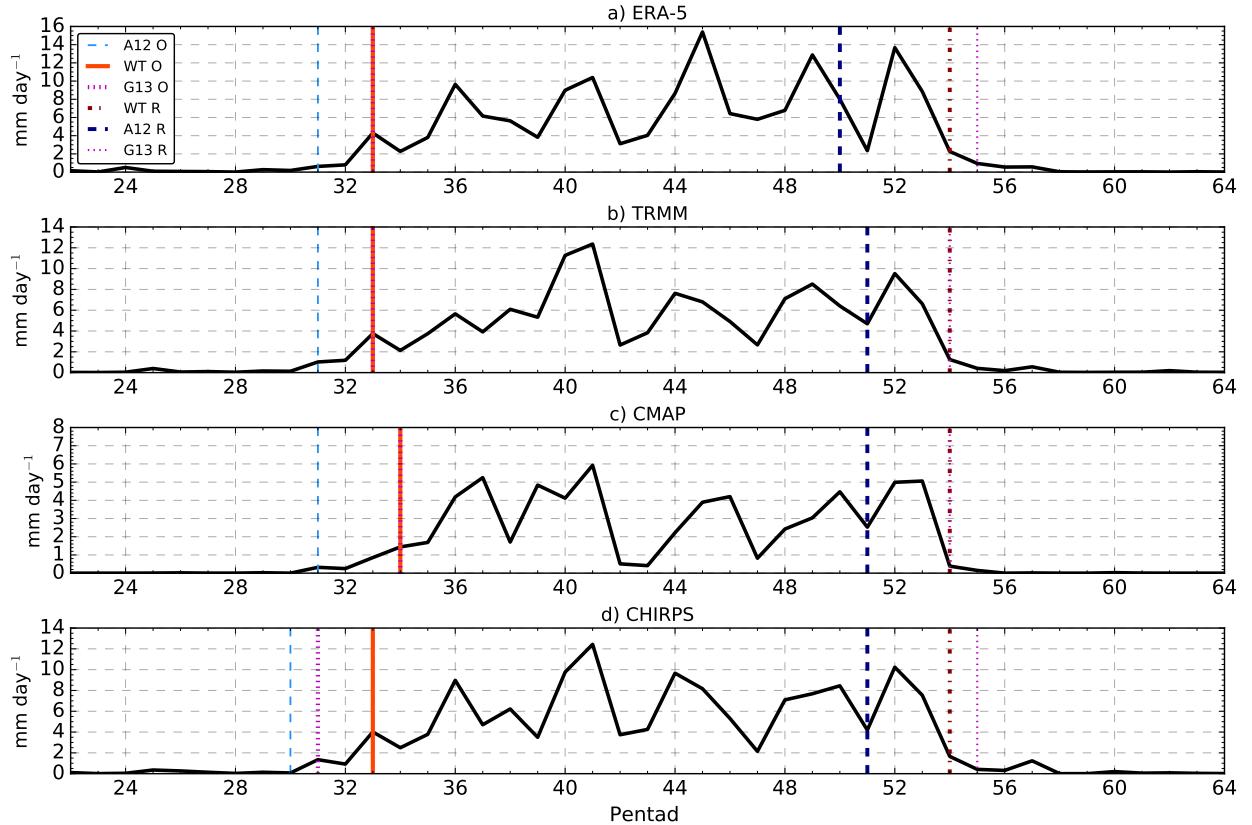
so the HOWI index can only be computed using ERA5 and will be compared to the WT method used on the observational gridded datasets.

## 5.4 Results

**monsoon** The ~~onset~~ and retreat dates were determined for each year in each ~~observed~~ and model dataset for the Indian, North American and MSD regions using the methods described in the previous section. The calculations were performed for area-averaged precipitation time-series representative of the core regions defining these monsoons. Calculations were also made at grid-box scales to illustrate the spatial distribution of the onset and retreat dates.

**Table 5.1:** Mean (standard deviation) pentads of monsoon onset (O) and retreat (R) in the North American Monsoon [110°-103°W, 20°-27°N] for observational datasets, reanalysis and model output with the wavelet transform method WT, G13's and A14's method. Pentad 34 corresponds to the period between June 17-22 and pentad 54 to the period Sep 27 - Oct 1. The results from the WT method in the model experiments ~~that~~ which are statistically different to both the CMAP and CHIRPS results ~~at~~ to the 95% confidence level, according to a Welch's t-test, are shown in bold.

Dataset / Experiment	WT O	WT R	G13 O	G13 R	A12 O	A12 R
TRMM	33.3 [±1.8]	55.8 [±1.9]	33.0 [±1.7]	56.6 [±1.4]	30.4 [±1.7]	53.8 [±2.0]
CMAP	33.2 [±1.6]	55.0 [±2.1]	36.0 [±3.3]	55.7 [±1.8]	31.7 [±3.0]	54.5 [±3.3]
CHIRPS	32.5 [±1.5]	54.7 [±1.9]	33.6 [±1.7]	56.1 [±1.4]	30.1 [±1.7]	53.6 [±2.5]
ERA-5	33.5 [±1.8]	55.5 [±2.0]	33.6 [±1.8]	56.4 [±1.4]	30.9 [±1.7]	53.3 [±2.3]
GC3 N216-pi	33.7 [±2.0]	55.1 [±1.8]	32.6 [±2.5]	55.9 [±2.3]	32.4 [±2.5]	53.8 [±3.8]
GC3 N96-pi	33.7 [±2.2]	55.0 [±2.1]	32.7 [±2.9]	56.3 [±2.0]	31.9 [±2.6]	54.1 [±4.1]
GC3-hist	33.8 [±2.3]	55.1 [±2.1]	33.3 [±2.9]	56.0 [±2.2]	31.9 [±2.6]	53.7 [±4.0]
UKESM-pi	<b>34.5</b> [±2.1]	54.8 [±2.1]	34.1 [±2.9]	56.1 [±1.9]	33 [±2.6]	53.9 [±4]
UKESM-hist	<b>34.3</b> [±2.2]	54.3 [±2.2]	34.4 [±3.2]	55.6 [±2.1]	33.1 [±3.0]	53.2 [±4.2]

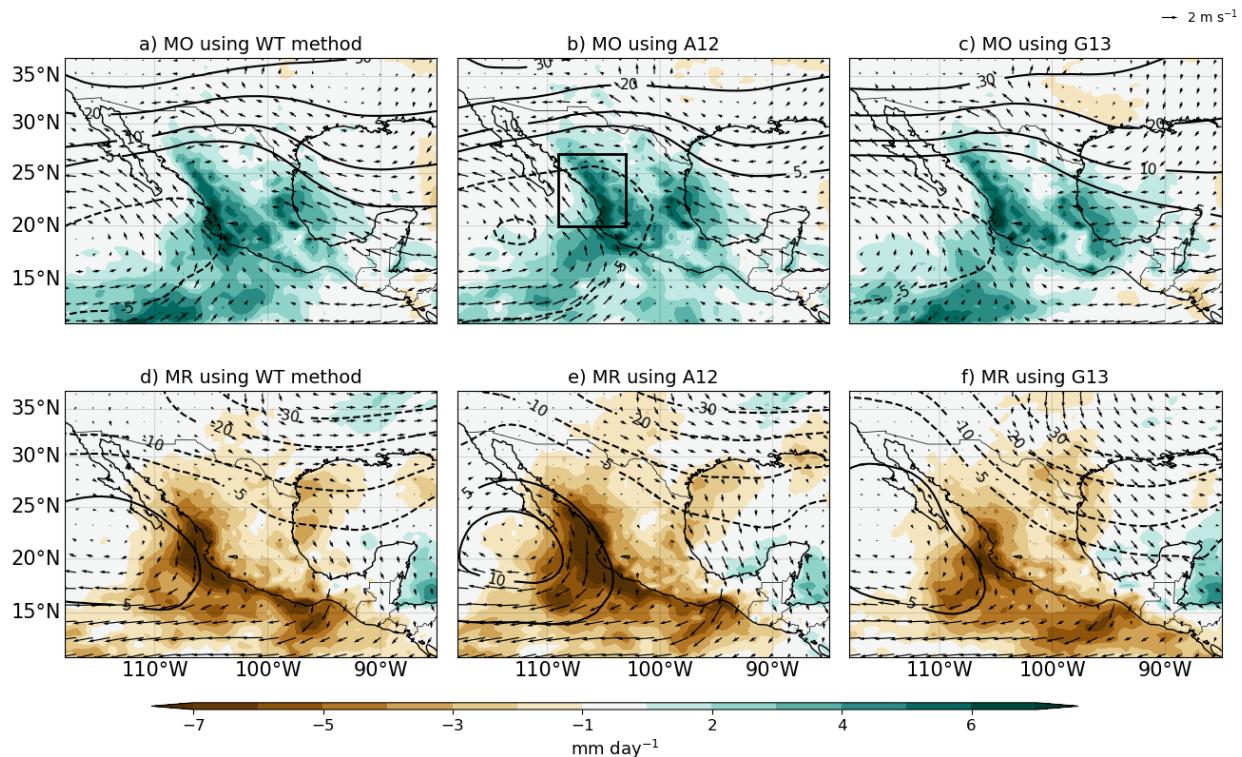


**Figure 5.6:** Pentad-mean precipitation for the North American Monsoon in 2010 in four precipitation datasets showing the onset and retreat pentads as diagnosed by the WT, the A12 and G13 methods. The area used to average the precipitation is illustrated in in Figure 5.7b).

### 5.4.1 The North American Monsoon

Table 5.1 shows the mean onset and retreat dates estimated using the G13, A12 and WT methods for precipitation time-series averaged over the North American monsoon. The table reports the results for three observational datasets, ERA-5 reanalysis and five climate model experiments. The observations agree that the onset date is found at pentad 33 (around June 15), according to the WT and the method by G13. However, the method of G13 reports a mean retreat date that is one pentad later than the WT method, i.e., around October 7th for G13's method and October 2nd for the WT's method. The method by A12 disagrees with G13 and the WT methods on both onset and retreat mean pentads, in both cases finding an earlier onset (pentad 30) and retreat (pentad 54) for all the observational datasets.

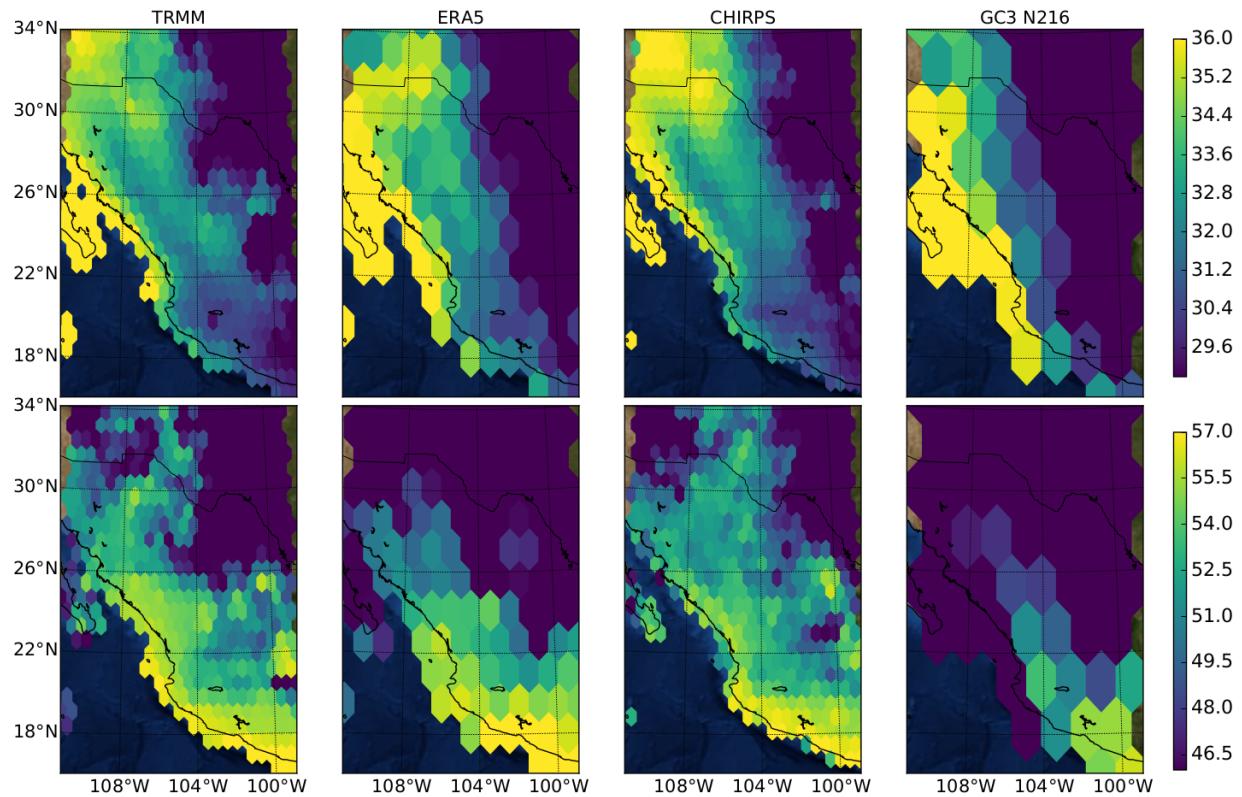
The climate models reasonably represent the mean onset and retreat dates, as only the onset dates from both experiments of UKESM1 are statistically different to the results



**Figure 5.7:** Precipitation (color contours), low level wind at 850-hPa and geopotential height (line contours) at 500 hPa anomalies for (a, b, c) the difference between the 10 days after monsoon onset and 10 days prior to onset (MO) using onset dates from (a) the WT (b) Arias et al. (2012) and (c) Geil et al. (2013). (d, e, f) are as in (a, b, c) but for monsoon retreat. The data and dates are obtained from ERA-5, and the area for the average is shown in the box in b).

of CMAP and CHIRPS. The similarities in onset and retreat dates confirm that the in the North American monsoon seasonal cycle is very well represented by these models in the North American monsoon, as suggested by chapter 4. The method by A12 in the simulations also produces an earlier onset and retreat dates when compared to the other two methods by about 1.5 pentads, but this is within the uncertainty range given by the interannual variability of the model data which is largest for the method of A12.

Figure 5.6 compares the estimated onset and retreat dates using these three methods in 2010 the North American Monsoon in 2010 using the three observational datasets and ERA-5. The method by A12 shows an earlier onset and retreat in all the datasets compared with whereas the WT and G13, which agree in almost every dataset. The WT method is the only method that estimated the same retreat date for all the four datasets and the same onset date in three of the four datasets, with the CMAP datasets showing an onset date one pentad later than the rest of the datasets.



**Figure 5.8:** Rainfall onset (upper) and retreat (lower) mean pentads in the North American Monsoon for observations and a climate model output using the WT method.

The meteorological changes associated with onset and retreat ~~in~~ <sup>of</sup> the North American Monsoon (Figure 5.7) are illustrated as the composite differences of the precipitation, wind and geopotential changes 10 days prior <sup>to</sup> and after onset and retreat. These changes to the circulation and precipitation are reasonably similar for all the three methods. The impact of monsoon onset in precipitation is slightly stronger ~~using the method~~ by A12 ~~compared to~~ <sup>diagnosed</sup> than the WT or G13. The WT method shows a very similar pattern and magnitudes of the circulation and precipitation anomalies of onset and retreat when compared to the other two methods. The method by G13 produces the weakest anomalies, particularly of precipitation whereas the method by A12 produces the strongest precipitation and geopotential anomalies, particularly at retreat.

Figure 5.8 shows the spatial distribution of the mean onset and retreat dates in the North American Monsoon region for various datasets. There is high agreement between TRMM, CHIRPS and ERA5 on the spatial pattern of mean onset and retreat dates. Onset

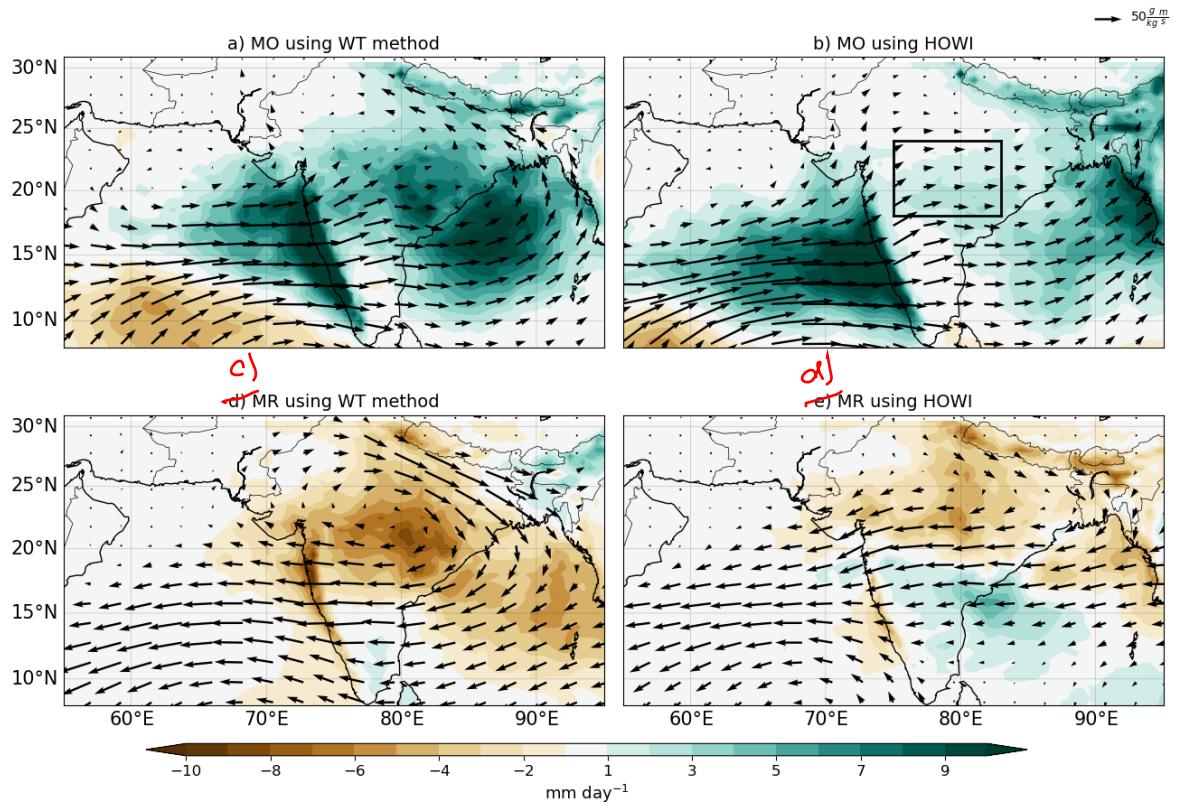
in western Mexico is around pentad 31 (around June 1st), whereas in Chihuahua and Sonora the rainy season begins shortly after pentad 35 (June 22). The pattern in the medium-resolution simulation GC3 N216 piControl is consistent with observations, particularly during onset. However, the spatial pattern of the mean retreat dates in the northern regions of the monsoon show an earlier than observed retreat, possibly associated with the dry bias in this region in these models (see chapter 4). 

#### 5.4.2 The Indian Monsoon

Table 5.2 compares the mean onset and retreat dates in the Indian Monsoon, computed from the HOWI index using ERA5 data, and the WT used for gridded precipitation datasets. The onset and retreat dates from the HOWI index were converted from the daily to the pentad-scale to compare with the WT. The mean onset date for the HOWI index is May 27th between pentads 29 and 30, and retreat is between pentads 49 and 50, around September 3rd. The mean onset date found using the WT method for the four observational datasets was pentad 32, about two pentads later than the HOWI index. The mean retreat date for the WT method (pentad 53) was two pentads later than the HOWI results. 

**Table 5.2:** Mean (standard deviation) pentads of monsoon onset (O) and retreat (R) in the Indian Monsoon using the WT method on observed, reanalysed and modelled time-series as well as for the HOWI index. The region over which precipitation was area-averaged for the WT method was [75°-83°E, 18°-24°N]. The mean onset and retreat dates that are significantly different to the 99% confidence level to the CMAP dataset are shown in bold.

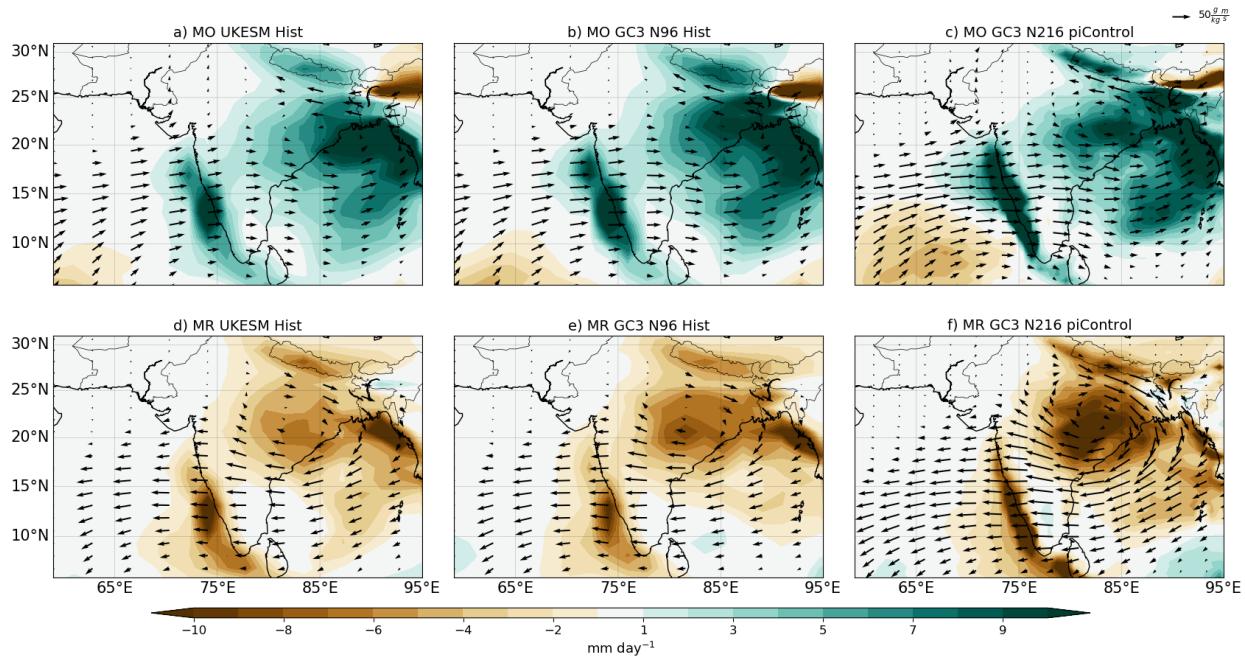
Dataset	Onset	Retreat
TRMM	31.6 [ $\pm 1.8$ ]	53.2 [ $\pm 1.9$ ]
CMAP	31.8 [ $\pm 1.6$ ]	53.3 [ $\pm 2.6$ ]
CHIRPS	31.5 [ $\pm 1.4$ ]	53.4 [ $\pm 1.9$ ]
ERA-5	31.8 [ $\pm 1.9$ ]	52.7 [ $\pm 2.6$ ]
GC3 N216-pi	<b>34.4</b> [ $\pm 1.3$ ]	<b>50.5</b> [ $\pm 1.9$ ]
UKESM-pi	<b>36.1</b> [ $\pm 3.1$ ]	<b>51.9</b> [ $\pm 3.2$ ]
UKESM-hist	<b>36.0</b> [ $\pm 3.9$ ]	<b>51.8</b> [ $\pm 3.3$ ]
GC3 N96-pi	<b>35.5</b> [ $\pm 1.8$ ]	<b>51.8</b> [ $\pm 2.3$ ]
GC3-hist	<b>35.7</b> [ $\pm 2.1$ ]	<b>51.5</b> [ $\pm 2.8$ ]
HOWI (ERA5)	<b>29.5</b> [ $\pm 2.3$ ]	<b>49.3</b> [ $\pm 2.4$ ]



**Figure 5.9:** Precipitation anomalies (color contours) and the moisture vectors showing the product of specific humidity ( $q$ ) and wind ( $\vec{u}$ ) at 850 hPa. (a, b) shows the difference between the 10 days after monsoon onset and 10 days prior to onset (MO) using (a) the wavelet transform method (WT) and (b) the dates estimated using the HOWI index. (c, d) are as in (a, b) but for monsoon retreat. The data and calculations are from ERA-5 over the box in panel b).

Overall, the models exhibited later than observed onset (+4 pentads) and earlier retreat (-2 pentads) dates. The differences between the hydrological determination of onset and retreat dates, through HOWI, and the WT method on gridded precipitation datasets is statistically significant, according to a Welch's t-test comparing the defined dates. These differences may be due to the different regions where each method is defined, i.e., HOWI is defined over the whole of the Arabian Sea where an earlier onset would be expected when compared to rainfall over mainland India, where the WT method was applied.

Figure 5.9 shows the differences between the WT (based on ERA5 precipitation) and HOWI methods in their characterisation of the meteorological changes associated with onset and retreat. The comparison of precipitation and moisture fluxes at 850 hPa anomalies 10 days prior to and following monsoon onset and retreat show that the HOWI index better

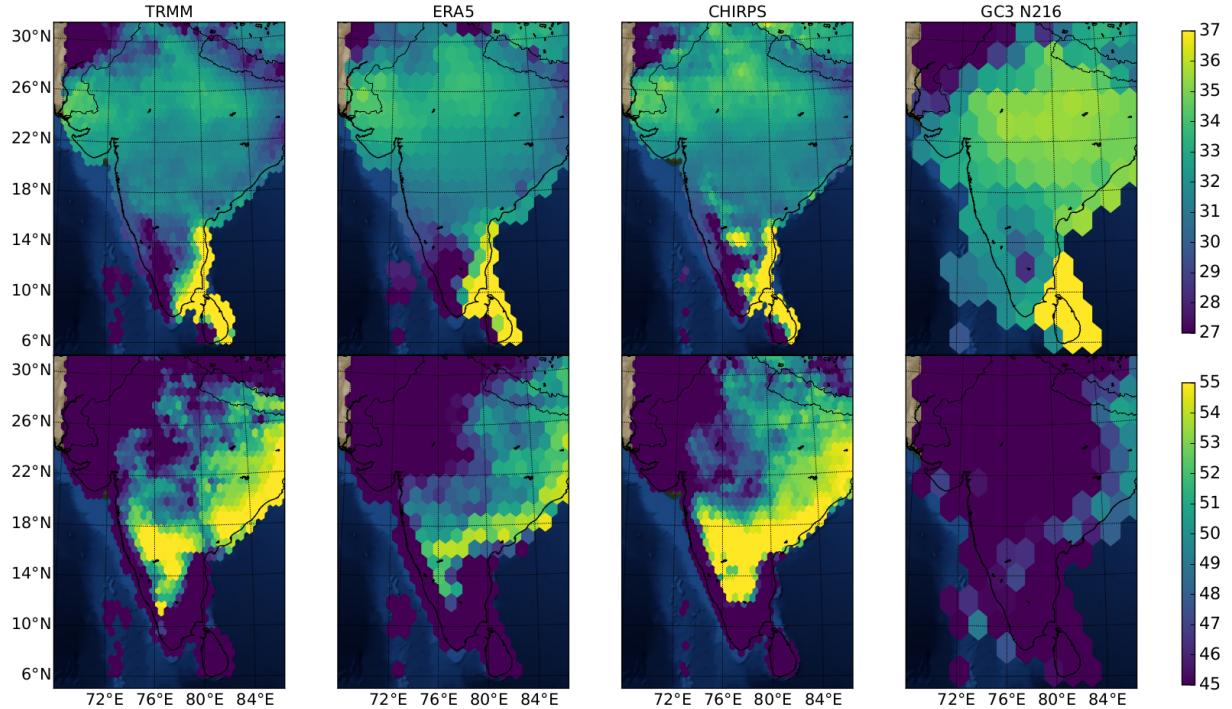


**Figure 5.10:** As in Figure 4.14 but showing onset and retreat for three different climate model experiments: (a, d) UKESM1 historical, (b) HadGEM3 GC3.1 N96 historical, (c) HadGEM3 GC3.1 N216 piControl.

captures the moisture transport in the Arabian Sea whereas the WT method best captures precipitation differences over mainland India. The HOWI index characterisation of the moisture flux in the Arabian Sea may be out-of-phase with precipitation over mainland, and this lag could possibly explain some of the results of Table 5.2.

The WT method is also able to capture onset and retreat dates and the associated anomalies within the climate model output. Figure 5.10 shows the precipitation and moisture transport anomalies around the onset and retreat of the Indian monsoon in three different climate model experiments. While the models show significant biases in the timings of the monsoon, according to a Welch's t-test (Table 5.2), the patterns of rainfall and moisture transport anomalies to the observations around both onset and retreat agree well with reanalysis.

The spatial distribution of the mean onset and retreat dates <sup>of</sup> in the Indian monsoon as characterized by the WT method (Figure 5.11) shows that the mean onset and retreat dates vary greatly spatially on the southern tip of the subcontinent. While most of northern India has a mean onset date around pentad 33, the western coast shows an earlier onset



**Figure 5.11:** As in Figure 5.7 but for the Indian Monsoon.

by about one or two pentads. There is high agreement in the onset date in the three observed/reanalysed datasets over mainland India and between TRMM and ERA5 over the western coast of India. The earliest onset is found on the western coast around pentad 25–27 and extending to central India by pentad 31. The GC3 N216 simulation, however, shows a later onset than observed by about two pentads in most regions. In contrast, the spatial pattern for the mean retreat date shows higher spatial variability between the western and eastern coasts of India. CHIRPS shows the latest retreat dates over the south-central states when compared to TRMM and ERA-5.

#### 5.4.3 The midsummer drought

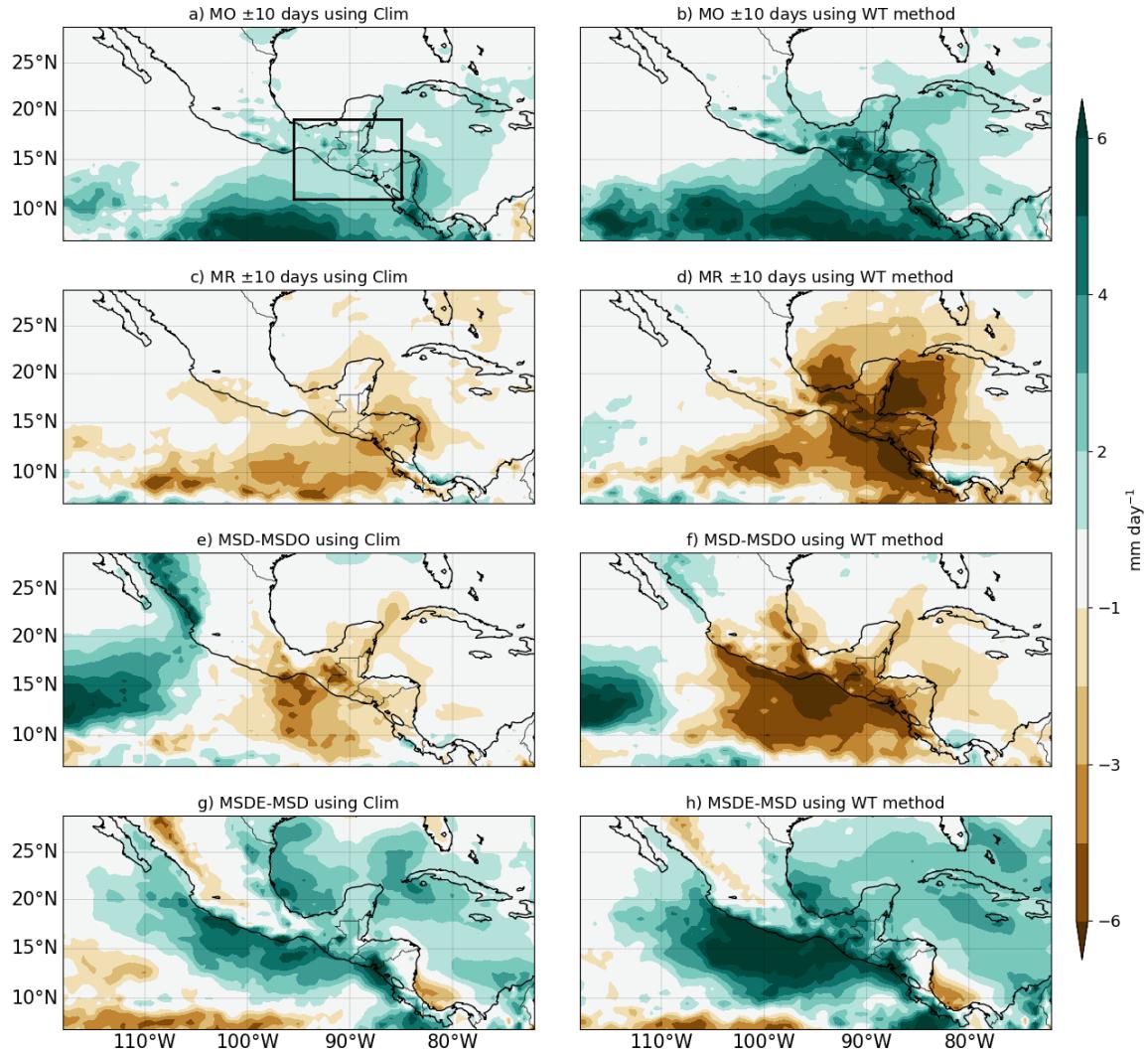
Results from the application of the wavelet transform to the MSD, including the mean onset and retreat dates as well as the start and end dates of the MSD period, are reported in Table 5.3. The mean onset date in the observations is around pentad 27 (May 14), whereas the retreat date is around pentad 61 (October 31). The end of the so-called first-peak period, or start of the relatively drier period (MSD), referred to in this thesis as MSD

**Table 5.3:** Mean pentads of rainfall onset (RO), rainfall retreat (RR), MSD Onset (MSDO) and MSD End (MSDE) in the MSD region [11-19°N, 95-85°W- illustrated in Figure 5.12a.] estimated through the WT method. Pentad 35 corresponds to the period between June 22-27 and pentad 52 to the period Sep 13-18. The model dates shown in bold are statistically different from CMAP and CHIRPS results to the 99% confidence level according to a Welch's t-test.

Dataset	RO	RR	MSDO	MSDE	coef1	coef2
TRMM	25.8	61.6	35.9	49.0	-9.5	10.4
	[±2.2]	[±3.1]	[±2.4]	[±4.1]	[±4.2]	[±5.4]
CMAP	26.7	60.6	36.5	48.0	-7.1	7.7 [±4.3]
	[±1.9]	[±3.3]	[±2.6]	[±4.2]	[±4.2]	
CHIRPS	26.7	61.4	36.5	48.3	-4.7	5.5 [±3.2]
	[±2.3]	[±3.1]	[±2.7]	[±3.5]	[±2.7]	
ERA-5	26.5	61.8	36.1	48.8	-10.7	11.8
	[±2.2]	[±3.2]	[±2.7]	[±3.5]	[±5.4]	[±6.6]
UKESM- pi	27.4	61.9	<b>38.2</b>	<b>49.1</b>	-18.2	14.6
	[±2.4]	[±3.2]	[±2.7]	[±2.7]	[±8.7]	[±8.0]
GC3 N96- pi	26.9	62.3	<b>37.8</b>	<b>49.9</b>	-21.7	16.8
	[±2.6]	[±3.5]	[±2.1]	[±3.1]	[±9.4]	[±8.0]
GC3 N216- pi	26.9	62.2	<b>38.4</b>	<b>50.0</b>	-23.5	14.1
	[±2.3]	[±3.5]	[±2.1]	[±2.7]	[±8.0]	[±6.7]
GC3-hist	26.9	<b>62.8</b>	<b>37.8</b>	<b>50.3</b>	-19 [±8.7]	17.1
	[±2.7]	[±3.7]	[±2.4]	[±2.6]		[±8.4]
UKESM- hist	<b>28.5</b>	<b>62.8</b>	<b>38.7</b>	<b>50.1</b>	-20.3	14.9
	[±2.7]	[±3.5]	[±2.8]	[±2.7]	[±10.1]	[±8.3]

onset (MSDO) is consistently found in all the observed datasets to be around pentad 36 (around June 29). The end of the drier period or start of the second peak, referred to in this thesis as MSD end (MSDE) is also consistently determined to be between pentads 48 to 49 in the four observational datasets. In other words, the MSD has a mean duration of 12 pentads, or around two months, from late June to late August. In the MOHC simulations, the MSD starts slightly later than observed by about two pentads, and ends about one pentad later than observed around September 10.

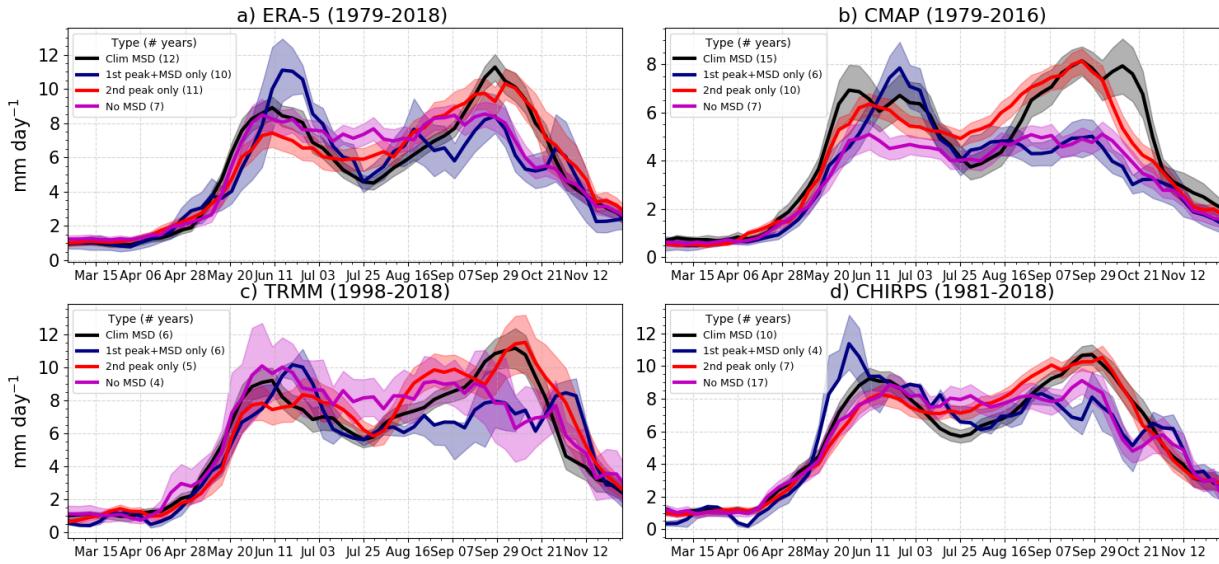
Figure 5.12 shows the rainfall anomalies associated with the different periods (stages) of the rainy season in southern Mexico and Central America. These include monsoon onset and retreat, and the start and end of the MSD, the MSDO and MSDE, respectively. For each stage, we compared the anomalies computed by separating the stages using the WT method or the dates of the climatological monsoon onset, retreat, MSDO and MSDE as found in



**Figure 5.12:** Precipitation anomalies for (a, b) the difference between the 10 days after monsoon onset and 10 days prior to onset (MO) using (a) the climatological dates of onset and (b) the dates estimated using the WT method. (c, d) are as in (a, b) but for monsoon retreat. (e, f) Difference between the Midsummer Drought (MSD) and the 10-day mean prior to the onset of the MSD (MSDO). (g, h) as in (e, f) but showing the difference between the end of the MSD (MSDE) and MSD. The data and calculations are from ERA-5. The black rectangle in a) shows the MSD area used to average the precipitation throughout this study.

Table 5.3. In this way, the ability of the WT method to characterise rainfall variations is tested against a first best guess – the climatological mean dates.

Overall, using the dates for MSDO and MSDE from the climatological dates results in weaker anomalies than compositing via the specific dates for each year obtained with the WT method. Even though the area-averaged signal used to diagnose the different

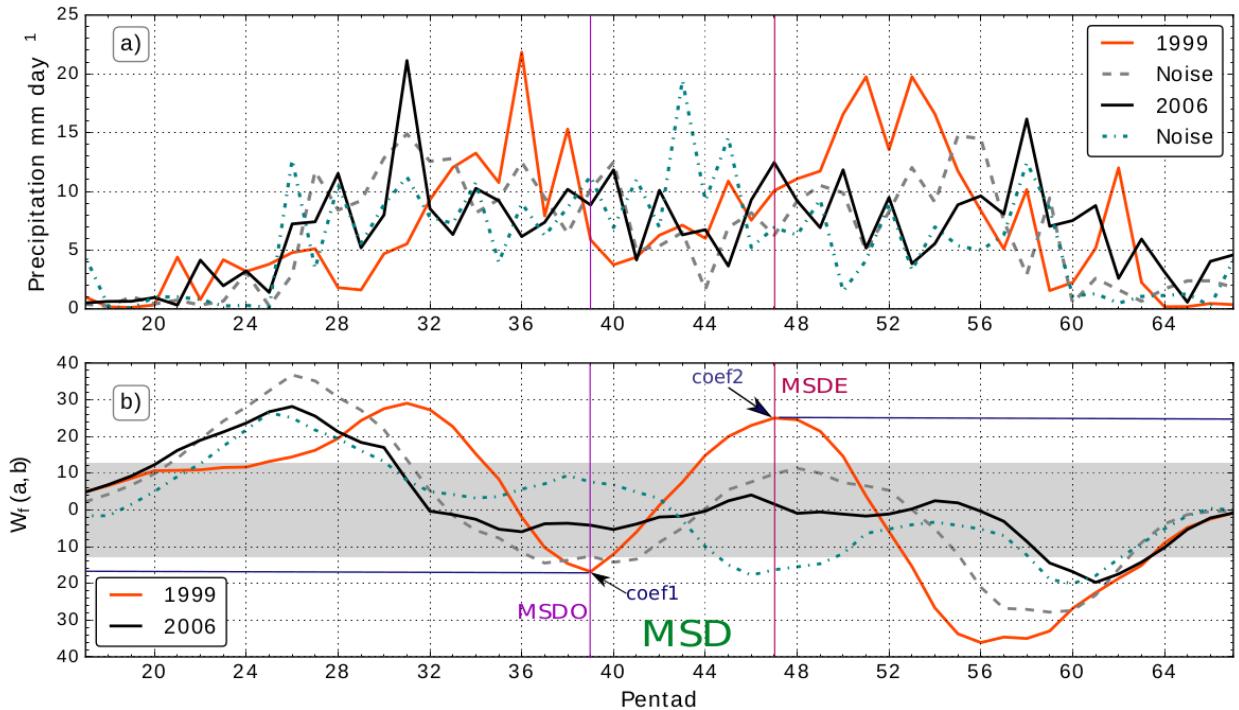


**Figure 5.13:** Pentad-mean precipitation in years differentiated by MSD characteristics in four datasets: (a) ERA-5, (b) CMAP, (c) TRMM and (d) CHIRPS. The shading for each line represents first to third quantile of the distribution provided a bootstrapping with replacement all the years in each composite 10000 times.

MSD stages focuses on a small region of southern Mexico and northern Central America, the anomalies associated with the onset and end of the MSD (Figures 5.12f, h) extend across the East Pacific warm pool, most of the western coast of Mexico and into to the Caribbean Sea and Cuba. This result suggest that the MSD is part of a regional-scale process ~~on the~~ result of local-scale processes.

The analysis of individual years of observed precipitation in the selected area-averaged time-series showed that not all years showed a bimodal signal in the area-averaged precipitation (Fig. 5.13). In fact, a given year could be classified as having (1) a canonical two-peak structure separated by an MSD, (2) only having a first peak and an MSD but no second peak, (3) only having a second peak but no clear MSD or (4) a plateau-like monsoon season with no MSD-type variations (see Fig. 5.13).

Due to this year-to-year variability in the characteristics of the seasonal cycle, an objective measure was defined to determine whether a signal presented a robust MSD-bimodal seasonal cycle. For this purpose, the WT algorithm was applied to randomly generated precipitation time-series. The random time-series are constructed by randomly sampling observations in



**Figure 5.14:** (a) Pentad-mean precipitation in two years of TRMM data: 1999 and 2006 and two randomly generated precipitation time-series (see text). (b) Sum of the wavelet transforms of the time series in (a). The shaded region in gray in (b) corresponds to the interval between the first quantile of *coef1* and the third quantile of *coef2* of 10,000 random timeseries constructed with TRMM data. The onset (MSDO) and end (MSDE) of the relatively drier period, as well as the location and values of *coef1* and *coef2* for 1999 are labelled in (b).

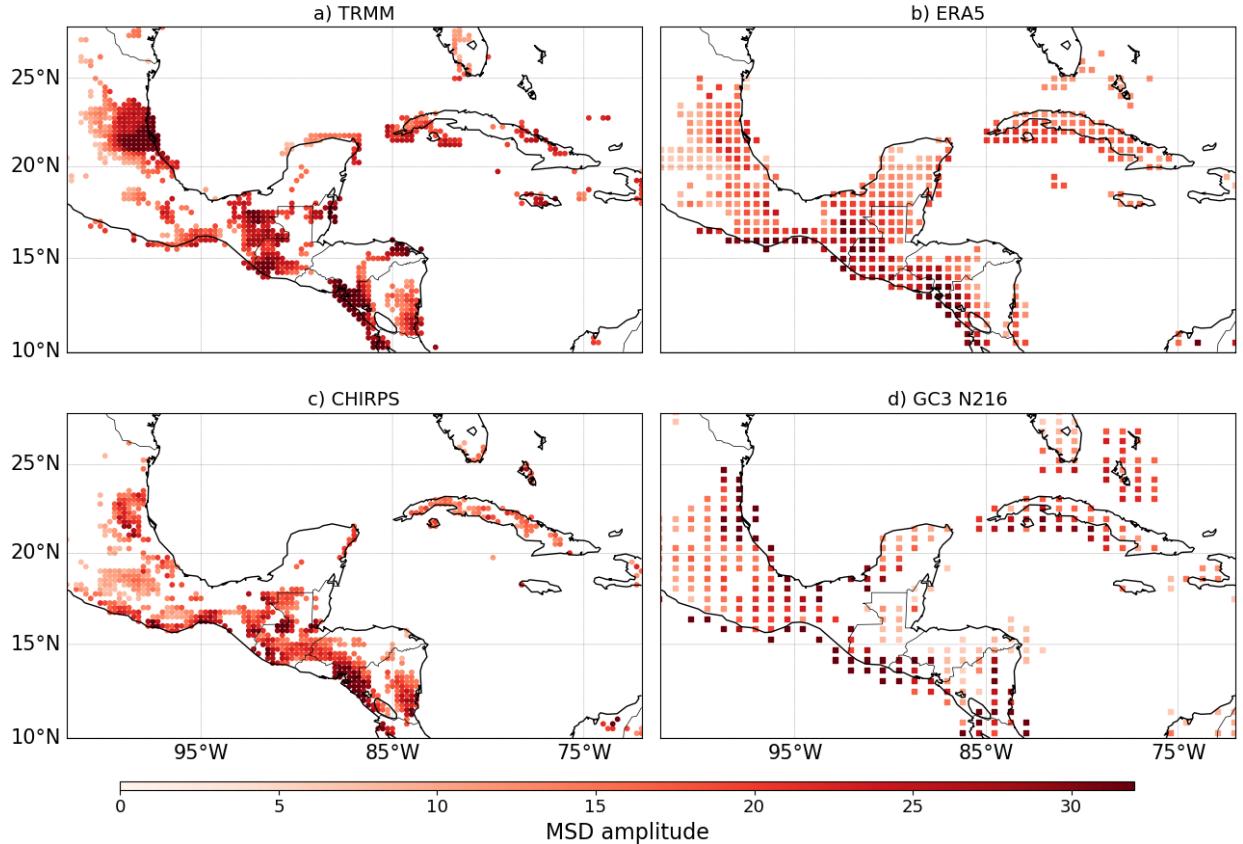
the wet and dry seasons. The pentad-mean onset and retreat dates from Table 5.3 were used to composite the observations into dry and wet distributions.

For a random time-series that aims to mimic one year of precipitation, the rainfall values for each pentad in the year are randomly selected from the dry or wet distributions, depending on the pentad. In this way, the value of a given pentad of the random time-series may have been observed at a different pentad; the only constraint is that the random values come from pentads that were observed in the same season: dry or wet. The logic behind this approach is that in most monsoon regions, the peak monsoon rainfall should follow a plateau, see for example the North and South American monsoons in Figure 4.9 in the previous chapter. However, a bimodal regime would show a notable decrease in precipitation in the middle of the rainy season, such that it cannot be explained by the inherent short-scale variability of rainfall.

This approach has two advantages. First, ~~that the approach~~ <sup>it</sup> imposes the monsoon-like feature of a sharp wet-dry contrast but secondly, the random selection in the wet season removes the possible signal of the MSD in the climatological rainfall. The random time series are then constructed by randomly drawing values at each pentad from the wet or dry season distributions of each dataset. Then, the WT method was used on 10,000 of these random-time series. This approach rendered a distribution of coefficients ( $coef1$  and  $coef2$ ) essentially representing the variability of the WT method applied to noise.

Figure 5.14 shows the pentad-mean time-series from two years in the TRMM dataset, and two randomly generated time-series. The coefficients  $coef1$  and  $coef2$ , illustrated in Figure 5.14b, measure the difference in precipitation between the first peak and the MSD period and the MSD and the second peak, respectively. The first quantile of  $coef1$  and the third quantile of  $coef2$  provide a measure of robustness for the observed  $coef1$  and  $coef2$ . In other words, for a year to be classified as having a robust MSD signal, the resulting  $coef1$  and  $coef2$  of the WT procedure must be lower and higher, respectively, than those obtained for a random time-series. The analysis of  $coef1$  then determines the existence of a first-peak MSD type variability and  $coef2$  determines the robustness of a possible second-peak for that year. By this procedure, a given year could fit into four categories:

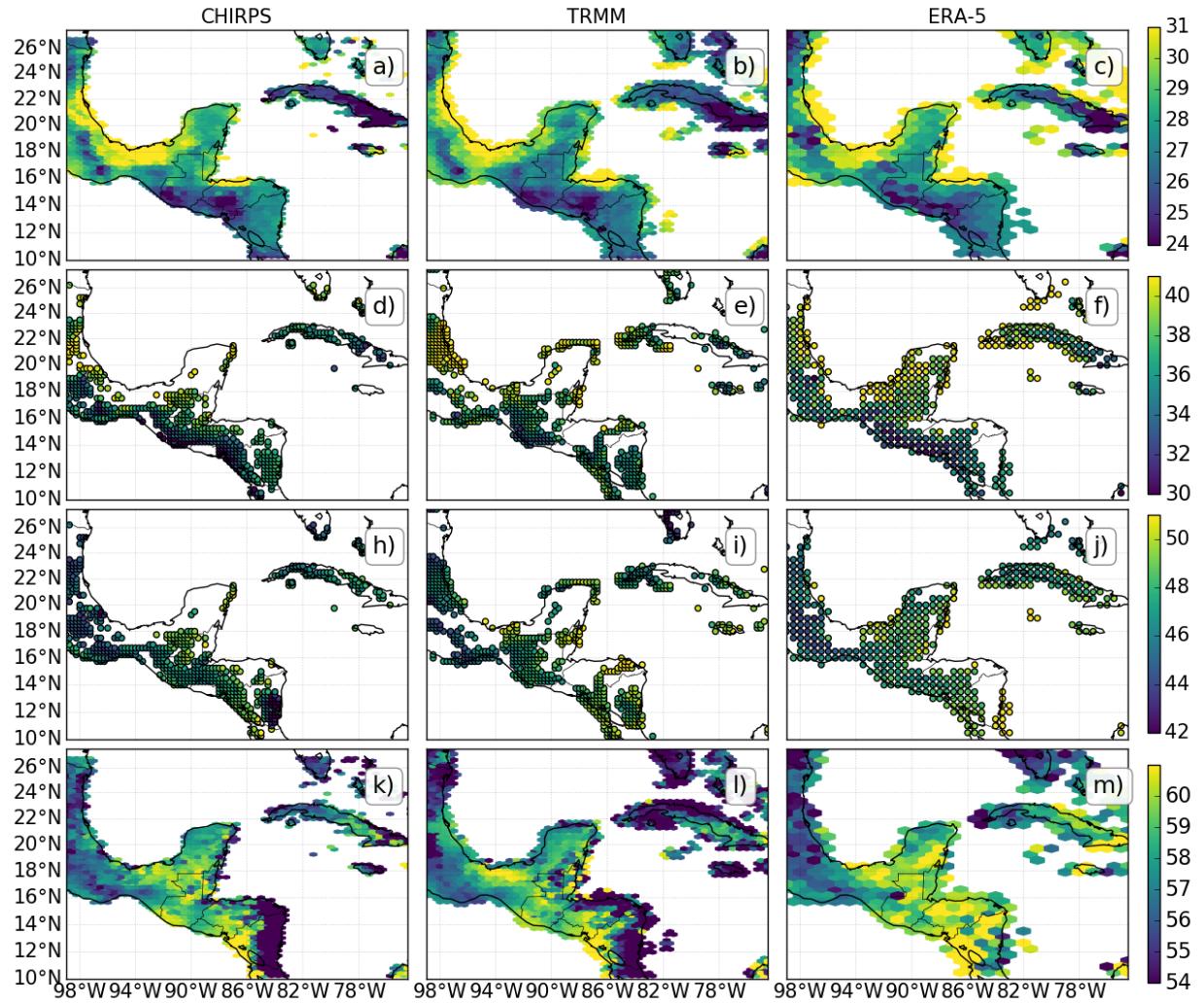
- Canonical MSD:  $coef1$  lower than the first quantile (25%) of random  $coef1$  and  $coef2$  higher than the third quantile (75%) of random  $coef2$ .
- 1st peak+MSD:  $coef1$  lower than the first quantile of random  $coef1$  but  $coef2$  lower than the third quantile of random  $coef2$ . In other words, the second peak is not distinguishable from noise.
- 2nd peak only:  $coef1$  higher than the first quantile of random  $coef1$  but  $coef2$  higher than the third quantile of random  $coef2$ . In other words, the second peak is distinguishable from noise, but there is no first-peak + MSD structure.
- No MSD:  $coef1$  higher than the first quantile of random  $coef1$  and  $coef2$  lower than the third quantile of random  $coef2$ . In other words, the precipitation time-series shows no robust signal of an MSD regime, with a first or second peak.



**Figure 5.15:** Grid points where the MSD is significantly different from noise (see section 3.3) for a) TRMM, b) ERA-5, c) CHIRPS and d) GC3 N16-pi. The magnitude of the MSD, measured as  $coef2 - coef1$  is shown in colour shading.

Figure 5.13 shows how separating years into these categories affects the pentad-mean seasonal cycle of precipitation in southern Mexico and Central America in four observational datasets. This figure also validates the above procedure as the WT method is able to robustly separate years into the different categories.

For each dataset we determine those grid-points showing a robust MSD. We use the method outlined above to construct the random time-series for each grid-point and estimate the random values of  $coef1$  and  $coef2$ , repeating the procedure 10,000 times. A given grid-point is diagnosed to have a robust MSD when the value of  $coef2 - coef1$  is higher than the third quantile of the PDF of the random time series. The value of  $coef2 - coef1$  is a measure of the magnitude of the MSD since  $coef2$  measures the relative strength of the second-peak compared to the MSD and therefore positive in an MSD grid-point and  $coef1$  compares how dry the MSD is relative to the first-peak and thus negative if



**Figure 5.16:** Spatial distribution of the MSD (a, b, c) onset strength and (d, e, f) MSD end strength for (a, d) CHIRPS, (b, e) TRMM and (c, f) ERA-5.

**What about panels h-m? Also units of onset/end strength. The text refers to pentads**

an MSD regime is observed at that grid point.

Figure 5.15 shows the regions where the climatological rainfall shows a MSD signal that is distinguishable from noise, i.e., regions where the values of  $coef2 - coef1$  exceed the third quantile of the distribution composited with random time-series, as well as the magnitude of the MSD for the TRMM, ERA5, CHIRPS and the GC3 N216 piControl simulation. Cuba, western Central America and most of southern and central-eastern Mexico exhibit a robust MSD signal. This map also shows that the strongest MSD signal is found on the western coast of northern Central America and northeastern Mexico. The high correspondence between the three observational datasets shows that the method is robust across datasets.

These results agree well with previous studies on the spatial distribution of the MSD (Magaña et al., 1999; Perdigón-Morales et al., 2018; Anderson et al., 2019; Zhao and Zhang, 2021). In particular, the method is able to replicate the previously reported MSD signal in the Pacific Mexican coast and the stronger MSD signal in northeastern Mexico.

Figure 5.16 shows the spatial distribution of the mean onset and retreat pentads and the start and end of the MSD, in the grid-points where the signal is significant as in Fig. 5.15. The earliest rainfall onset is found on the western coast of southern Mexico, Guatemala and El Salvador, as well as in Cuba, at pentad 25, whereas onset in the Yucatan peninsula is found at pentad 28 and even later, around pentad 31, in the eastern states of Mexico. In contrast, the retreat date seems spatially more homogeneous as northern Central American has a mean retreat date around pentad 59 and central Mexico around pentad 54. The MSD coherently starts over the western coast of Guatemala and Chiapas around pentad 33. In contrast, the MSD on the eastern Mexican states of Veracruz and Campeche begins after pentad 40. The earliest MSD end (Figs. 5.16h-j) is found in central and northeastern Mexico, around pentad 42 whereas the MSD in Guatemala ends around pentad 48. 

## 5.5 Summary and discussion

The assessment of the AMS in the MOHC submissions to CMIP6 in Chapter 4 lacked a robust analysis of the representation of the timings of the monsoon. The principal reason for this shortcoming was the lack of a robust, wide-spread method to diagnose onset and retreat dates in the various regions of the AMS with the various datasets available. This chapter aimed to address this issue by developing a new method to compute onset and retreat dates for the purpose of intercomparison between multiple observational and model data.

The novel method described in this chapter uses pentad-mean precipitation data to compute a wavelet transform over multiple temporal scales from which a set of coefficient and diagnostics are used to determine onset and retreat dates. The wavelet function used is the Haar wavelet, a wavelet typically used to find abrupt changes in signals. Onset is defined as the maximum of the sum of the coefficients of the wavelet transform computed over a range of temporal scales or dilations. These dilations were found to provide the best

results in a range from 28 to 54 pentads. Monsoon retreat is similarly defined but using the minimum of this sum of wavelet transform coefficients. The use of this method is illustrated using multiple observational datasets and climate model output. The method is compared to existing methods to find onset and retreat dates in three monsoon regions.

**performs favourably**

The method ~~has a similar performance~~ to existing methods that use precipitation thresholds in the North American Monsoon, as shown by the anomalies of precipitation, wind and geopotential ~~anomalies~~ around the onset and retreat dates. The spatial distribution of monsoon onset and retreat in this region was found to be sensibly captured by the wavelet algorithm, illustrating the earlier onset in central western Mexico and the later onset in northwestern Mexico, Arizona and New Mexico. The spatial distribution was shown to be consistent amongst the TRMM, CHIRPS and ERA5 datasets, ~~suggesting that the method~~  produces similar results in datasets with different climatologies even at the grid-box scale.

The WT method also compares well to a hydrologically defined index (HOWI) in the Indian Monsoon, although the WT better captures the precipitation variations ~~and~~ HOWI **better captures** ~~the~~ moisture transport. However, the WT method is also able to capture strong differences in moisture transport around the onset and retreat dates, in both models and observations. The WT method obtains a later onset and retreat ~~than in~~ the HOWI index, ~~which is~~ possibly associated with a lag between the moisture transport ~~in~~ the Arabian Sea (as diagnosed by HOWI) and the actual precipitation over mainland India (as measured by the WT method). The spatial distribution of onset and retreat dates in the Indian Monsoon region ~~using~~ the WT method seem<sup>s</sup> ~~to~~ be relatively consistent and coherent amongst the observational datasets, as the mean onset date in mainland India was found at pentad 32. Onset is earliest on the western coast of India and the onset date appears to be very homogeneous in central India.

The WT method was extended to characterise the timings and strength of the Midsummer Drought (MSD) using the same principle ~~but~~ computing the transform over smaller dilations around the onset and retreat dates. By using randomly-generated time-series, the spatial distribution of grid-points ~~with~~ displaying a robust MSD signal was found in Cuba, the northwestern coast of Central America and several regions of south and north-eastern Mexico. The MSD in southern Mexico and northern Central America is found to start around pentads 35 and 36 (last week of June) and end around pentad 48 (mid-August) in most observational

datasets and reanalysis. To our knowledge, this extension of the WT method provides one of very few methods to characterise the MSD on sub-monthly scales. This method may be potentially useful when diagnosing changes to the characteristics of the MSD in models or observations, as will be shown in the following chapter.

The WT method is in many ways similar to the agronomical and threshold methods (e.g. Liebmann and Marengo, 2001; Moron and Robertson, 2014), as the implementation of the method uses a subjective determination of the dilation scales; these scales are comparable to the persistence and window parameters of the threshold methods. However, the WT method presented has three main advantages over most threshold methods. First, the method produces robust results for the Indian and North American monsoon of onset and retreat, and spatial distributions comparable to previous methods (Moron and Robertson, 2014) while not being subject to 'false-hits' nor years without an identification of the onset and retreat dates. In other words, the method provides robust results without requiring further treatment of years with false-hits or undetermined years.

The second advantage of the method is portability, or utility, as the method shows robust and consistent results for three observational datasets, a reanalysis and climate model experiments with varying climate forcing but without any constraint or treatment of the data beforehand and in three different regions with different seasonal cycles. In other words, this method is robust across datasets and regions. In contrast to rigid threshold techniques (e.g. Liebmann and Marengo, 2001), the identification of onset and retreat for each time-series, e.g. at each grid-point, is based upon coherent temporal changes within each precipitation time-series while not using parameters determined 'a priori' specifically for a region. The WT method then, can be used in any time-series, regardless of the origin of the time-series, without any further change or consideration than those established by the dilations scales determined in section 2.2.1. The portability of the method also means that the method can be implemented as a 'local-scale' method applied at the grid-box scale for high-resolution datasets such as CHIRPS as well as for regional scales using area-averaged time-series.

Third, and in contrast to typical threshold methods, the wavelet method can be applied to climate model output straightforward using the same configuration of dilation scales, a feature of the method that is illustrated by our analysis of several experiments using

the Hadley Centre models. The treatment of the data does not require any normalisation or statistical treatment even when used for grid-point time-series for different regions or experiments with varying forcing where the seasonal cycle or total annual rainfall may change notably within the model time-series.

This chapter follows up on some missing details of the previous chapter by analysing the timings of the North American monsoon and the Central American MSD in the MOHC models by objectively computing the onset and retreat dates with the WT method. The **CMIP6 models an accurate representation of** results confirm that the ~~MOHC~~ show ~~progress on the~~ seasonal-cycle ~~of~~ rainfall in these two regions. Moreover, this chapter provides the main tool to be used in the following chapter, which aims to better understand the physical mechanisms behind the MSD, a question that would be difficult to address without the existence of a robust method ~~to~~ determine ~~ing~~ the timings of the MSD on the pentad-scale.

# 6

## Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments

This chapter investigates the mechanisms responsible for the bimodal signal in the seasonal cycle of precipitation, also known as Midsummer drought, of southern Mexico and Central America using climate model simulations from CMIP6 experiments produced by the Met Office Hadley Centre. The chapter evaluates three ~~relevant aspects of the monsoon hypotheses~~ that exist in the literature: the SST and cloud-radiative feedback, the double crossing of the solar declination angle and the moisture transport associated with the Caribbean Low-level jet. The CMIP6 experiments not only capture the double peak signal in precipitation but also agree on the spatial and temporal variations of other relevant climate features such as the seasonal evolution of the Caribbean-Low Level jet. This chapter finds that the SSTs in the East Pacific do not exhibit a second peak in late summer, as predicted by the SST-cloud-radiative feedback mechanism in ERA5, and that the late summer increase in East Pacific SSTs in the CMIP6 experiments cannot explain the differences in the magnitude of the second peak of precipitation amongst the realizations. no evidence that the Midsummer drought is caused by radiative-convective feedbacks or by the net shortwave absorbed by the surface associated with the solar declination angle. This chapter presents one of the first descriptions of the cloud radiative effects at the surface, which are strongly modulated by the seasonal cycle of convection in the region and mostly influenced, at the surface, by the short-wave term.

## *6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments*

The total column water vapour and moisture transport are found to be strongly related to precipitation and are key elements ~~for~~ ~~to~~ ~~explaining~~ precipitation in the MSD region, both the interannual variability in ERA5 and the differences amongst experiments. A moist static energy budget framework is implemented at the end of the chapter. Results suggest that the vertical advection of moist static energy, modulated by the shape of the vertical velocity profile, is closely related to the variations of precipitation associated with the MSD.

### **6.1 Introduction**

A bimodal signal in the climatological seasonal cycle of precipitation has been documented in several regions of southern Mexico, Central America and the Caribbean; most commonly referred to as Midsummer drought MSD (Mosinó and García, 1966; Magaña et al., 1999; Gamble et al., 2008; Perdigón-Morales et al., 2018; Zhao et al., 2020). In spite of several decades of research, a clear depiction of the physical mechanisms that cause the two-peak structure of precipitation remains elusive. Section 2.3 summarises the extensive literature on the mechanisms for the MSD, concluding that all the proposed mechanisms have shortcomings and have received criticism and arguments that pose reasonable doubt into their applicability.

Moreover, most global climate models from the CMIP5 cohort struggle to reasonably reproduce the seasonal cycle of precipitation in the region (Rauscher et al., 2008; Ryu and Hayhoe, 2014) which has limited their use to better understand these mechanisms and leading other studies to focus on regional models (Fuentes-Franco et al., 2015; Cavazos et al., 2020). Little attention has been given as to why some GCMs reproduce the bimodal seasonal cycle, only Ryu and Hayhoe (2014) analysed how biases in large-scale features of CMIP3/5 models such as the North Atlantic Sub-tropical High could influence the representation of the MSD. Chapters 4 and 5 show that the CMIP6 MOHC simulations reproduce the timings and strength of the bimodal signal of precipitation with reasonable skill (Figure 6.1), albeit with a stronger first peak and a later onset of the MSD.

This chapter aims, firstly, to improve our understanding of the physical mechanisms associated with the 'real world' MSD of southern Mexico and northern Central America, also referred to as Mesoamerica. A second purpose of this chapter is to diagnose relevant

## *6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments*

processes that the CMIP6 MOHC accurately simulate in order to capture the seasonal cycle of precipitation. For this purpose, the wavelet transform (WT) method introduced in the previous chapter is used to separate the different stages of the rainy season in Mesoamerica in order to capture the dynamic and thermodynamic changes that occur during the seasonal cycle.

Three leading hypotheses summarised in section 2.3 are closely investigated: the SST-cloud-radiative feedback proposed by Magaña et al. (1999), the solar declination angle hypothesis (Karnauskas et al., 2013) and the CLLJ as a modulator for moisture transport and convective activity in Mesoamerica (Herrera et al., 2015; Zermeño-Díaz, 2019). These hypotheses are tested in the newest reanalysis of ECMWF (ERA5) and in a plethora of CMIP6 experiments with different representations of the MSD seasonal cycle (Figure 6.1). Furthermore, a moist static energy budget framework is implemented, toward the end of the chapter, to determine whether this methodology can provide new insight into the mechanisms that drive variability of precipitation within the rainy season.

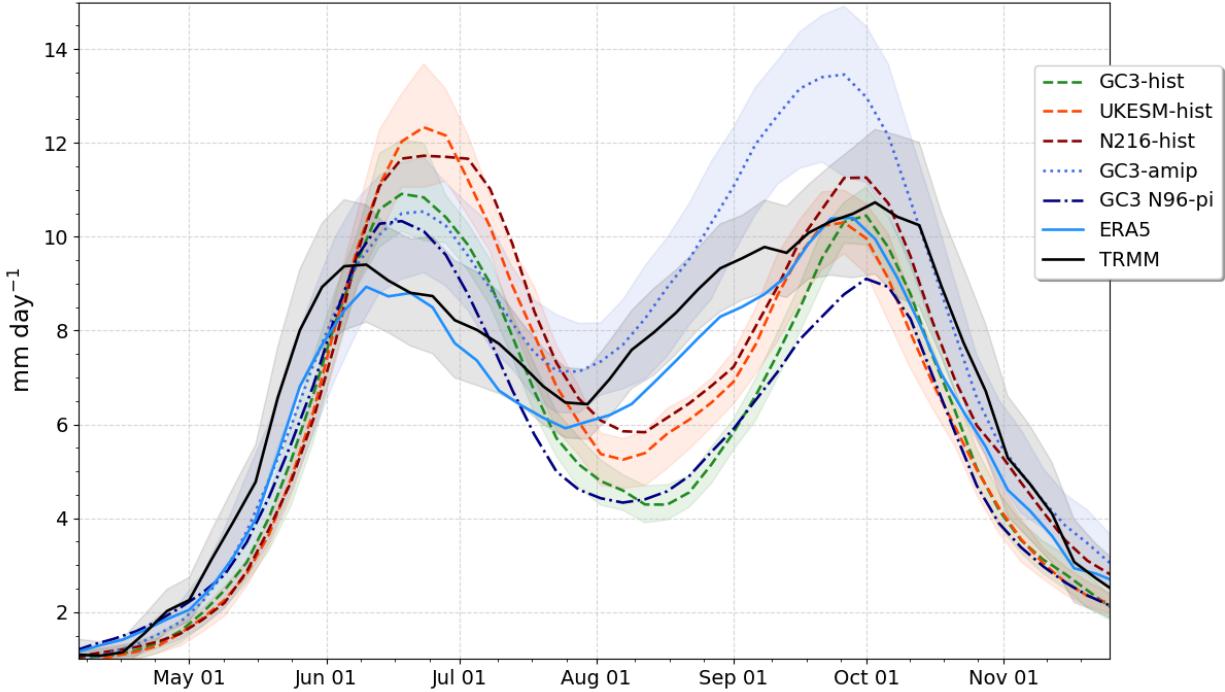
The remainder of this chapter is presented as follows. Section 2 describes the observational data and the CMIP6 experiments used in this chapter and an overview of how the WT method is implemented to diagnose the timings of MSD. Then, section 3 evaluates the representation of the key features of the regional climate in the CMIP6 experiments and in ERA5. Then, the roles of the East Pacific SSTs (section 4), cloud-radiative effects and surface shortwave absorption (section 5) and the CLLJ and moisture transport (section 6) are investigated using composite and regression analysis. Finally, a short investigation of the MSD using the moist static energy budget is given in section 7. A summary and discussion is presented in the final section of this chapter.

## **6.2 Data and methods**

### **6.2.1 Observations and reanalysis data**

All the data used in this chapter is described in chapter 3. In particular, this chapter uses, only briefly, the gridded precipitation datasets of TRMM and CHIRPS. However, the main source of information for precipitation comes from the reanalysis ERA5. The

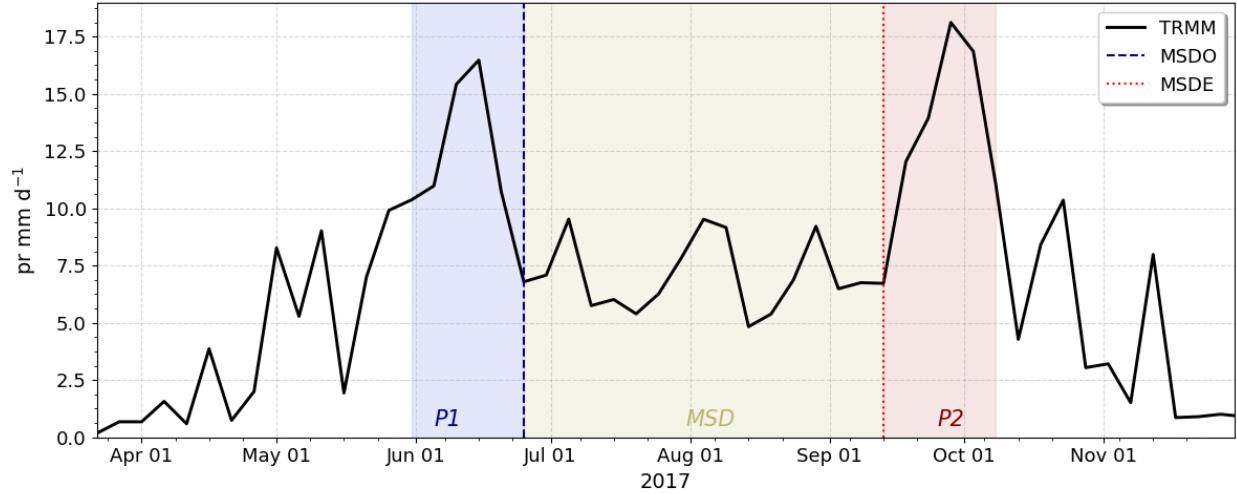
## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



**Figure 6.1:** Pentad-mean precipitation in southern Mexico and northern Central America [95-86°W, 11-19°N]. The shading for the TRMM dataset is a measure of observational uncertainty obtained by bootstrapping the interannual variability whereas the shading for the CMIP6 experiments show the ensemble spread where multiple ensemble members were available.

rest of diagnostics are also taken from ERA5 and, unless otherwise specified, downloaded at the 0.75° resolution and for the period 1979-2019. ERA5 precipitation data is used throughout this chapter to compare against the models, and not observed datasets, because of two reasons. First, observational (satellite or surface station) data of all diagnostics is not available on long periods at the daily resolutions required for this study, for example of the wind flow or moisture profiles over the ocean region. Second, ERA5 precipitation in the MSD region closely follows TRMM and CHIRPS (Fig. 6.1), and the previous chapter shows that ERA5 reasonably reproduces the mean timings for the MSD compared to TRMM and CHIRPS. Therefore, ERA5 can be compared to the simulations as another model, one that is more realistic as the reanalysis partially driven by the observed state of the atmosphere through the assimilations of radiosondes taken in the region as well as satellite data of various quantities, yet precipitation is ultimately computed by the large-scale cloud and precipitation scheme (Hersbach et al., 2020).

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



**Figure 6.2:** Pentad-mean precipitation averaged over the study region [95-86°W, 11-19°N] in the TRMM dataset for the summer of 2017. The timings of the onset (MSDO) and end (MSDE) of the MSD, as well as the first (P1) and second (P2) peak periods and the MSD periods are highlighted.

### 6.2.2 CMIP6 data

This chapter uses the output from the realizations of the HadGEM3 GC3.1 run at two resolutions at N96 and N216 and from UKESM1. These experiments are described in section 3.2.2 and summarised in Table 3.2. This chapter follows the terminology and acronyms outlined in section 3.2.2. In addition to the pre-industrial, AMIP, and historical experiments used in previous chapters, this chapter uses experiments from the Cloud-Feedback MIP (CFMIP) (Webb et al., 2017) and ScenarioMIP (O'Neill et al., 2016) activities of CMIP6 (see Table 3.2).

### 6.2.3 Determination of the timings of the MSD

Chapter 5 describes a wavelet transform (WT) method that can determine the timings of the MSD in observational gridded datasets, reanalysis and climate model precipitation time-series. This chapter uses the WT method to determine the onset (MO) and retreat (MR) of the monsoon rainy season, as well as the onset (MSDO) and end (MSDE) of the MSD.

As a brief reminder of the method, MO and MR are determined by the maximum and minimum sum of WT coefficients computed from a dilation scale vector ranging from 24 to 54 pentads. After MO and MR are determined, a second WT is computed with dilation

## *6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments*

scales to 10 to 24 pentads and the minimum sum of the WT coefficients corresponds to the onset of the MSD and the maximum to the end of the MSD (MSDE). Similarly, the timings of the first (P1) and second (P2) peaks of precipitation are determined from the results of WT method: P1 is defined as the period between the MSDO and the preceding 4 pentads or 20 days, whereas the second peak is defined as the period between the date of MSDE and the subsequent 4 pentads. An example of this separation of the MSD timings for each year is given in Figure 6.2, for precipitation observed from TRMM in 2017 over the study region.

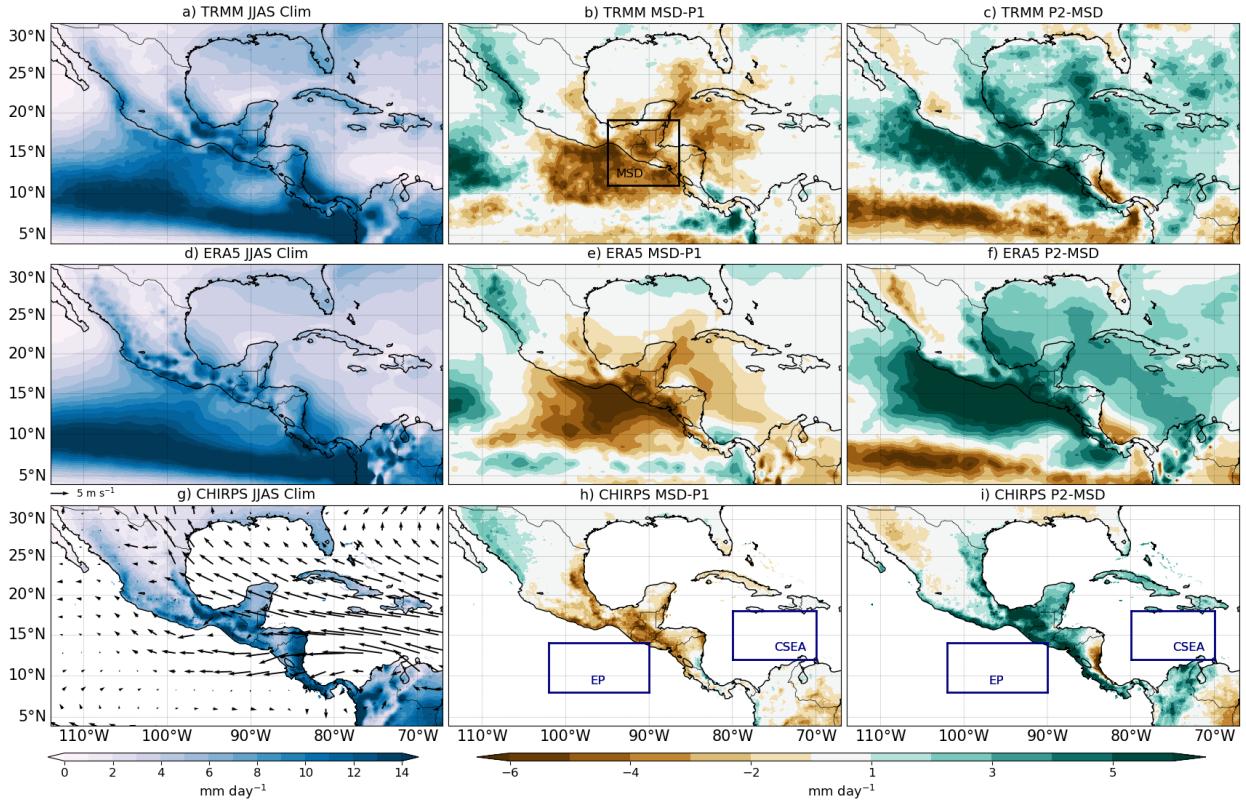
The area of study of this chapter is in southern Mexico and northwestern Central America (depicted in Figure 6.4) a region where Chapter 5 showed to exhibit robust and strong MSD signals. The WT method was implemented on the TRMM, CHIRPS and ERA5 datasets and in the model output over the precipitation time-series area-averaged over the study region.

### **6.3 Climatological features**

The seasonal cycle of precipitation in the MSD region (Figure 6.1) is reasonably well simulated by the CMIP6 experiments and by ERA5, as shown in previous chapters. The two-peak structure of the MSD is observed in TRMM and ERA5 as two precipitation maxima, the first peak found during early to mid-June and the second peak at the end of September, separated by a drier period that spans from late June to late August. The precipitation in ERA5 not only closely follows the precipitation variations at the pentad scale but also generally agrees with the mean precipitation rate during the first peak, the MSD and second peak periods. The MSD period in the CMIP6 experiments is observed one or two pentads after TRMM and ERA5 (see the mean values in the previous chapter) and shows a stronger variation of precipitation between the first peak and the Midsummer. In general, the pre-industrial control experiments show a higher magnitude of precipitation during the first peak and the MSD period whereas GC3-amip experiments are characterized by a wetter second peak.

The climatological distribution of precipitation and the temporal differences within the MSD timings in ERA5 agrees well with TRMM and CHIRPS (Figure 6.3). ERA5 reasonably captures the climatology of precipitation over land in Mesoamerica but also captures the strength and position of the East Pacific ITCZ. The patterns of the MSD-P1 and P2-MSD

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments

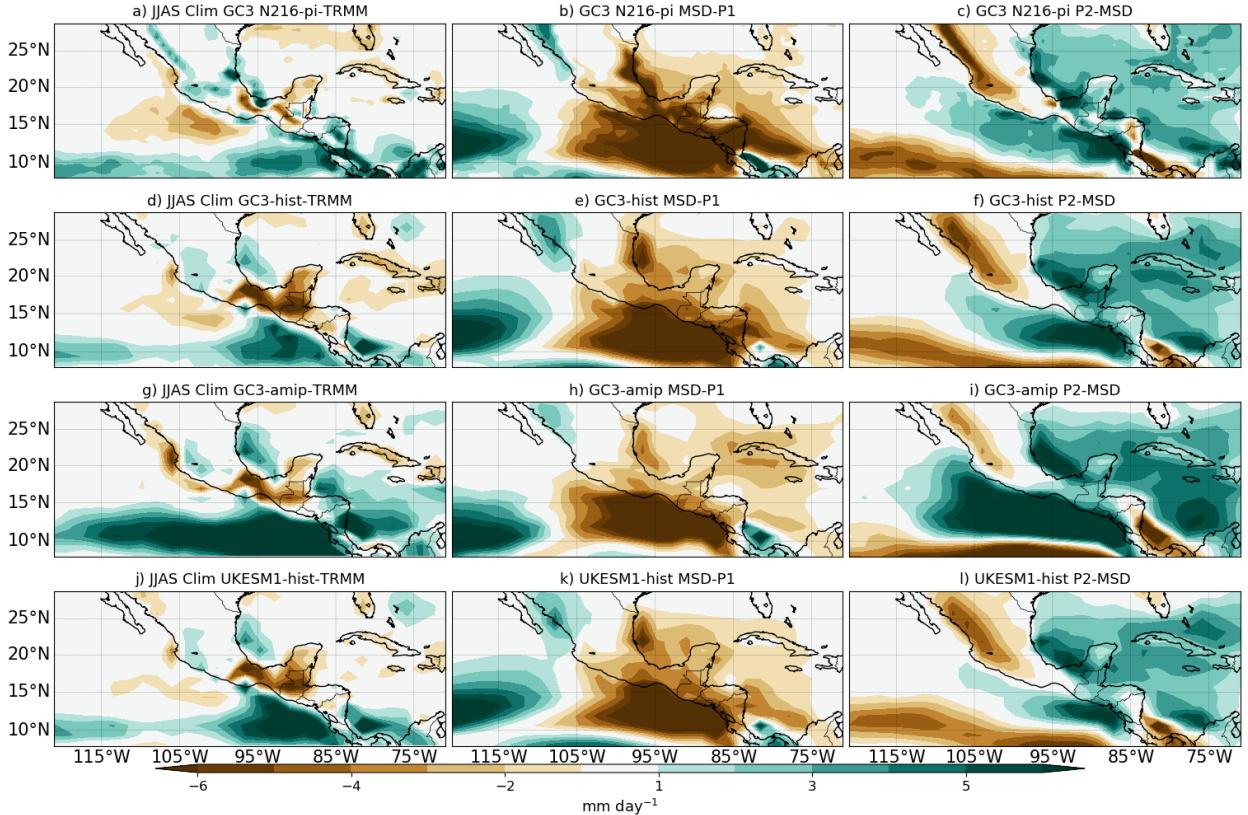


**Figure 6.3:** (a, d, g) Climatological JJAS rainfall and the difference between (b, e, h) the midsummer drought and the first peak (MSD-P1) periods and (c, f, i) between the second peak and the midsummer drought (P2-MSD) periods for (a-c) TRMM, (d-f) ERA5 and (g-i) CHIRPS. The climatological low-level winds (at 850 hPa) for JJAS in ERA5 are shown in c). The boxes in panels b and h show the definitions of the MSD, EP and CSEA regions that are used throughout this chapter.

differences in ERA5 also agree well with TRMM. These two panels show that precipitation differences associated with the MSD measured by the area-averaged precipitation within the box in Figure 6.3b extends outside of the study region all over the Intra-Americas Seas comprising the easternmost Pacific Ocean, the entrance to the Gulf of Mexico and western Caribbean Sea, particularly in the P2-MSD panel. The strongest differences, notably, for both panels are found on the western coast of Mesoamerica.

In turn, the simulations (Figure 6.4) have important biases in the magnitude of the precipitation in the East Pacific ITCZ with a positive bias of  $3\text{-}6 \text{ mm day}^{-1}$  depending on the simulation as well as a dry bias over southern Mexico and Central America, as shown in chapter 4. The simulations capture the spatial patterns associated with the MSD stages, which also show the strongest differences are found on the west coast of the Mexican

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments

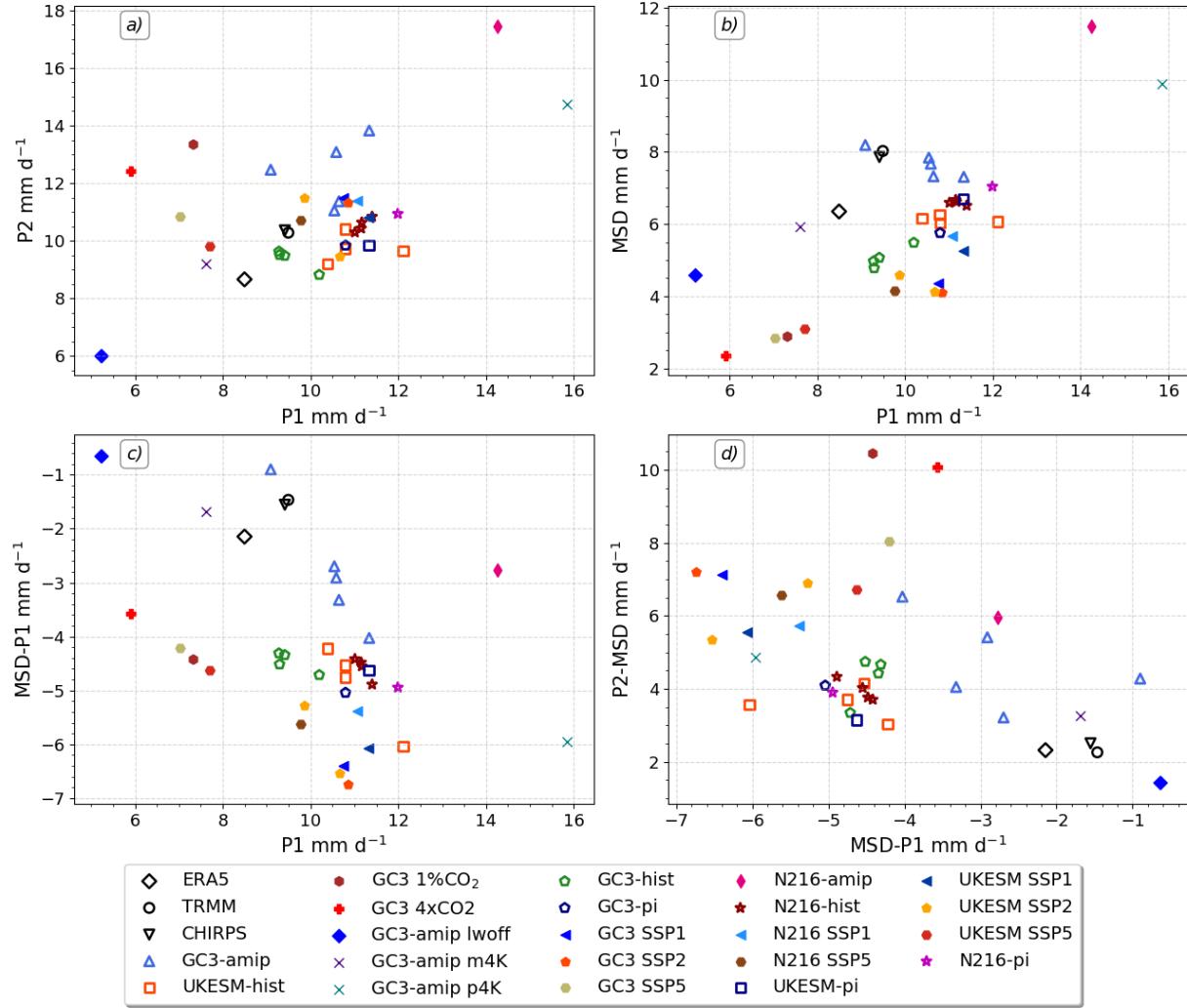


**Figure 6.4:** (a, d, g, j) JJAS model bias compared to TRMM and the difference between (b, e, h, k) the midsummer drought and the first peak periods and (c, f, i, l) between the second peak and the midsummer drought periods for four different simulations.

state of Chiapas, Guatemala and El Salvador. The negative differences in the MSD-P1 and positive differences in the P2-MSD extend to the Caribbean Sea, northeastern Mexico and the Gulf of Mexico. In agreement, with ERA5 and TRMM, the simulations show that the precipitation differences in the MSD region are always opposite to that of the North American monsoon region, e.g., in Figures 6.3 and 6.4 the North American monsoon is wetter when the MSD period begins and Mesoamerica is drier.

The mean rainfall observed in the three periods (P1, P2 and the MSD) in the simulations varied notably between experiments done with different model configurations and with external forcing (Figure 6.5). The scatter of the first and second peak and the MSD mean rainfall rates shows, first, that the mean rainfall in each stage is not linearly related to another, i.e., a larger magnitude of the first peak of precipitation does not necessarily imply a wetter or drier MSD period. The atmosphere-only runs, GC3-amip, is a good example

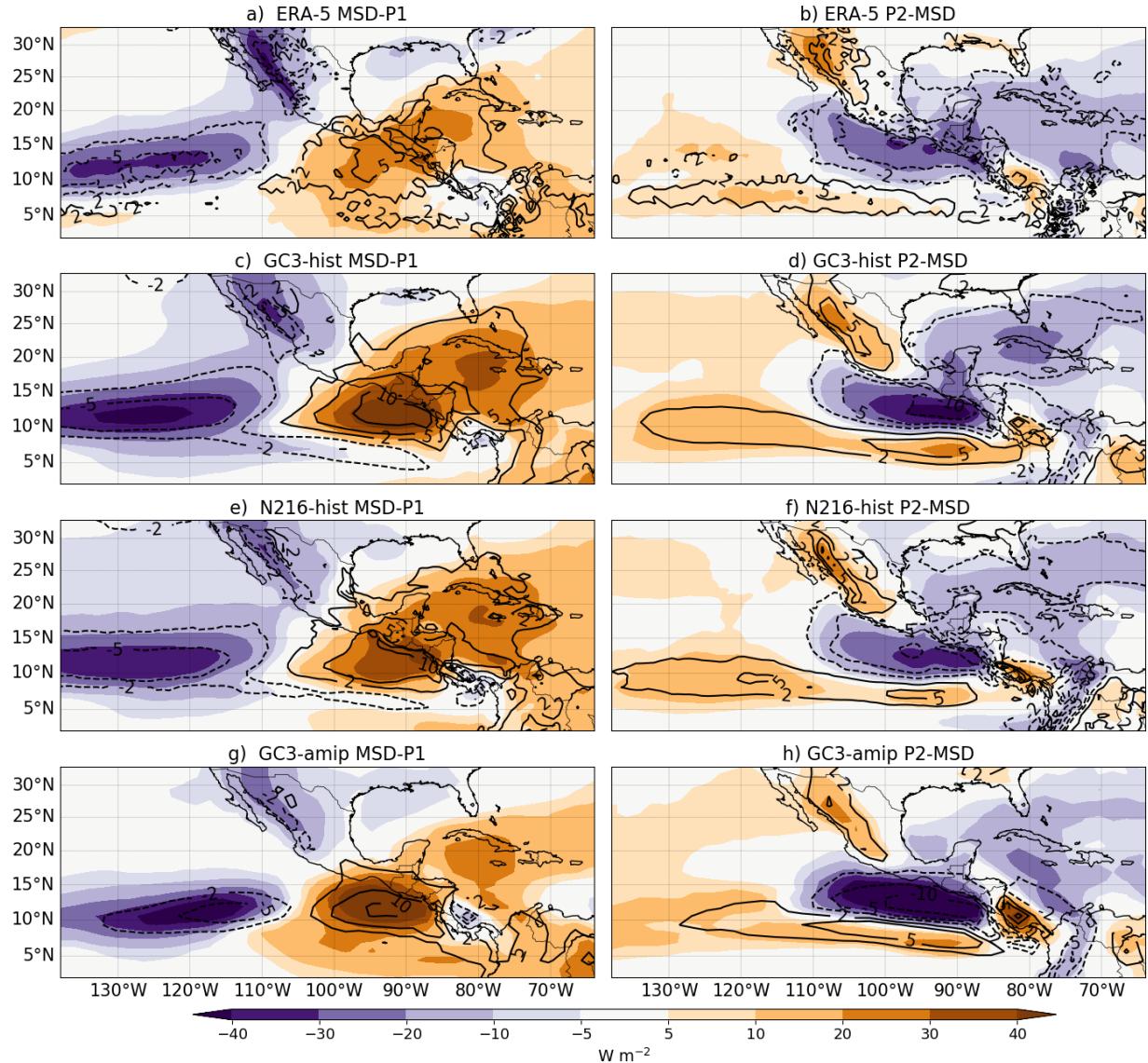
## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



**Figure 6.5:** (a, b) Scatter plots of the mean values of precipitation [ $\text{mm day}^{-1}$ ] for TRMM, ERA5, CHIRPS and the experiments during the first peak (P1), the MSD and the second peak (P2) periods and (c, d) the precipitation differences between the three periods. The region used for this averages is illustrated in Figure 6.3.

of this behaviour as the mean rainfall during P1 is roughly the same as in the rest of the simulations but the mean rainfall during the MSD is slightly larger than in the rest of the simulations and the P2 precipitation is largest in GC3-amip.

Second, the magnitude of the first decrease in rainfall (MSD-P1) and the late-summer increase (P2-MSD) also show a significant spread amongst experiments, which also suggest that there is no clear association between the magnitude of the MSD and the magnitudes of the two peaks of precipitation in these simulations. The scatter of ERA5 in all panels is notably close to that of TRMM and CHIRPS, which is further evidence that the timings and



**Figure 6.6:** Outgoing long-wave radiation (OLR) [ $\text{W m}^{-2}$ ] (shaded) and  $\omega$  500-hPa [ $10^{-2} \text{ Pa s}^{-1}$ ] (line contours) differences between the MSD and MSDO and the MSDE and MSD.

strength of the MSD is well represented by this reanalysis. In contrast, the high resolution atmosphere-only run shows the highest bias in precipitation throughout the three stages of the wet season, even though this run has higher resolution atmosphere and ocean than GC3 amip and is driven by observed SSTs, the simulation cannot capture the observed precipitation rates and is strikingly the worst simulation overall, even worse than idealized experiments such as the abrupt  $4\times\text{CO}_2$  experiment.

The outgoing long-wave radiation (OLR) and vertical velocity ( $\omega$  at 500 hPa) differences

## *6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments*

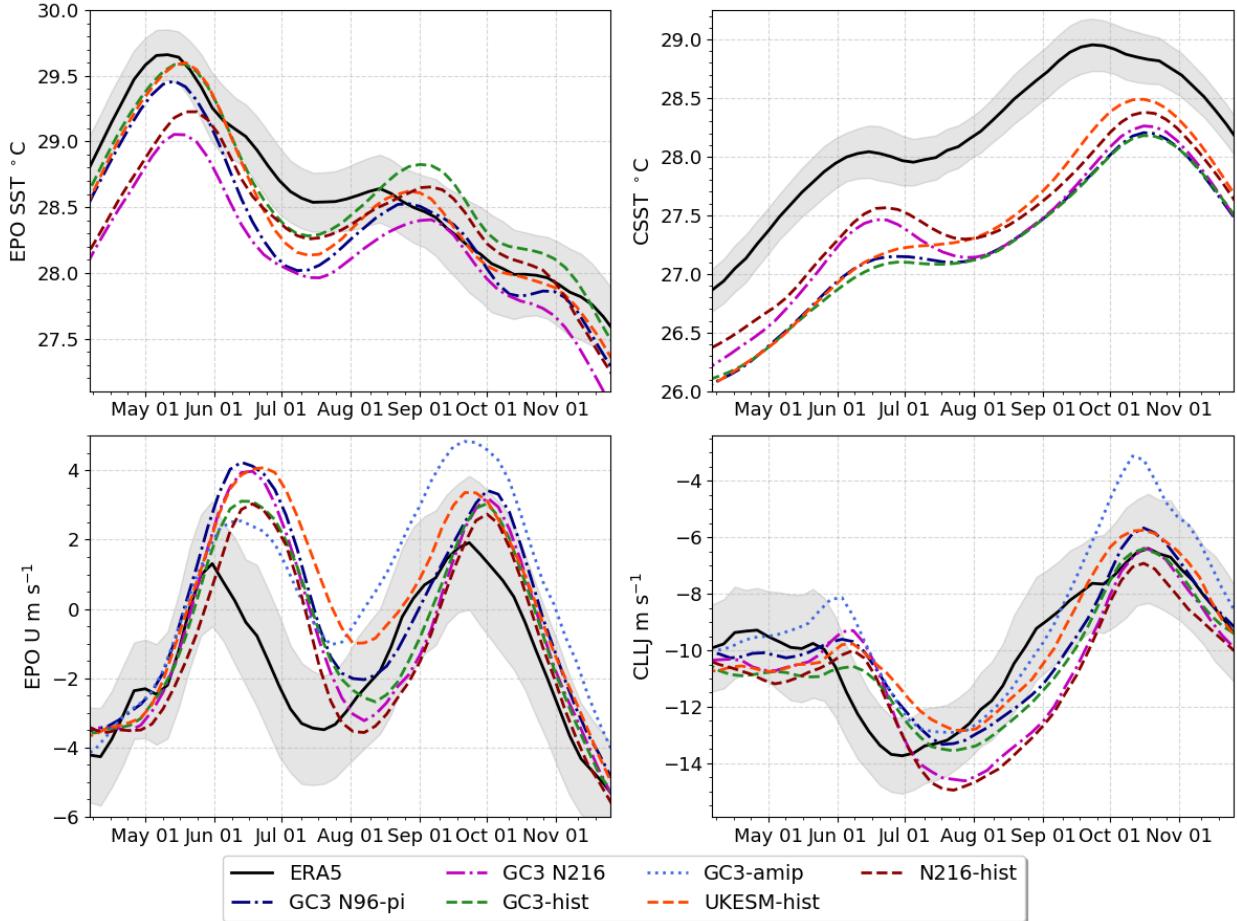
associated with the MSD were computed using the WT method for each dataset (Figure 6.6). These composite results also show that the MSD is not a local-scale feature but convective activity varies coherently in neighboring regions. From the first peak period to the MSD, OLR and  $\omega$ , increase notably in the easternmost Pacific, southern Mexico and northern Central America and extend into the Caribbean islands and Sea, and in the case of OLR into the North Atlantic; because  $\omega$  is defined as  $\omega = DP/Dt$  these positive anomalies are indicative of weaker convection.

In contrast, two regions show opposite responses to the MSD. A region several degrees west of Mesoamerica, into the open Pacific Ocean ( $125^{\circ}\text{W}$ ) and another region north of the study region, i.e., the North American monsoon region, show signs of negative OLR and  $\omega$  anomalies, in the MSD-P1 panels. These negative anomalies are indicative that, simultaneously to the onset of the MSD, convection is observed stronger and deeper in the North American Monsoon region and in the Pacific region west of the continent; the stronger convection found at around  $125^{\circ}\text{W}$  was also described by Herrera et al. (2015).

The OLR and  $\omega$  variations associated with the end of the MSD show a relatively opposite picture to the MSD-P1 differences. OLR and  $\omega$  decrease all across the central and south western coast of Mexico and northern Central America extending into the Caribbean Sea whereas positive differences are found in the North American Monsoon region and in the Pacific Ocean at around  $125^{\circ}\text{W}$ . These composites agree with the results of Herrera et al. (2015) that argues that ascending and descending anomalies in the MSD are closely related to ascent and descent elsewhere.

Several climatological features of the region play key roles for the MSD, according to the various hypotheses that exist in the literature (Section 2.3). The most prominent climate features include the seasonal cycle of the East Pacific (EP) SSTs, the Caribbean Sea SSTs, the Eastern Pacific zonal wind flow and the CLLJ (Magaña et al., 1999; Amador, 2008; Herrera et al., 2015; Straffon et al., 2019; García-Martínez and Bollasina, 2020). The seasonal cycle of these features in ERA5 and the simulations (Figure 6.7) shows that the models are able to replicate the seasonal variations of the SSTs and the zonal wind flow of the region, however, some key biases are observed in the simulations.

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



**Figure 6.7:** Pentad-mean seasonal march of the (a, b) SSTs [°C] and (c, d) the low-level (925-hPa) zonal wind flow [ $\text{m s}^{-1}$ ] in (a, c) the easternmost equatorial Pacific and (b, d) the Caribbean Sea. The transparent shading is as in Figure 6.1. The regions used for EP and CSEA averages are illustrated in Figure 6.3h.

The seasonal cycle of EP SSTs (Figure 6.7a) show the maximum peak SST in late May, prior to the first peak of precipitation in Mesoamerica. In contrast, the Caribbean SSTs peak in early fall, about five months later, during late September. After the peak SST period in the EP, SSTs decrease to a local minimum found in July both for ERA5 and the simulations. The models show an overall cold bias in the SSTs in both regions, but this bias is most pronounced in the Caribbean Sea where throughout the wet season the SSTs in the models are colder than in ERA5.

The CLLJ seasonal cycle (Figure 6.7d) is reasonably replicated by the simulations, compared to ERA5, although the peak strength of the CLLJ, which is found during the last week of June in ERA5, is delayed in the simulations by about three weeks, as the

simulated CLLJ peaks in mid-July in all the simulations. The simulations follow closely the late summer and fall seasonal cycle and magnitude of the CLLJ, except for a notable bias in GC3-amip in Oct-Nov characterised by a weaker than observed zonal wind.

The low-level wind flow in the EP shows a bimodal seasonal cycle in both ERA5 and the simulations (Figure 6.7c). The easterly flow in the EP during the spring becomes weaker turning positive at the end of May and reaching a local maximum in early June in ERA5 and mid-June in the simulations. This local maximum then decreases during June and early July as the zonal wind becomes easterly again. The easterly flow peaks in mid July in ERA5 and about three weeks later in the simulations. The strength of this easterly flow magnitude during the midsummer varies greatly amongst the simulations. After the peak easterly flow in the midsummer, or zonal wind local minimum, the zonal wind becomes westerly again peaking at the end of September-early August in both ERA5 and simulations. This seasonality of the zonal wind in the EP is notably similar to the seasonal cycle of precipitation in the region.

## 6.4 The East Pacific SSTs

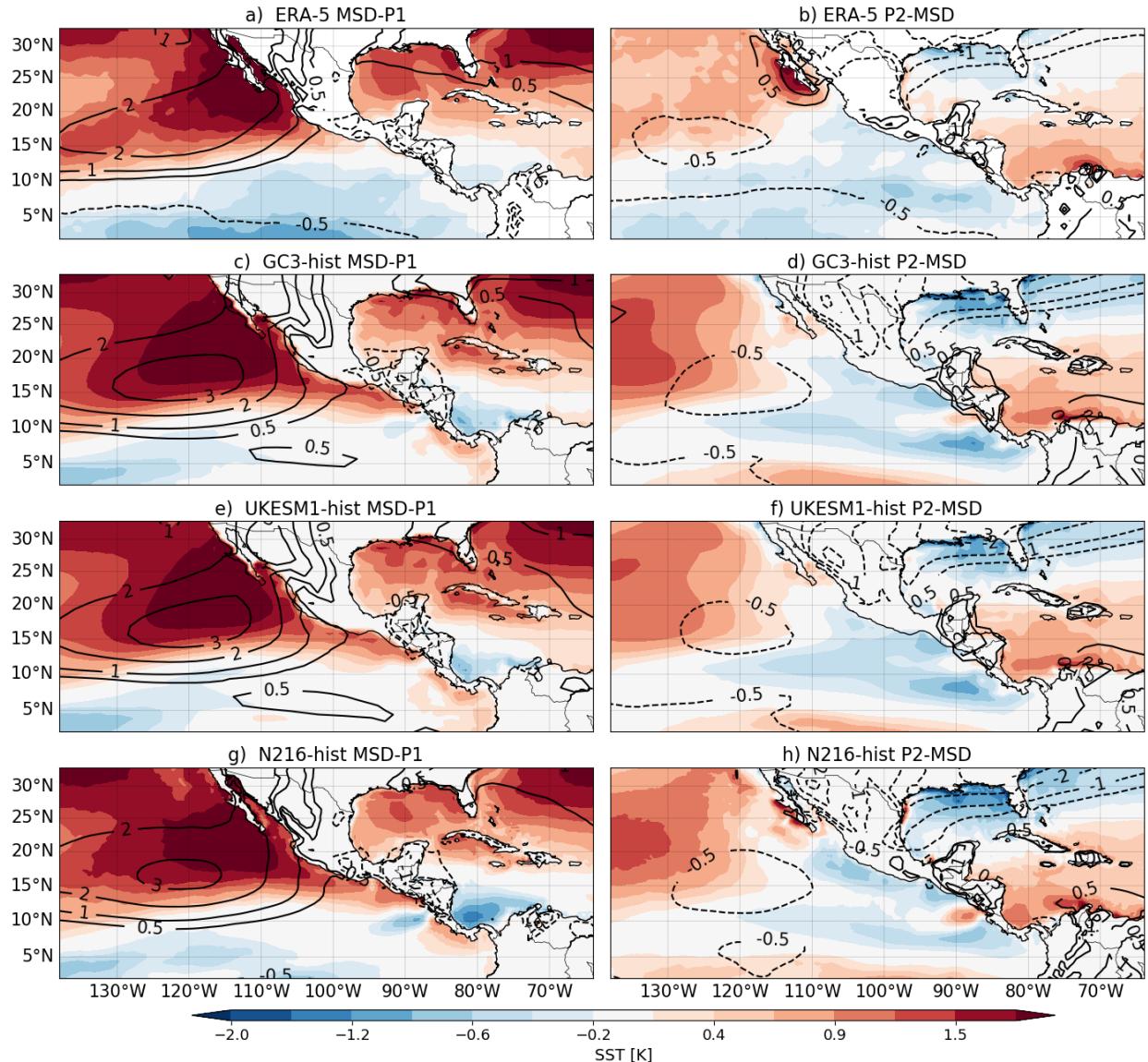
The East Pacific (EP) SSTs are a key element of the radiative-convective feedback mechanism of Magaña et al. (1999), which argues that the EP SSTs, intertwined with downwelling shortwave radiation at the surface, drive the changes to precipitation over the MSD region. Their hypothesis predicts that the summer march of the EP SSTs should also exhibit a bimodal signal, similar to that observed for precipitation but out-of-phase, with the SSTs leading the precipitation. This section aims to evaluate whether there is any evidence that the predictions of this hypothesis are true for ERA5 or for the CMIP6 experiments.

According to the radiative convective feedback mechanism, the EP SSTs should cool down during or slightly prior to the onset of the MSD and then increase during the local minimum of rainfall, i.e., during the MSD period which would lead enhanced precipitation and cause the second peak of precipitation in late summer. However, in ERA5 the EP SSTs only very slightly increase during the MSD (Jul-Aug) and instead of increasing in late summer rather

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments

cool again in late August and September. In fact, the EP SSTs in ERA5 decrease after mid-August, in synchrony with the second peak in deep convection and precipitation.

In the models, however, there is indeed a second peak in EP SSTs in late summer found in early September and therefore nearly synchronous to the second peak of precipitation. While EP SSTs clearly lead precipitation in May-June, the SST-precipitation relationship in mid and late summer is less obvious. In the models, the second peak of SSTs is nearly synchronous to the second peak in precipitation, which seems to contrast with the predictions of the



**Figure 6.8:** As in Figure 6.6 but the anomalies are shown for SSTs [K] (contours) and surface humidity [ $\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ] (line-contours).

radiative-convective feedback mechanism.

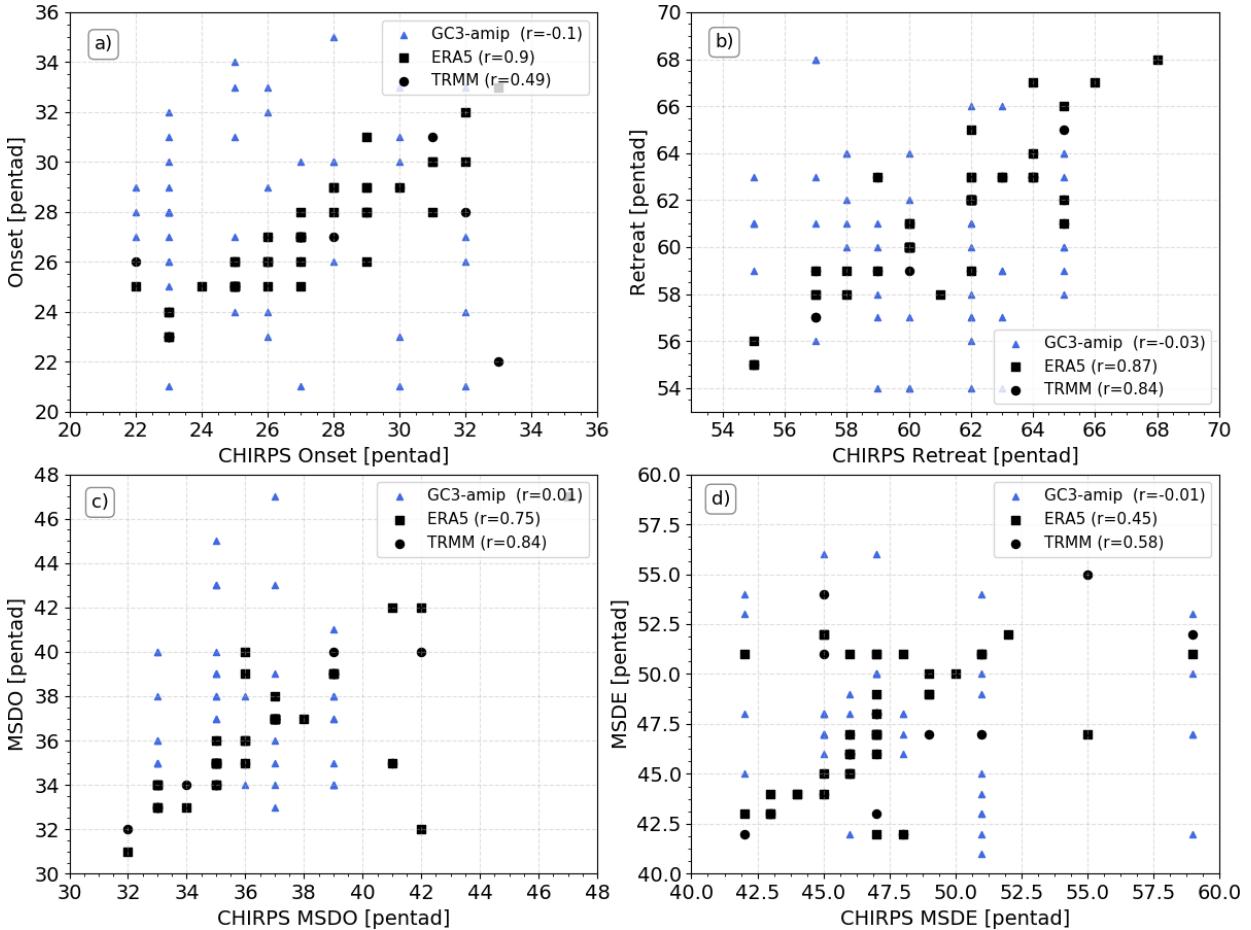
In order to better understand the relationship between EP SSTs and precipitation over the MSD region, the WT method is used to composite SSTs and surface humidity in the P1, MSD and P2 periods. The spatial distribution of SST and surface humidity changes associated with the MSD (Figure 6.8) suggest that the EP SSTs south of 10°N cool slightly between the first peak (P1) and the MSD periods, meanwhile the Gulf of California and the northern eastern Pacific significantly warms. At the end of the MSD (P2-MSD), the EP SSTs decrease in both ERA5 and the simulations. The P2-MSD panels also show that the Caribbean SSTs increase, associated with the peak Caribbean SSTs at the end of the summer (Fig. 6.7b).

The historical simulations generally agree with the composite differences of ERA5, with no appreciable warming in the EP region in the MSD-P1 panels, and cooling in the EP and the Gulf of Mexico and warming in the Caribbean Sea in the P2-MSD panels. These results suggest that while the seasonal cycle of EP SSTs show a bimodal signal, when each year of each simulation is examined using the WT method, which has proven to skilfully diagnose precipitation variations associated with the MSD, the EP SSTs do not synchronously warm during or after the MSD, as argued by the radiative-convective feedback.

An argument of the feedback mechanism is that the SST variability would force changes to the surface humidity and ultimately precipitation. The surface humidity in the EP and MSD regions, however, is largely unchanged (less than  $0.5 \text{ g kg}^{-1}$ ) during the various stages of the MSD (Figure 6.8), even though precipitation varies notably during these periods. Instead, the greatest variations in surface humidity are observed west of Baja California from the P1 to the MSD, and this region of increased surface humidity extends into the North American Monsoon region. Similarly, at the end of the MSD, the most notable variations in surface humidity is the drying of the North American monsoon region. The surface humidity variations in the simulations also agree well with those of ERA5 and are very similar amongst the realizations.

If the EP SSTs play a dominant role in the timings and strength of the MSD, as implied previously (Magaña et al., 1999; Magaña and Caetano, 2005; Herrera et al., 2015), then the simulations with imposed SSTs taken from observations, e.g., the GC3-amip experiment, may be further explored to evaluate the links between the timings or strength of the MSD

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiment

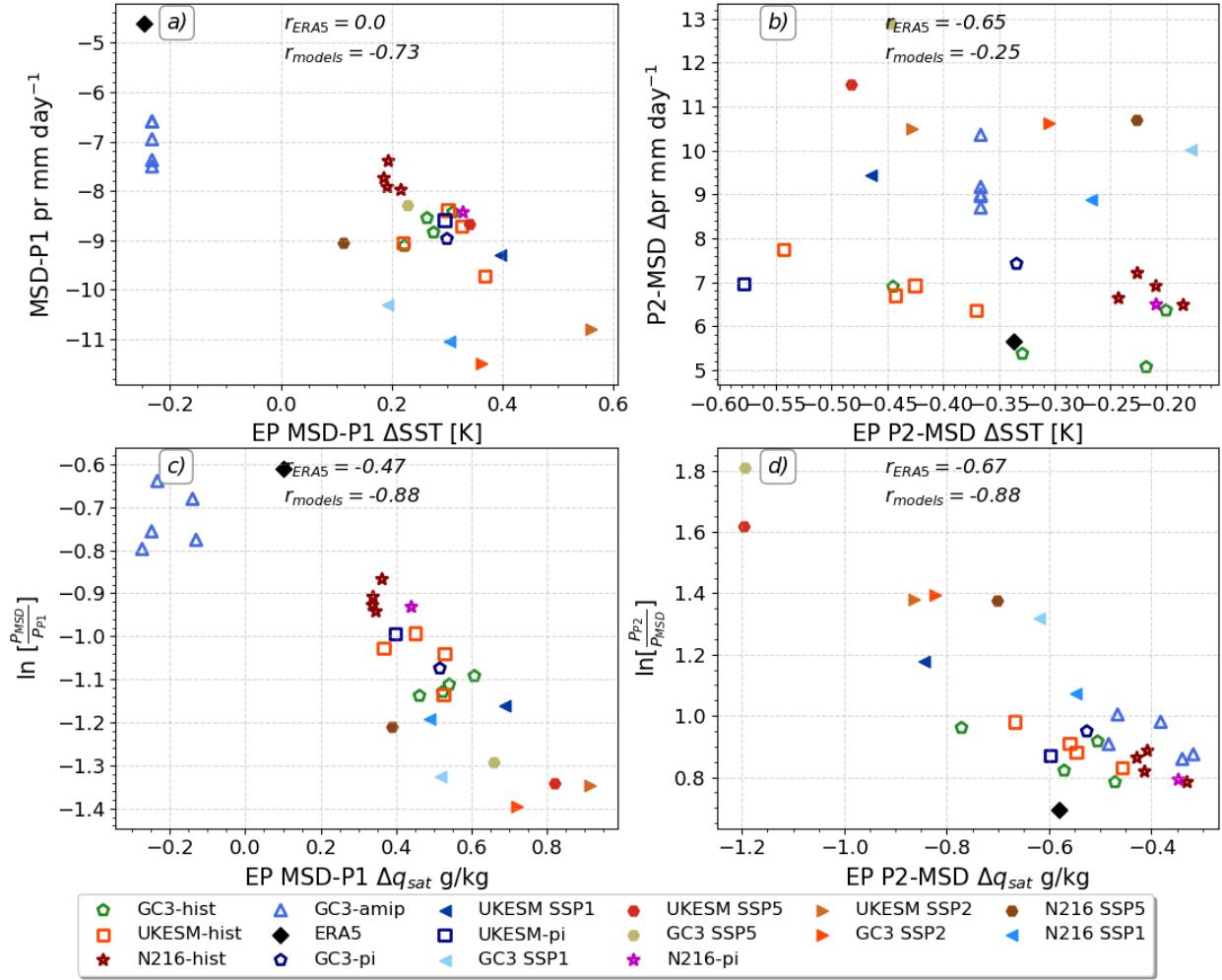


**Figure 6.9:** Scatterplots of the pentads diagnosed by the WT method as the dates of (a) monsoon onset (MO), (b) monsoon retreat (MR), (c) MSDO and (d) MSDE where the results of the CHIRPS dataset, on the x-axis, are compared with ERA5, TRMM and the GC3-amip simulation, on the y-axis. The legend shows the Pearson  $r$  coefficient for each comparison.

in GC3-amip and ERA5. A scatter plot of the dates (pentads) of the MO, MR, MSDO and MSDE (Figure 6.9) for matching years between the CHIRPS dataset and TRMM, ERA5 and the five ensemble members of GC3-amip shows that the timings of the MSD in GC3-amip are unrelated to CHIRPS and ERA5. In fact ERA5, in spite of precipitation being largely a model-derived quantity in the reanalysis, produces MSD timings that agree fairly well with the CHIRPS and TRMM datasets. This evidence would suggest that the SSTs forcing the model in GC3-amip are not the dominant factor controlling the timings of the MSD in these atmosphere-only runs.

Alternatively, the interannual variability in ERA5 and the differences amongst the MOHC CMIP6 experiments may be further explored to understand whether the changes

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



**Figure 6.10:** Scatterplots of the mean changes in the East Pacific (a, b) sea-surface temperatures (SSTs) and (c, d) surface saturation specific humidity  $q_{sat}$  in the x-axis with respect to precipitation variations in the MSD region on the y-axis for the (a, c) MSD-P1 and (b, d) P2-MSD periods. The correlation coefficient of the interannual spread in ERA5 and the multi-experiment correlation coefficient are shown in each panel.

to the SSTs are related to changes in the precipitation. For this purpose, composite differences between the P1, MSD and P2 periods were computed for each variable for each year in each dataset and then averaged to provide a mean value that relates changes in precipitation to different diagnostics in different stages of the rainy season. For example, the mean difference in SSTs (Figure 6.10a) between the P1 and the MSD periods, show a cooling difference for ERA5 associated with less precipitation but a positive SST difference (warming) for the coupled-model experiments associated (by construction) with a negative precipitation difference in the MSD region.

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments

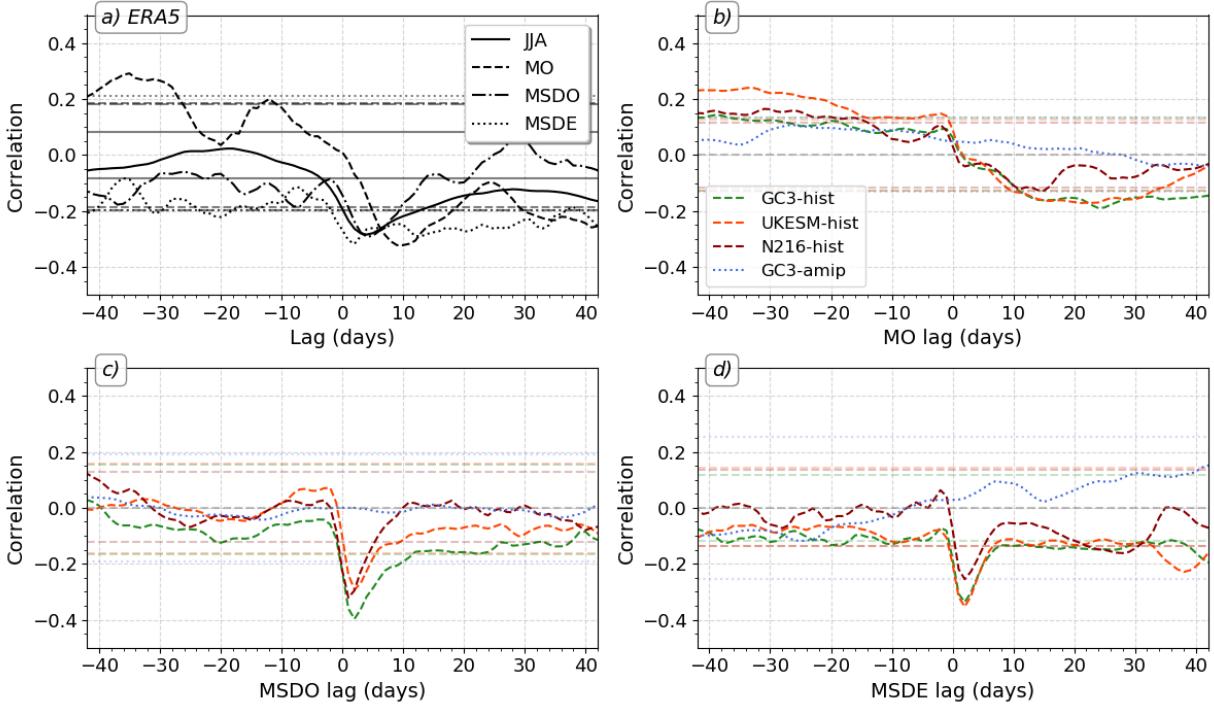
The slight warming signal in the MSD-P1 difference (Figure 6.10a) in the coupled-model experiments agrees with the seasonal cycle (Fig. 6.7) and suggests that in the model, as precipitation decreases during the MSD, the EP SSTs warm even though this warming is fairly modest. At the MSDE stage, the EP SSTs cool (Figure 6.10b) associated with a positive increase in precipitation, suggesting an inverse relationship between EP SSTs and precipitation. However, the relationship does not seem to explain the inter-experiment spread or the inter-annual variability in ERA5 as the correlation coefficients are low and not significant, i.e., a stronger second peak is not associated with a cooler EP SSTs in late summer.

The feedback mechanism of Magaña et al. (1999) suggests that one of the main consequences of the SST changes would be changes to evaporation and surface humidity. Furthermore, evidence of tropical precipitation also suggests that the surface saturation specific humidity  $q_{sat}$ , which measures the maximum moisture that a parcel can hold, provides a strong link between precipitation and SSTs on seasonal time-scales over tropical oceans (Yang et al., 2019; Good et al., 2021). For these reasons, Figure 6.10 also shows the relationship between the saturation specific humidity and precipitation.

The temporal changes to  $q_{sat}$  associated with the MSD timings (Figure 6.10c,d) are not positively related to changes in the precipitation over the MSD region. Although the inter-annual variability of  $q_{sat}$  changes during the MSD-P1 period in ERA5 shows a positive correlation, the mean changes to  $q_{sat}$  during this stage are very small compared to the differences in the experiments and, furthermore, the relationship for the simulations shows an opposite relationship (negative correlation). For the P2-MSD differences, there is a negative correlation for both ERA5 and the experiments, an expected result since SSTs cool in this same period.

The previous results have analysed synchronous changes between the EP SSTs, surface humidity,  $q_{sat}$  and precipitation over the MSD region, but the expected relationship may exist with some lags, in particular as suggested by the radiative-convective feedback mechanism the SSTs should be leading precipitation. Lag-lead correlations (Fig. 6.11) of the EP SSTs and the precipitation in the MSD region show that only during monsoon onset are these two fields significantly positively correlated at lags of  $\approx$ -35 days in ERA5 and -40 to -20 days in the historical experiments.

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiment



**Figure 6.11:** Lagged correlations between East Pacific SSTs and precipitation in the MSD region for (a) ERA-5 where the lag 0 date was used in four different ways: first, all the boreal summer JJAS SSTs and precipitation pairings, then lag 0 represents the monsoon onset (MO), MSD onset (MSDO) and MSDE dates. (b-d) as in (a) but for the simulations where the correlations are computed with the SST-precipitation timeseries lagged with respect to the b) monsoon onset date, the c) MSDO date and the d) MSDE date.

In ERA5, the correlation for all the boreal summer (JJAS) sample is only significant for the SSTs leading precipitation region for negative lags from 30 to 40 days and is only significant (negative correlation) at positive lags at lag +5 days, indicative of an inverse SST-precipitation relationship where the SSTs follow precipitation. In the models (Fig. 6.11b-d), very similar results are found where significant positive correlations at negative lags, indicative of SSTs leading precipitation, are only found for the MO panel, whereas for MSDO and MSDE panels, the correlations are only significant at positive lags and for negative correlations, indicative of the precipitation leading the SSTs on the scale of 3-5 days and SSTs decreasing with increased precipitation.

## 6.5 On the role of cloud-radiative effects

The mechanisms proposed by Magaña et al. (1999) and Karnauskas et al. (2013) both suggest that the net shortwave energy absorbed by the surface is key in the driving mechanism of the MSD. Magaña et al. (1999) suggests that tall convective clouds influence the timings and net shortwave (SW) flux at the surface, and although not explicitly mentioned as such, Magaña et al. (1999) argues that the cloud-radiative effects (CRE) experience seasonal changes that occur at the same as the MSD. In turn, Karnauskas et al. (2013) argues that the seasonal march of solar insolation determined by the solar declination angle controls the net shortwave absorbed by the surface. These studies motivate a further inspection of CRE in the simulations to understand whether there is evidence to support these previously proposed hypotheses.

Moreover, CRE effects are coupled to the tropical circulation (Bony et al., 2004; Webb et al., 2017) and have been shown to be related with the timing and strength of regional (Guo et al., 2015) and axi-symmetric (Byrne and Zanna, 2020) monsoons. The long-wave (LW) CRE plays an important role in the convective heating and moistening of the atmospheric column in tropical regions and the short-wave (SW) CRE affects the surface absorption of energy (Allan, 2011). These studies motivate a deeper investigation of the CRE in the Mesoamerican region, specifically for the timings and strength of the MSD. The surface cloud radiative effect ( $CRE_{surf}$ ) is computed from daily-mean fields following Allan (2011), as the sum of the LW and SW CREs, i.e.:

$$\begin{aligned} CRE_{surf} &= LWCRE_{surf} + SWCRE_{surf} \\ &= LDS - LUS - (LDS_{cs} - LUS_{cs}) + SDS - SUS - (SDS_{cs} - SUS_{cs}), \end{aligned} \quad (6.1)$$

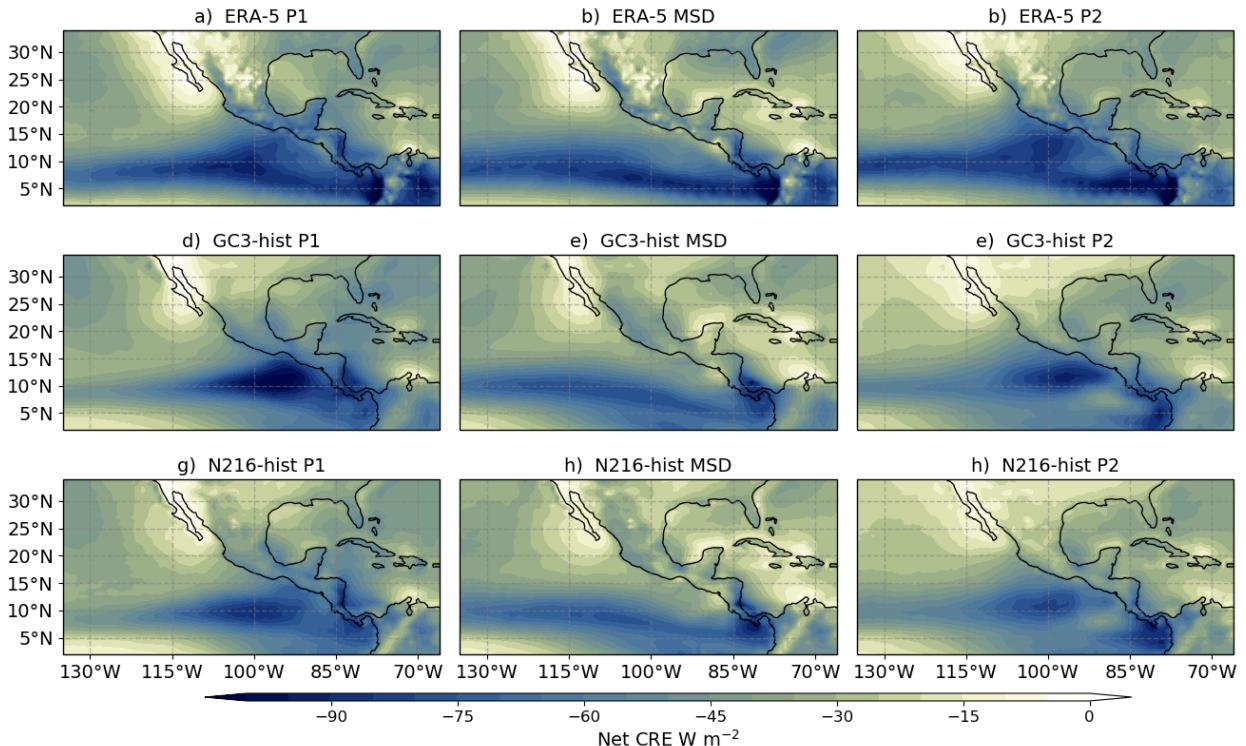
where the fluxes are depicted as long-wave (L) or short-wave (S) and downwelling (D) or upwelling (U) at the surface (S) and the subscript  $_{cs}$  denotes under clear-sky conditions. The long-wave upwelling at the surface (LUS) virtually cancels with the  $LUS_{cs}$  because the long-wave emission from the surface is minimally dependent on the presence of clouds (Allan, 2011). The net CRE at the surface is then given by:

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments

$$CRE_{surf} = LDS - LDS_{cs} + SDS - SUS - SDS_{cs} + SUS_{cs}. \quad (6.2)$$

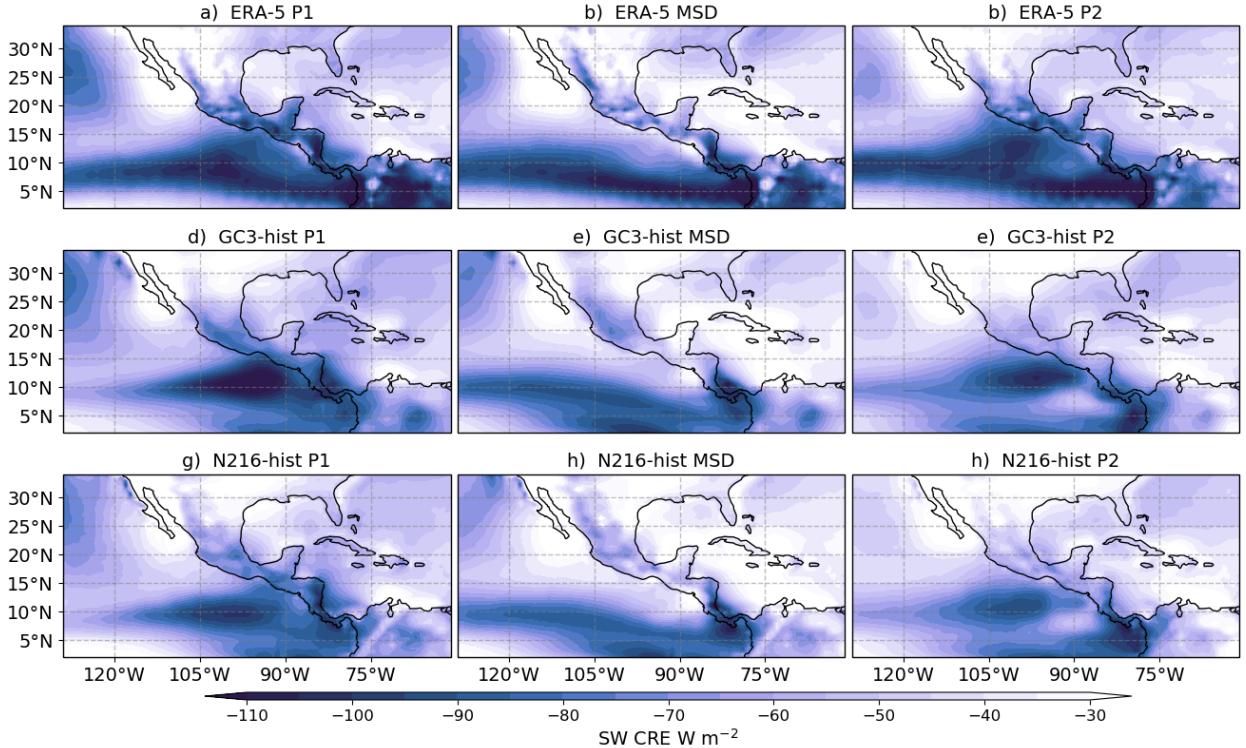
The net CRE during P1, MSD and P2 periods (Fig. 6.12) is negative and the minimum values are found in the East Pacific ITCZ region. The differences between the MSD timings closely follow the precipitation changes during these periods as the minimum CRE in the EP and the Mesoamerican region is found during the two peaks of precipitation with a weaker CRE over the Mesoamerican region and nearby basins during the MSD. The smallest CRE is found over the Baja California Peninsula. The results of the two historical experiments closely follow the results of ERA5, and the only notable difference between the lower (GC3) and the higher (N216) resolution historical experiments is that the CRE is stronger in GC3-hist than in N216-hist.

The individual contributions of the SW and LW surface CREs (Figures 6.13 and 6.14) show that the dominant term in the EP and Mesoamerican regions is the SW term. The



**Figure 6.12:** Composite mean cloud radiative effect (CRE) [ $\text{W m}^{-2}$ ] during the periods of onset of the MSD, the MSD and the end of the MSD for (a-c) ERA5, and the ensemble mean of (d-f) GC3-hist and (g-h) N216-hist.

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



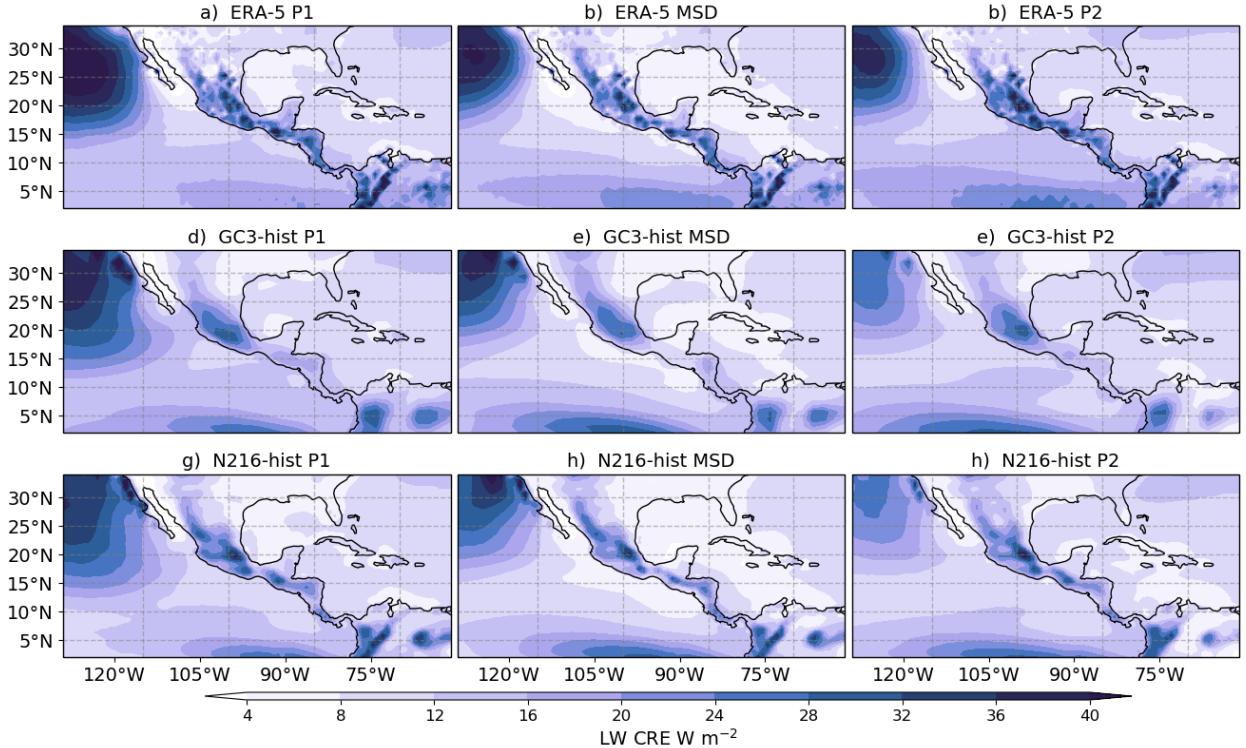
**Figure 6.13:** As in Fig. 6.12 but for the short-wave radiative effect.

negative SW CRE is strongest in the EP ITCZ region and the SW CRE varies with the MSD timings in similar fashion to the net CRE, i.e., in the MSD region, the SW term is notably larger ( $< -90 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ ) during the two peak periods of precipitation than during the MSD. The historical experiments also show that the SW CRE is larger in magnitude in the EP ITCZ region and that the SW CRE over the MSD region varies notably in the three stages of the rainy season.

In contrast, the LW term (Figure 6.14), is generally smaller in magnitude than the SW term and is largest over land and in the ocean west of the California. Over the EP and CSEA regions, the LW term shows very small horizontal gradients, indicative of a fairly horizontally homogenous effect of clouds. The differences of the LW between the stages of the MSD are smaller than the SW term variations, but both in ERA5 and the simulations, the LW term over the EP and the Caribbean Sea is visibly larger during the two peak periods than during the MSD.

These composites depict how the spatial distribution of the CRE varies with the MSD timings over the larger Intra-Americas Seas region, but how these terms actually within

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments

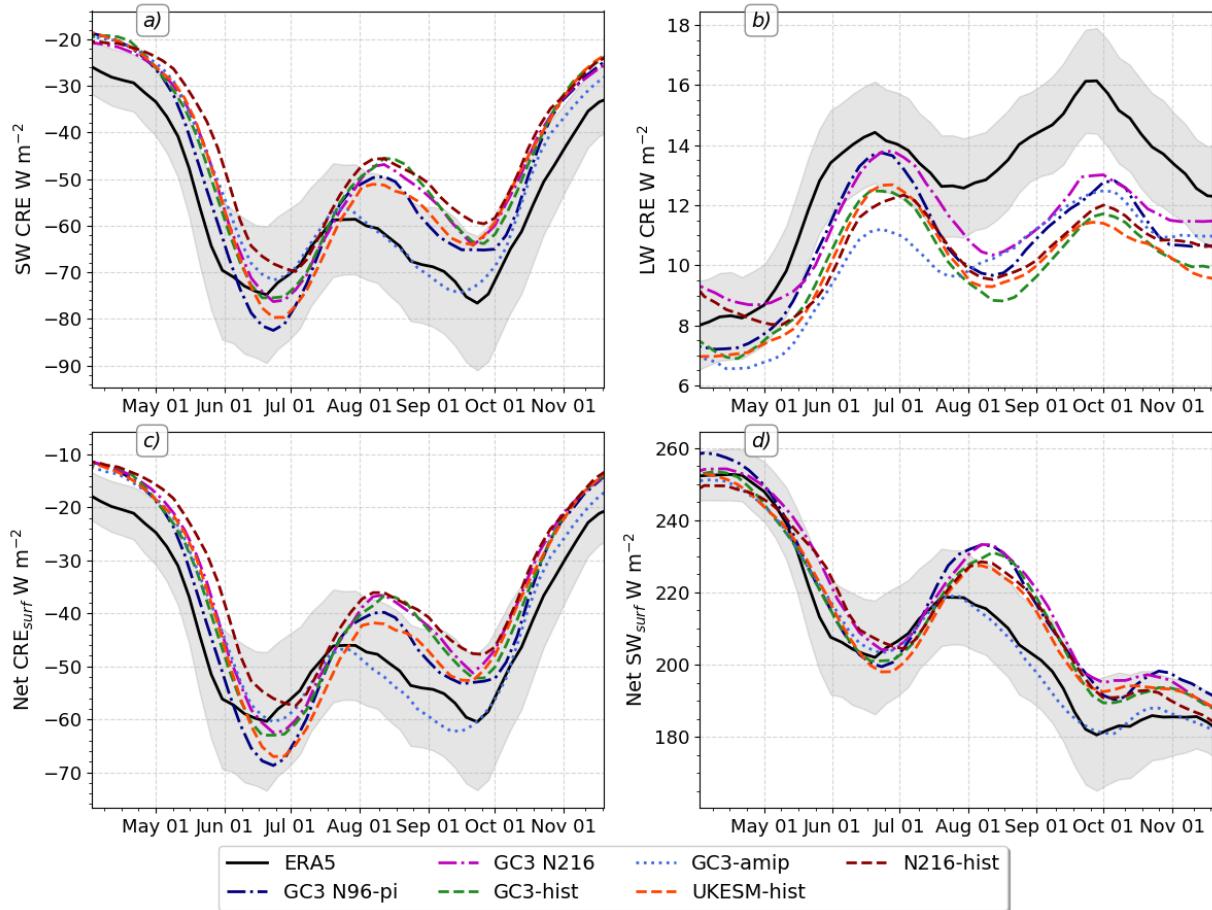


**Figure 6.14:** As in Fig. 6.12 but for the long-wave CRE.

the season in the MSD region is not obvious. The seasonal cycles of the SW, LW and net CREs (Figure 6.15a-c) show bimodal signals characterized by stronger CREs during the two peak periods during June and September and a relative minimum in between found in late July in ERA5 and early August in the simulations. The simulations reasonably simulate the magnitude of the net and SW CRE during the early summer season but overestimate the decrease in the net, SW and LW CRE during the midsummer, very likely associated with the underestimation of precipitation over this same period (Figure 6.1).

Regardless of CREs, according to Magaña et al. (1999) and Karnauskas et al. (2013), the net SW (the difference between upwelling and downwelling shortwave) at the surface should also present a bimodal seasonal cycle. In both ERA5 and the simulations, the net SW (Figure 6.15d) follows a two-peak seasonal cycle characterized by a first peak in late May, which coincides with the peak in East Pacific SSTs. This peak in SW is followed by a local minimum during June which is followed by a secondary increase in July in ERA5 and extending to August in the simulations. After this second local maximum, there is another

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments

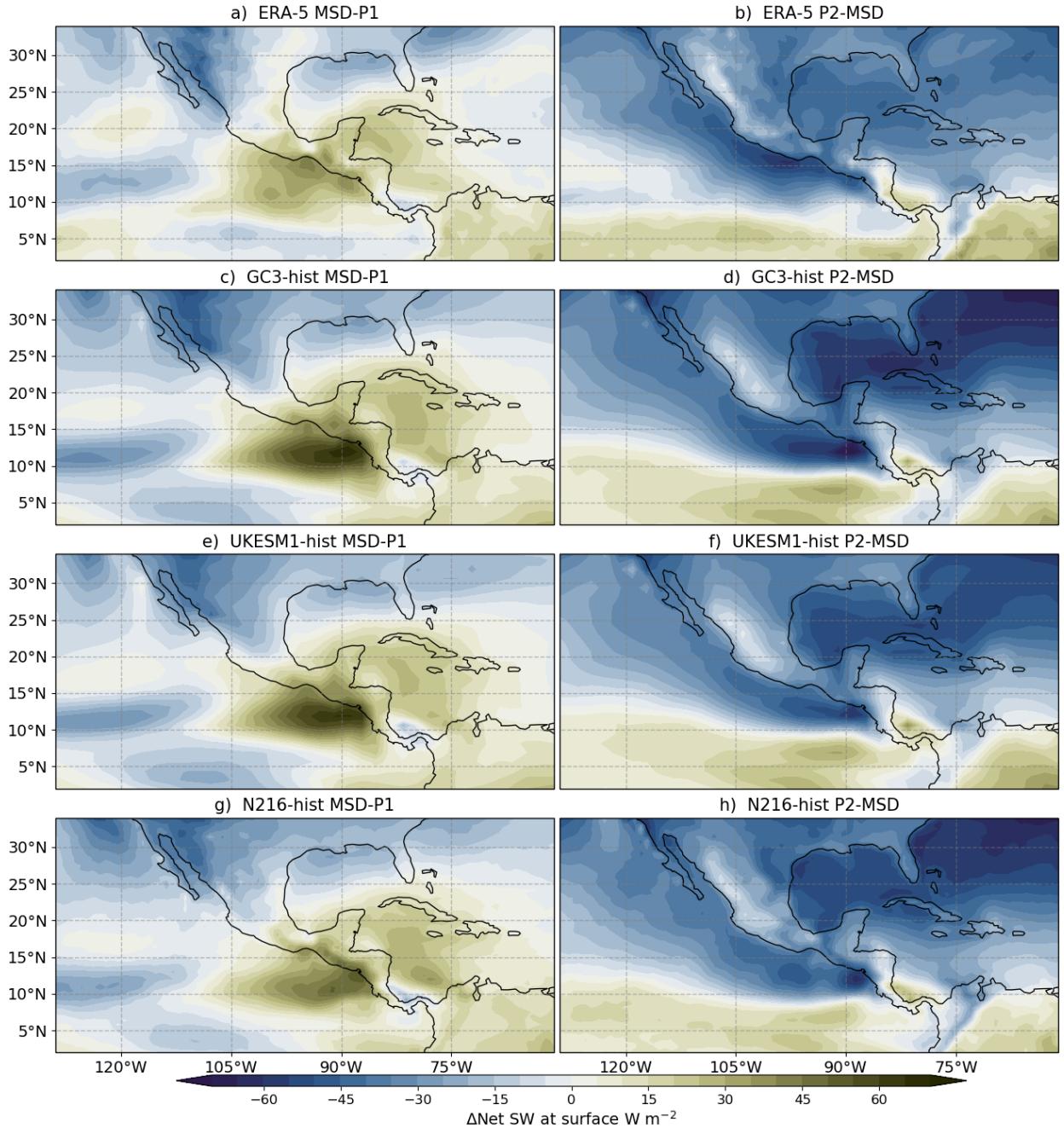


**Figure 6.15:** Pentad-mean seasonal cycle of the (a) SW and (b) LW CREs, (c) the net CRE, and (d) the net SW at the surface, signed positive to indicate surface absorption of SW radiation.

sharp decrease in the net SW at the surface at the end of the summer, which coincides with the the second peak in precipitation and therefore possibly linked with less downwelling SW.

The spatial distribution of changes to the net SW at the surface (Figure 6.16) show that from the first peak to the MSD there is a positive difference net SW, indicative of more SW energy absorption at the surface of about  $30 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  in ERA5 and  $40 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  in the simulations. In contrast, for the P2-MSD differences, a notable reduction in net SW energy is observed throughout the North American continent but the maximum reduction is found on the western coast of southern Mexico. One might reasonably then suspect that the increased SW absorption during the MSD may indeed be a cause or part of the mechanism for the second peak of precipitation, as suggested by both Magaña et al. (1999) and Karnauskas et al. (2013).

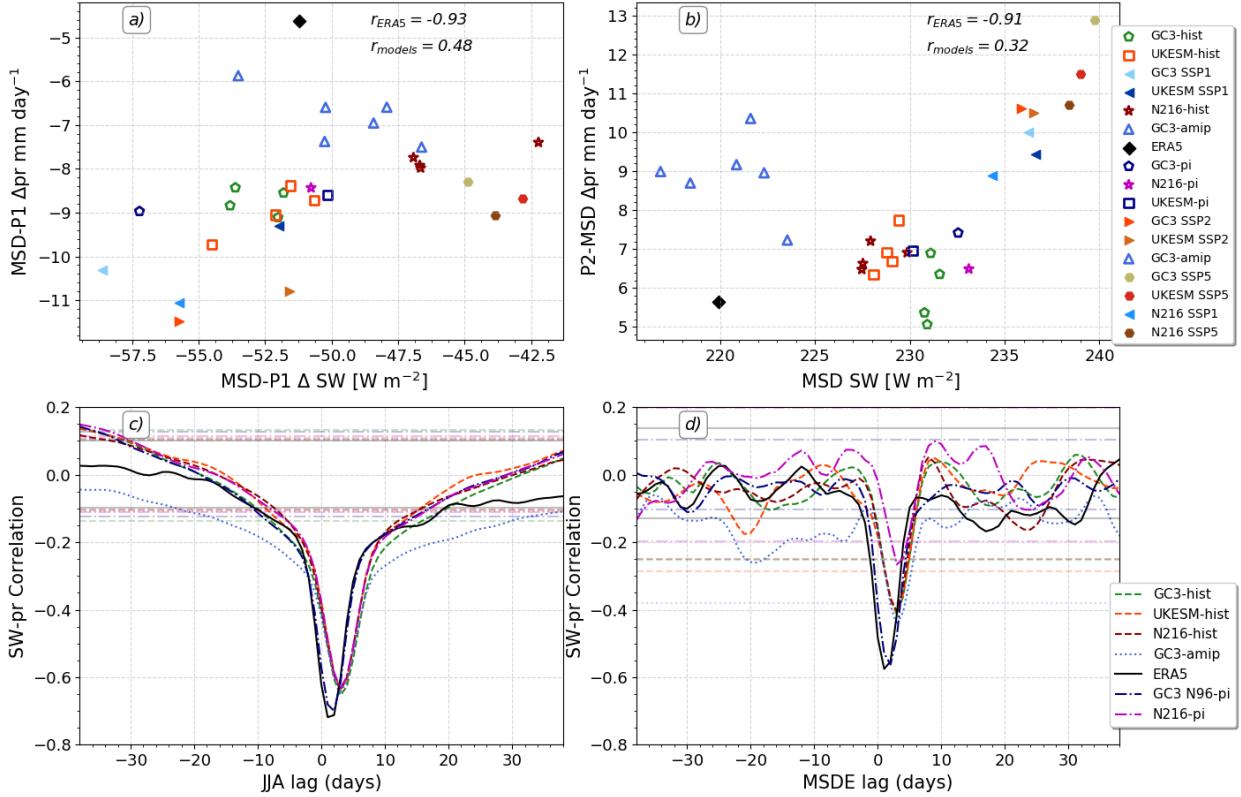
## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



**Figure 6.16:** As in Fig. 6.6, but for the net shortwave radiation [ $\text{W m}^{-2}$ ] at the surface.

These hypotheses are further tested through scatter and lag-lead regression analysis (Figure 6.17). The changes to the net SW at the surface are unrelated to the interannual variability of the changes to precipitation in ERA5. The reduction in SW in the MSD-P1 periods shows a 0.0 correlation with the changes of precipitation during the same stages, whereas the net SW absorbed in the EP during the MSD period is negatively correlated

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



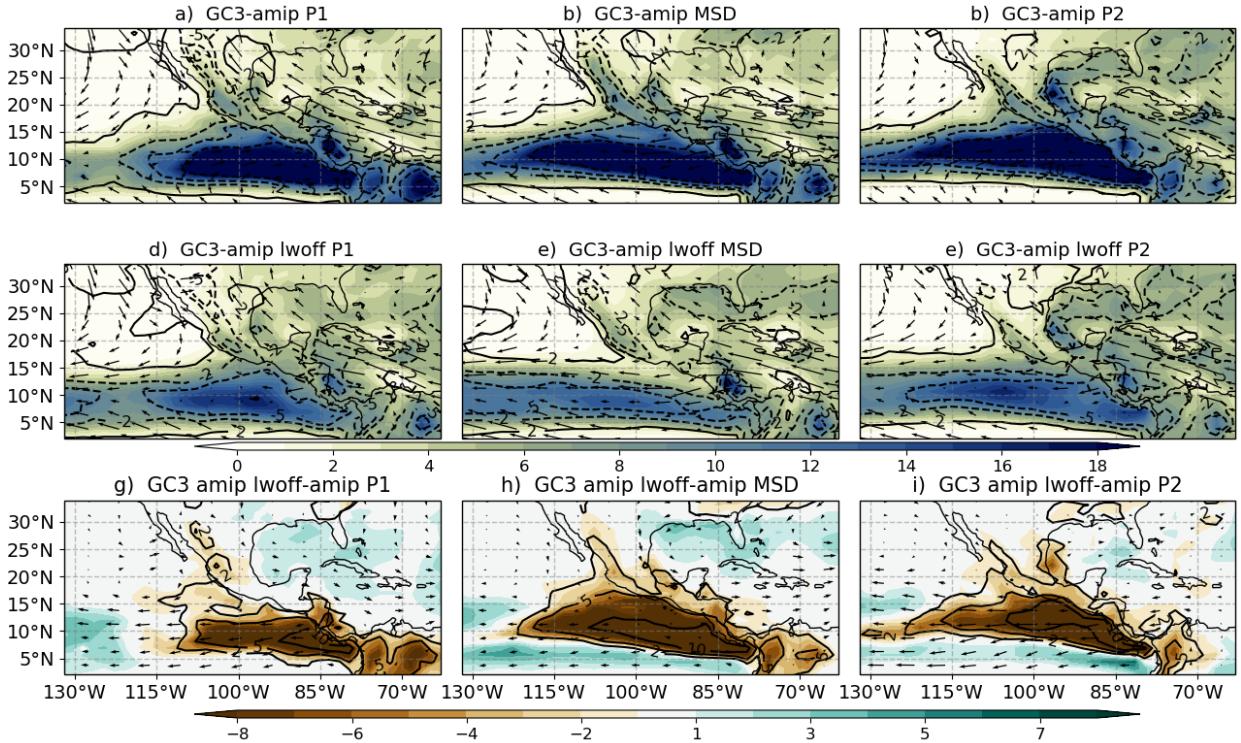
**Figure 6.17:** (a, b) Scatter of the mean changes to the net short-wave (SW) at the surface (abscissa) with respect to changes in precipitation for different MSD stages. (c, d) Lagged-regression coefficients between the net shortwave absorption in the East Pacific and precipitation over the MSD region for the (c) the JJA season and (d) around the MSDE date.

with precipitation during the second peak. In other words, years where less shortwave is absorbed in the EP is associated with years stronger second peaks in the MSD region, in marked contrast to previous hypotheses.

Furthermore, in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments there appears to be only a modest relationship between net SW and precipitation. The changes to SW during the MSD-P1 are only modestly related to precipitation as simulations that have the smallest changes to net SW in this period do not exhibit the smallest changes to precipitation. Similarly, a very weak relationship between SW and precipitation is found within the different experiments to relate the net SW at the surface during the MSD and the strength of the second peak.

Lag-lead relationships (Figure 6.17c, d) confirm that there is a strong correlation between SW and precipitation but this is a negative correlation at lag 0. This negative correlation illustrates that strong precipitation periods are associated with less shortwave absorbed by the

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiment



**Figure 6.18:** Composite mean precipitation (shading in  $\text{mm day}^{-1}$ ), vertical velocity (contours in  $10^{-2} \text{ Pa s}^{-1}$ ) and 850 hPa wind speed (vectors) for the P1, MSD and P2 periods in the (a-c) GC3-amip and (d-f) GC3-amip lwoff experiment. (g-i) shows the difference between the lwoff-amip and the amip experiments.

surface, due to the high clouds blocking incoming SW. Correlations are not significant outside of lag -5 to 5 days near the MSDE date, although they appear significant for some coupled simulations at lags of -40 days when the entire JJA season is considered. These results appear contradictory with the argument of Karnauskas et al. (2013) who argued a lagged relationship between shortwave absorption at the surface and precipitation at the end of the MSD.

Finally, while the incoming SW radiation plays an important role in several theories for the MSD, the LW effects have important consequences in general monsoon dynamics (Guo et al., 2015; Byrne and Zanna, 2020). The GC3-amip lwoff experiment is part of the contributions from the Cloud Feedback MIP (CFMIP) (Webb et al., 2017) to CMIP6. This experiment is identical to the GC3-amip experiment except that the treatment of the LW in the radiation code in the model is not affected by the presence of clouds, in other words all LW fluxes are assumed to be under clear-sky conditions.

The impact of the LW CRE for precipitation in the Mesomeric region is critical

## *6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments*

(Figure 6.18). When the LW effects of clouds are ignored, precipitation over the whole domain is greatly reduced (50-80%), ascent becomes weaker and the low-level circulation also weakens. These results are in agreement with previous studies (Guo et al., 2015; Byrne and Zanna, 2020) that show that cloud radiative heating strengthens the local and regional circulation in a monsoon. The circulation and precipitation is so diminished in GC3 amip-lwoff that this is the driest simulation found in this chapter (Figure 6.5). The monsoon precipitation is so diminished that little variations between the MSD and the two peak periods of precipitation is almost undistinguishable.

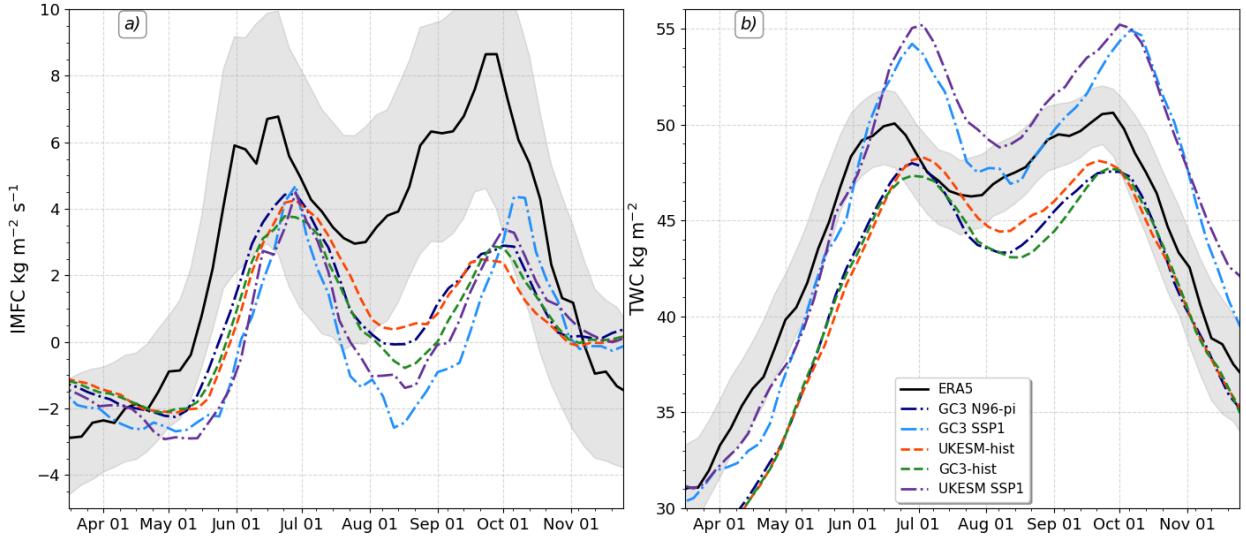
## **6.6 The role of the Caribbean Low-Level Jet**

The previous sections evaluate the radiative-convective feedback and the solar declination angle hypotheses, in addition, this section examines the role of the Caribbean Low-Level Jet (CLLJ) for the MSD of Mesoamerica. Section 6.3 shows that the seasonal cycle of the low-level zonal wind, i.e., the CLLJ, is well represented by the simulations (see Figure 6.7d), but the timing of the peak magnitude of the CLLJ in the models is delayed by about three weeks with respect to ERA5. The timing of the start of the MSD is notably also delayed in the models by around 10 days, according to Table 5.3 in the previous chapter. This evidence is suggestive that the CLLJ may be playing a role in the timings of the MSD in the simulations, which would be consistent with previous studies (e.g. Herrera et al., 2015; Martinez et al., 2019).

The main dynamical argument that links the MSD in southern Mexico and Central America and the CLLJ is centred around variations in the moisture flux convergence (MFC), and subsequently in the total water content (TWC) (see e.g. Gamble et al., 2008; Herrera et al., 2015; Martinez et al., 2019; Zermeño-Díaz, 2019). For this reason, this section examines the CLLJ magnitude as measured by the 850 hPa zonal wind in the Caribbean Sea (see box in Figure 6.3), and the integrated moisture flux convergence (IMFC) and TWC in the MSD region. The IMFC was calculated using the following equation from daily ERA5 data and daily data from the simulations:

$$IMFC = -\left\langle \nabla \cdot \vec{u}q \right\rangle \quad (6.3)$$

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



**Figure 6.19:** Seasonal cycle of (a) IMFC and (b) TWC averaged over the MSD region.

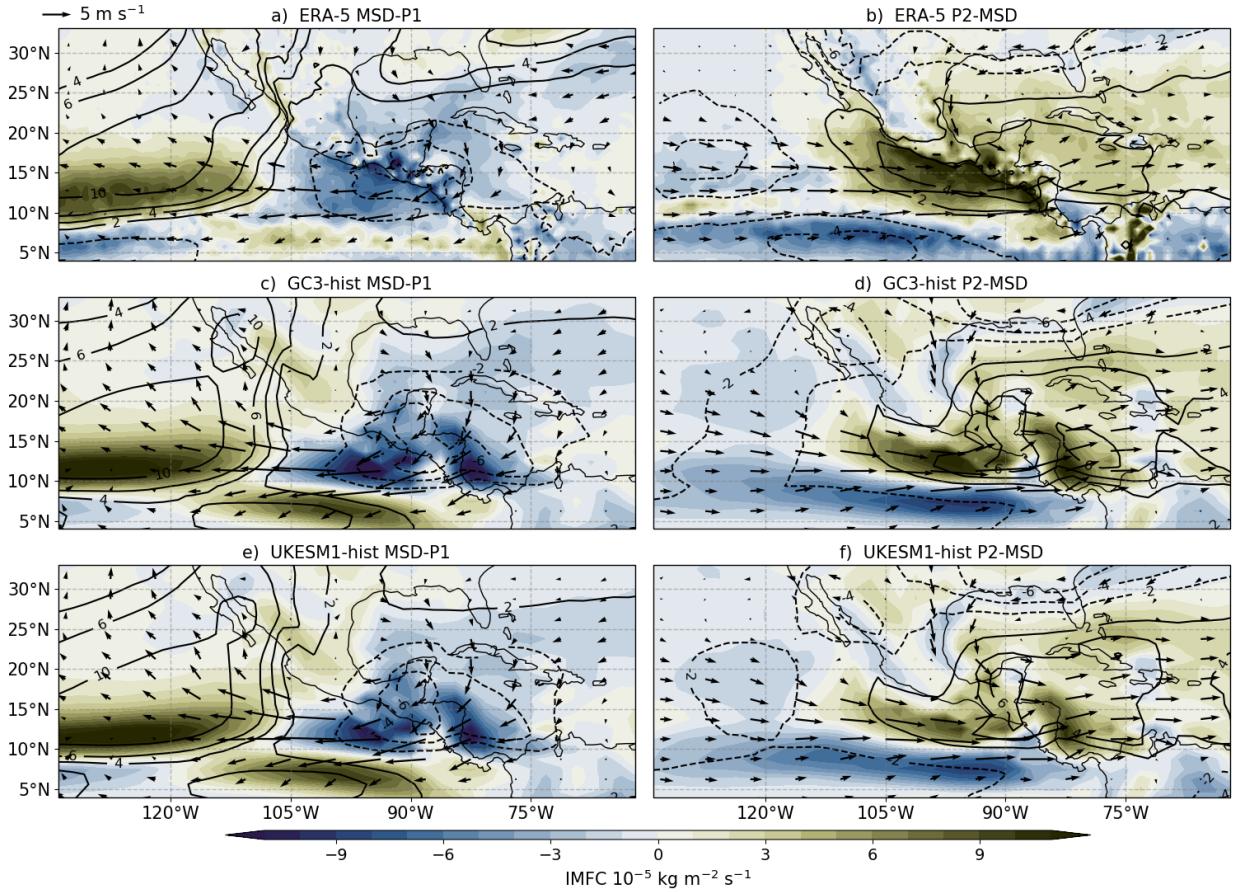
where  $q$  is the specific humidity at each pressure level,  $\vec{u}$  is the wind vector and  $\nabla$  is the horizontal divergence operator and the  $\langle \rangle$  operator denotes column integrals in the troposphere.

The seasonal cycle of the IMFC and TWC (Figure 6.19) averaged over the region of the MSD shows a strong bimodal signal, with two maxima in IMFC and TWC occurring roughly at the same time as the two peaks in precipitation and a minimum found during Midsummer. The simulations follow closely the variations of the seasonal cycle of ERA5, but with a weaker IMFC over the region in all the simulations, particularly after the period of the first peak of precipitation.

The magnitude of the two peaks of IMFC is fairly similar for all the simulations, in contrast with the asymmetry between the first and second peaks of precipitation, e.g., the historical experiments show a wetter first peak than the second peak. The IMFC during MSD, in contrast, shows notable differences amongst experiments, with the SSP1 experiments showing a smaller IMFC compared to the historical and piControl experiments, in fact in early August the IMFC is negative (indicative of moisture divergence) in the SSP1 experiments.

The magnitude and timings of the two peaks in TWC is fairly similar amongst the piControl and historical experiments and fairly similar to ERA5, however, notable differences exist. Firstly, the drying of the column in the simulations during midsummer occurs weeks after the drying in ERA5, which agrees with the seasonal cycle of precipitation. Secondly,

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



**Figure 6.20:** As in Figure 6.8, but showing variations in the IMFC (shading), TWC (contours in units of  $\text{kg m}^{-2}$ ) and 850-hPa wind (vectors).

the low-emission scenario (SSP1) runs show a higher TWC indicative of a moistening of the column throughout all the seasons for a relatively low greenhouse forcing. However, the SSP1 experiments show the strongest decrease in TWC from the P1 to the MSD period of all the simulations, likely associated with the negative IMFC found during this period. Similarly, the SSP1 experiments show the strongest moistening of the column in late summer of all the simulations.

The IMFC, TWC and 850-hPa wind variations associated with the MSD (MSD-P1 and P2-MSD) are shown in Figure 6.20 for ERA5 and two simulations. The patterns observed in the low-level wind vectors associated with the MSD timings follow closely the previously reported "MSD patterns" described by Zermeño-Díaz (2019), which confirms that the WT method is able to extract similar patterns in the low-level wind associated with the MSD

## *6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments*

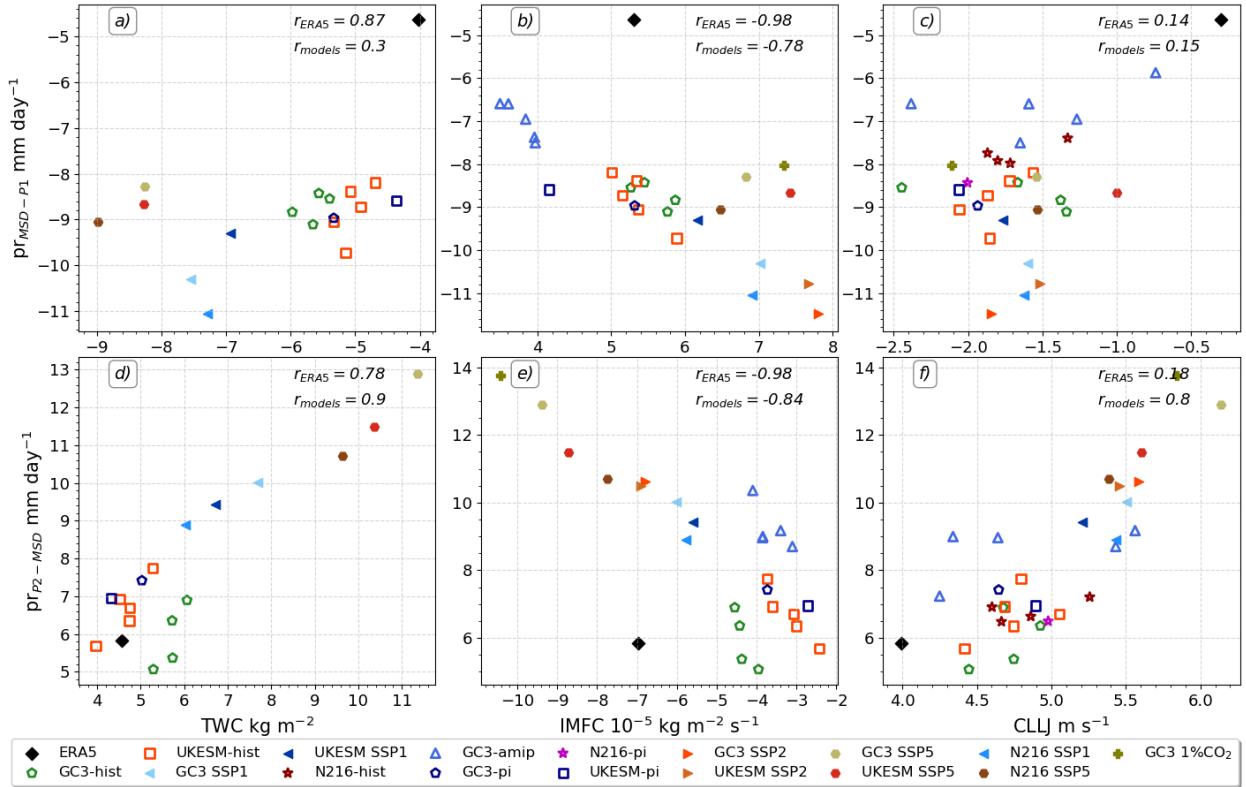
to other techniques. The wind flow pattern in the MSD-P1 panel is characterised, both in ERA5 and the simulations, by modest northeasterly anomalies in the Gulf of Mexico and the CSEA and strong easterly anomalies over the EP region. These wind anomalies indicate that as the wetter first peak period transitions to the drier MSD, the wind field changes from a weak low-level westerly wind to an easterly wind (see also Figure 6.7c). At the end of the MSD, the wind direction changes again to a westerly direction in the East Pacific, whereas the wind anomalies in the Caribbean Sea turn to westerlies indicative of a weakening of the CLLJ, coincident with the second peak of precipitation observed in the MSD region.

IMFC and TWC show coherent variations with the timings of the seasonal cycle of precipitation in the MSD region, with less moisture convergence and precipitable water in the column during the drier period compared to the two peak periods. In contrast, west of the coast, at around the 125°W, during the MSD there is increased TWC and IMFC in ERA5 and in the simulations, in agreement with the previous sections which showed increased convective activity in this region. Simultaneous to the drying of southern Mexico and Central America during the MSD, the North American monsoon region moistens as shown by the increased TWC and IMFC.

In turn, the IMFC and TWC anomalies associated with the end of the MSD period, depicted by the P2-MSD panel, show positive differences in the MSD region and negative anomalies southward, suggesting increased IMFC and TWC over southern Mexico and northern Central America, in agreement with the secondary increase in precipitation. Positive TWC and IMFC differences extend from the MSD region to the east into Cuba, the Caribbean Sea and the Gulf of Mexico. This moistening coincides with increased moisture divergence to the south of the MSD region in the East Pacific (120-90°W, 3-10°N) and decreased TWC.

Furthermore, a scatter plot of the mean changes to the IMFD, TWC and the CLLJ and their relationship to the synchronous variations in precipitation (Figure 6.21) confirm that these diagnostics are deeply related to the timings and strength of the three stages in the seasonal cycle of precipitation. The interannual variability of the precipitation differences between the first peak and the MSD periods in ERA5 are very well explained by the interannual variability of the TWC ( $r = 0.87$ ) and the IMFC ( $r = -0.98$ ) but less so by the CLLJ ( $r = 0.14$ ). The inter-experiment variability in the MSD-P1 precipitation differences

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



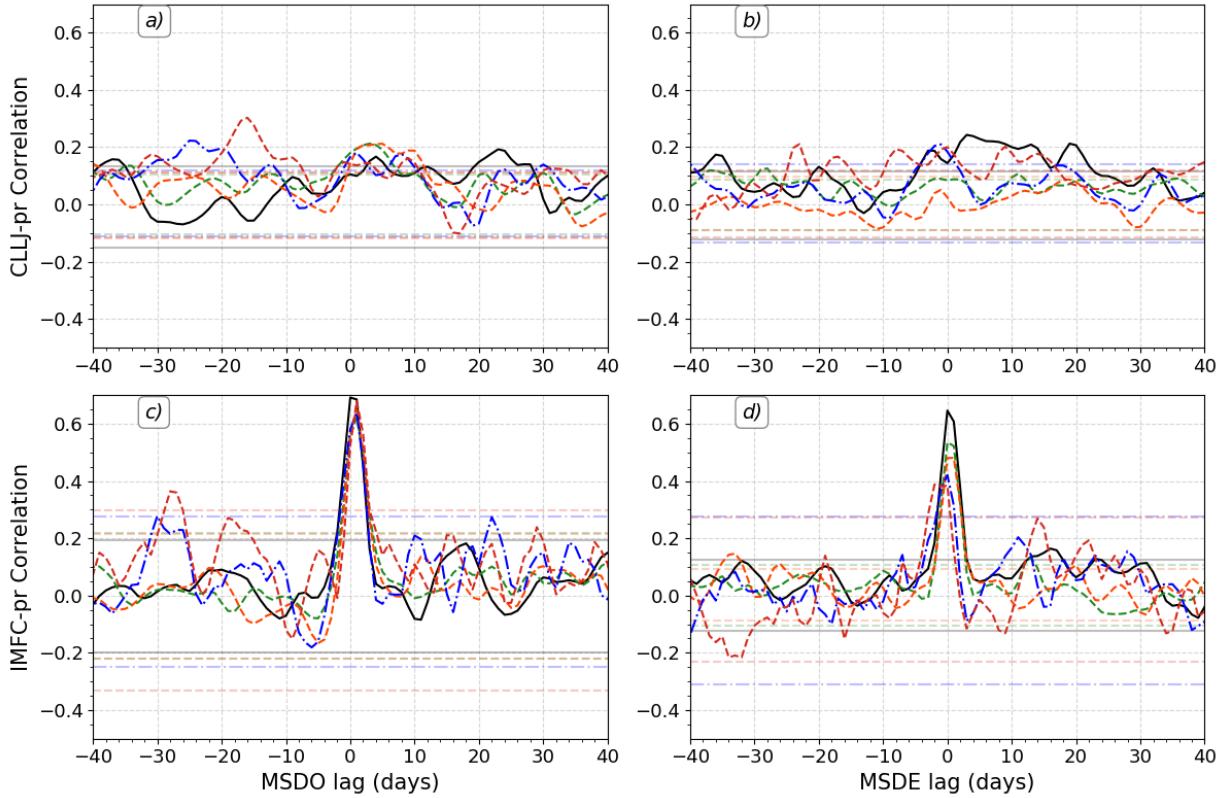
**Figure 6.21:** As in Figure 6.10, showing the scatter of mean changes (a-c) MSD-P1 and (d-f) P2-MSD periods, but using the (a, d) IMFD and (b, e) TWC in the MSD region and the (c, f) CLLJ on the x-axis and precipitation in the MSD region in the y-axis.

can largely be explained by the inter-experiment differences in IMFC changes during the MSD-P1 periods ( $r = 0.78$ ). However, the changes in the CLLJ and IMFC in the simulations can not explain the precipitation differences between the runs in the MSD-P1 panels.

The changes from the MSD to the second peak of precipitation (lower row in Figure 6.21) in the simulations are very well explained by the mean variations to the CLLJ, the TWC and the IMFC. However, for the interannual variability of ERA5, only changes to the TWC and IMFC show significant and relatively high correlations. These results would suggest that variability in the CLLJ can explain several differences in the magnitude of the P2-MSD differences in the models, possibly through the modulation of the CLLJ on the TWC and the IMFD over the continent; nevertheless, the observed interannual variability of the CLLJ cannot explain the interannual variability in the strength of the second peak.

The synchronous relationship found in the previous scatterplot is further tested via lagged correlations, shown in Figure 6.22. These correlations do not show any evidence

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments

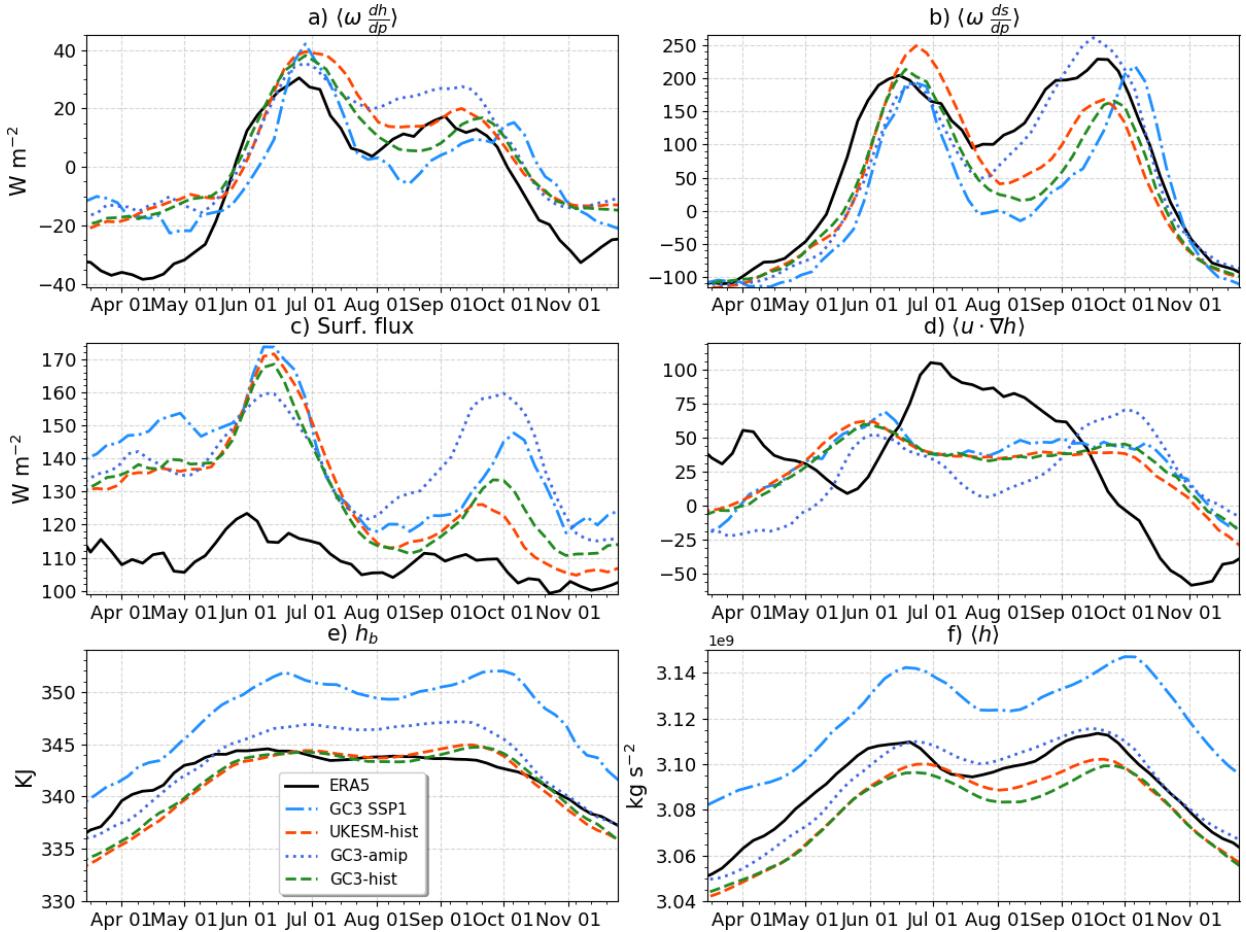


**Figure 6.22:** Lagged correlations between precipitation in the MSD and the (a, b) CLLJ, defined as the 925 hPa zonal wind averaged over the CSEA region, and (c, d) the IMFC over the MSD region. Correlations are shown with lags computed with respect to the (a, c) onset and (b, d) end dates.

that the nature of the relationship between the CLLJ or the IMFC with precipitation over the MSD is of a lagged nature. In particular, the correlations of precipitation with the CLLJ are not higher than 0.3 at any lag and only become significant for a few days in some simulations. In particular, around the MSDE date, no correlation at negative lags is notably positive or significant which is at odds with the hypothesis that CLLJ is responsible for the end of the MSD.

However, the strength of the CLLJ may not be the relevant factor, but rather the influence of the CLLJ on the IMFC. The correlation of IMFC with precipitation shows a strong positive correlation, both at MSDO and MSDE in reanalysis and models around lag 0, and similar results are found for TWC-pr correlations (not shown). However, there is little evidence that this relationship is of a lagged nature, as the correlations are not significant far away from the 0 lag.

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



**Figure 6.23:** Pentad-mean seasonal cycle of the moist static energy budget terms. Vertical advection of (a) moist and (b) dry static energy, (c) the sum of the latent and sensible heat fluxes, (d) horizontal advection of MSE, (e) boundary layer MSE ( $h_b$ ) and total column MSE ( $\langle h \rangle$ ). The quantities in panels c,d were averaged over the EP region and the rest of the panels over the MSD region.

## 6.7 A short look at the MSD through the lense of the moist static energy budget

The previous sections have tested three leading hypothesis for the Midsummer drought, with results suggesting that only elements of the CLLJ hypothesis can explain the interannual variability in the strength of the MSD in reanalysis, as well as in the differences between the CMIP6 experiments. However, changes to the CLLJ and IMFC appear to be unrelated to the strength and time of the onset of the MSD, which means that other processes are responsible for the start of the drier MSD period.

## *6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments*

To further explore the processes that control the start of the MSD, the moist static energy (MSE) budget is used in this section to disentangle how the column MSE budget terms vary over the wet season. The purpose of this section is not provide a new theory for the MSD but rather to show whether the investigation of the MSD through the lense of the MSE budget may prove more promising to understand these mechanisms than traditional theories and diagnostics.

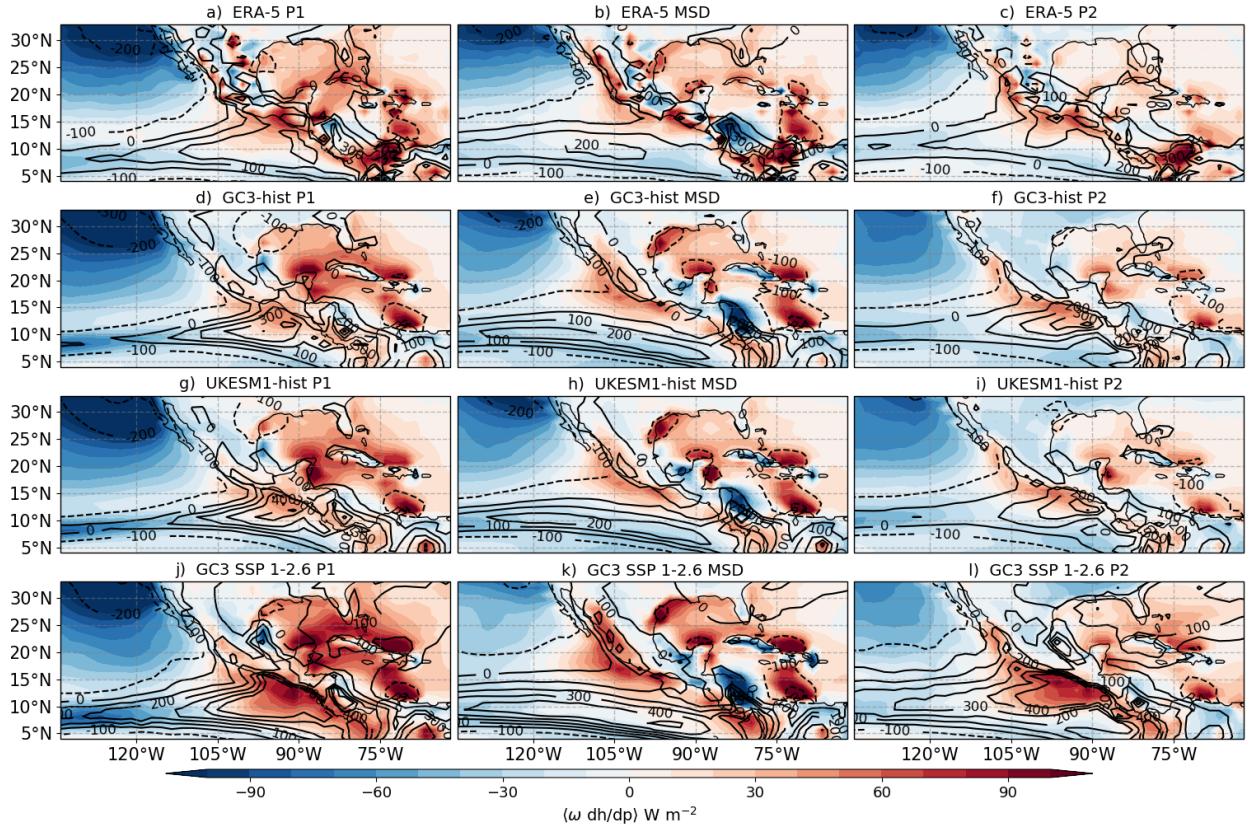
The computation of the MSE budget terms is done as described in section 3.3. The budget terms are obtained from daily-mean values at all available levels within the troposphere for reanalysis and climate model output. It should be noted that the radiative heating terms are not available from the CMIP archive on daily scales so a full budget was not feasible with model data. In turn, we focus on the vertical and horizontal advection of MSE, the total column MSE, the surface fluxes and the gross moist stability.

First, the seasonal cycle of the column budget terms, as well as the boundary layer or near surface MSE ( $h_b$ ), is shown in Figure 6.23 with some quantities shown for the EP region and others for the MSD region. The vertical advection of dry ( $s$ ) and moist ( $h$ ) static energy shows a clear bimodal seasonal cycle, with two peaks at the start and end of the summer season, separated by a local minimum that occurs at the end of July or early August. The simulated vertical advection of MSE corresponds well with ERA5 during the wet season (JAS) for all the simulations, although the vertical advection of  $s$  is smaller in the historical and SSP1 experiments during the MSD and second peak periods. The vertical advection of  $s$  is not underestimated by the GC3 amip experiment during late summer, which has a wetter second peak as shown in previous sections.

The sum of the latent and sensible heat fluxes in the EP region show a clear bimodal signal in the experiments but not in ERA5. The experiments also show very large biases during both periods of peak precipitation in June and Sep-Oct. In late summer, this bias is particularly notable in the GC3 amip experiment. These biases in the surface fluxes in the EP are arguably one of the reasons for the very wet bias found in the EP ITCZ in these models.

One component of the theory by Karnauskas et al. (2013) involved the net shortwave part of the surface energy balance being notably different during the various stages of the MSD. A direct implication from this hypothesis is that the shortwave ultimately influences

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



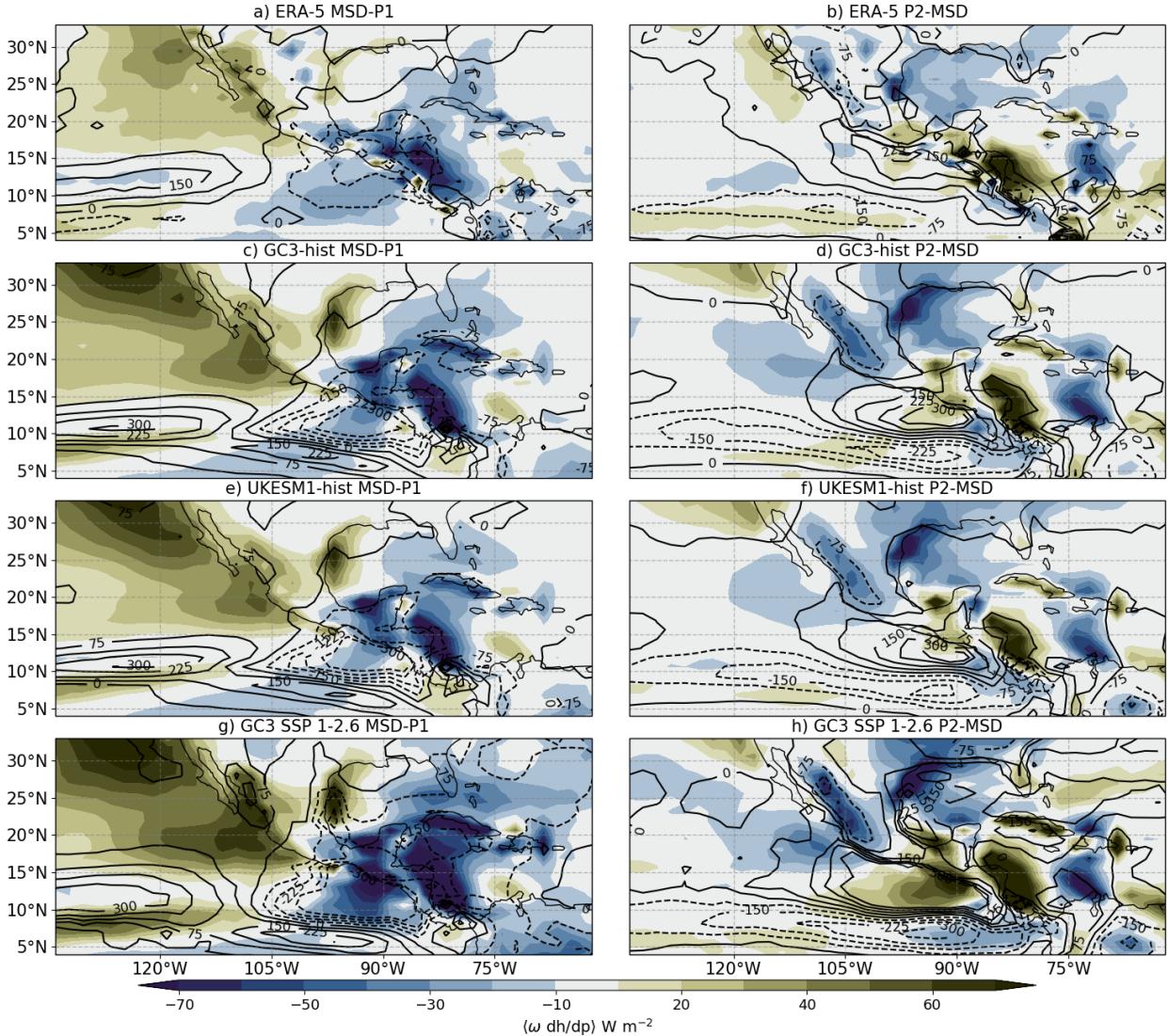
**Figure 6.24:** Composites of mean  $\langle \omega dh/dp \rangle$  (shading in  $W m^{-2}$ ) and  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  (contours in  $W m^{-2}$ ).

the surface or boundary layer MSE (Fig. 6.23e). However, in most of the simulations and ERA5,  $h_b$  in the MSD region follows a plateau-like seasonal cycle with a clear increase during spring, a plateau during summer and a sharp decrease in October at the end of the rainy season. The SSP1 experiment shows a decrease in  $h_b$  in August but this is fairly modest compared to the magnitude of the change in  $h_b$  at the end and start of the summer.

Similarly, the total column  $h$  shows a modest bimodal seasonality in reanalysis and simulations, i.e.,  $\langle h \rangle$  decreases at the midsummer. The low-emission scenario shows a notable increase in total column  $h$  compared to historical and pre-industrial experiments, and higher emission scenarios (SSP2 and SSP5) showed that total  $h$  scales with greenhouse forcing (not shown). One key aspect of this increase in total column  $h$  is that total precipitation is not increased uniformly over all the stages of the wet season (see Fig. 6.5).

The spatial distribution of the mean  $\langle \omega dh/dp \rangle$  and  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  (Figure 6.24) during the three stages of the MSD seasonal cycle show a good agreement between the experiments

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiment

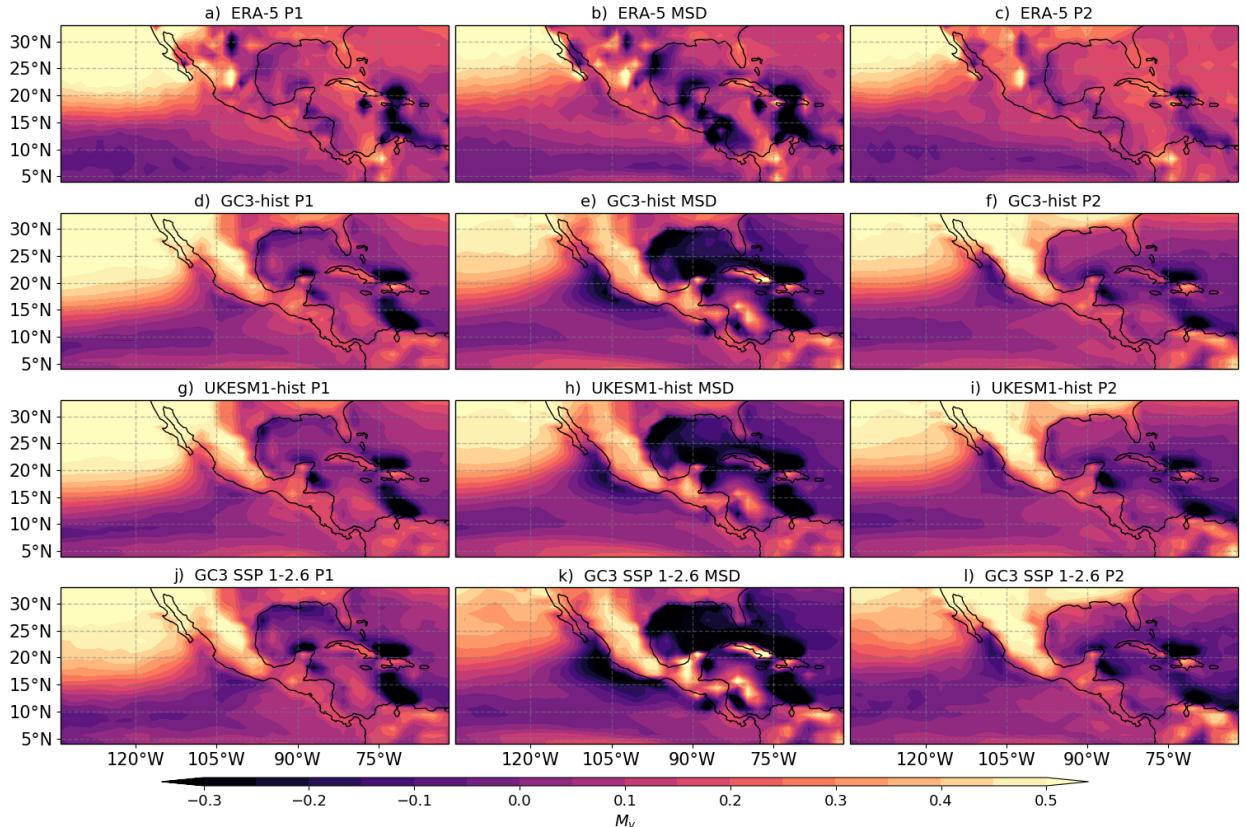


**Figure 6.25:** Composites of the differences (a, c, e, g) MSD-P1 and (b, d, f, h) P2-MSD of  $\langle \omega dh/dp \rangle$  (shading in  $W m^{-2}$ ) and  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  (contours in  $W m^{-2}$ ).

and reanalysis. The highest values of  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  are found on the western coast of northern Central America, in the easternmost position of the ITCZ. Positive values of  $\langle \omega dh/dp \rangle$  are found in the Caribbean Sea, the Gulf of Mexico and over the Mesoamerican region throughout the three stages of the MSD. Negative values of  $\langle \omega dh/dp \rangle$  and  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  are found over the coast of California throughout the wet season.

The changes to the  $\langle \omega dh/dp \rangle$  and  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  during the MSD periods are best illustrated in Figure 6.25, which shows the differences between MSD-P1 and P2-MSD. In the Mesoamerican region,  $\langle \omega dh/dp \rangle$  and  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  are reduced during the MSD period compared the first

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



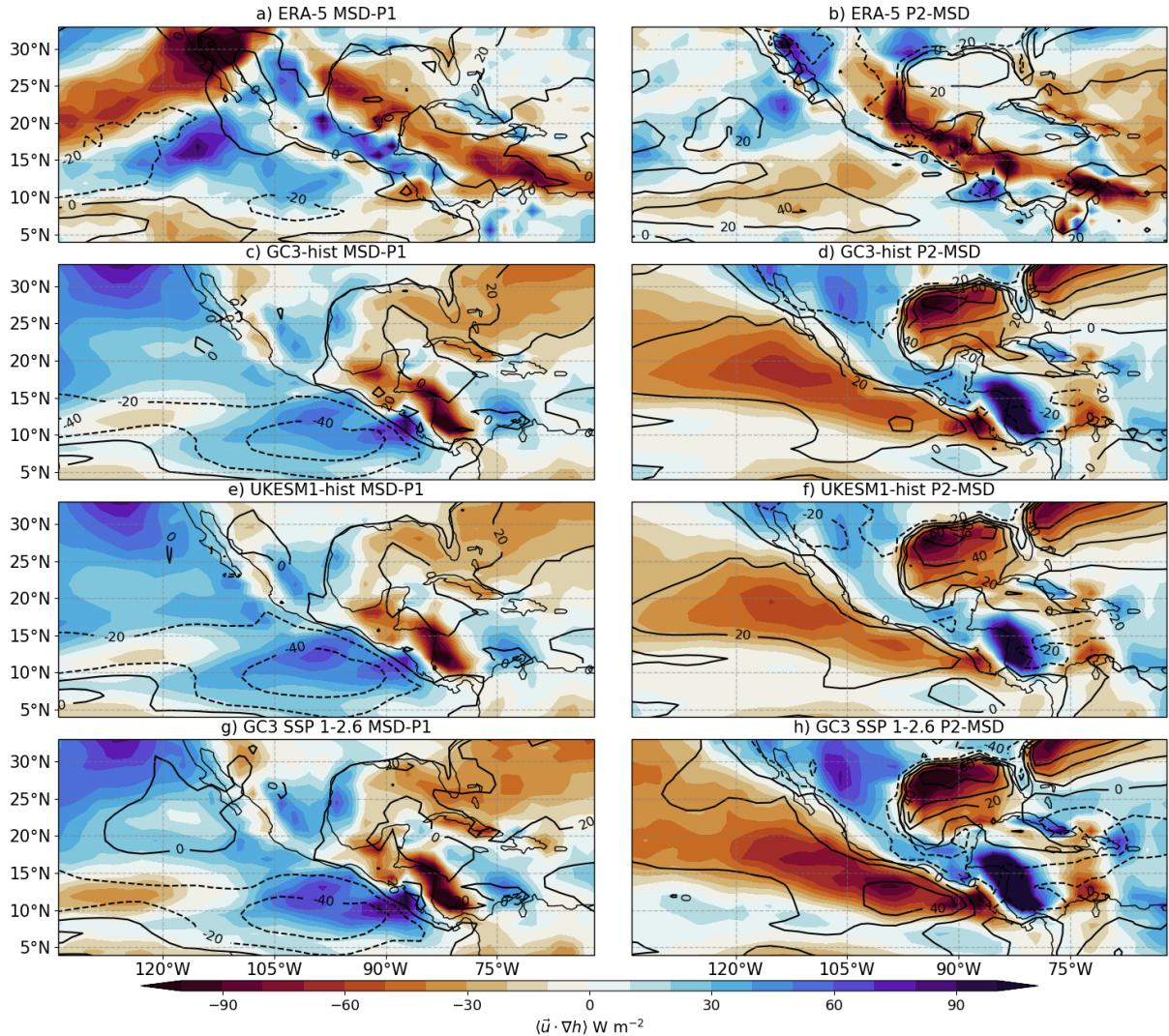
**Figure 6.26:** Composites of vertical gross moist stability ( $M_v$ ) in the three stages of the Midsummer drought for ERA5 and three experiments.

peak period, this difference is maximized right at the exit of the Gulf of Tehuantepec, in southwestern Mexico. Simultaneously, from the P1 to the MSD period,  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  notably increases west of the Mesoamerican region near the  $125^\circ\text{W}$  region whereas  $\langle \omega dh/dp \rangle$  increases in northern Mexico and in the Gulf of California.

At the end of the MSD, illustrated by the P2-MSD panels in Figure 6.25,  $\langle \omega dh/dp \rangle$  and  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  increase notably in the Mesoamerican region. Again, the maximum difference of  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  is found in the Gulf of Tehuantepec region. The North American monsoon region show a decrease in both  $\langle \omega dh/dp \rangle$  and  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$ . Both for the P2-MSD and MSD-P1 panels, the experiments are able to reproduce the spatial patterns of these changes to these budget terms. Furthermore, the SSP1 experiment shows larger differences between the MSD stages compared to the historical experiments.

The normalized gross moist stability (NGMS) is a useful quantity to better understand how convection is redistributing  $h$  vertically (see equation 3.6). Figure 6.26 shows the

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments

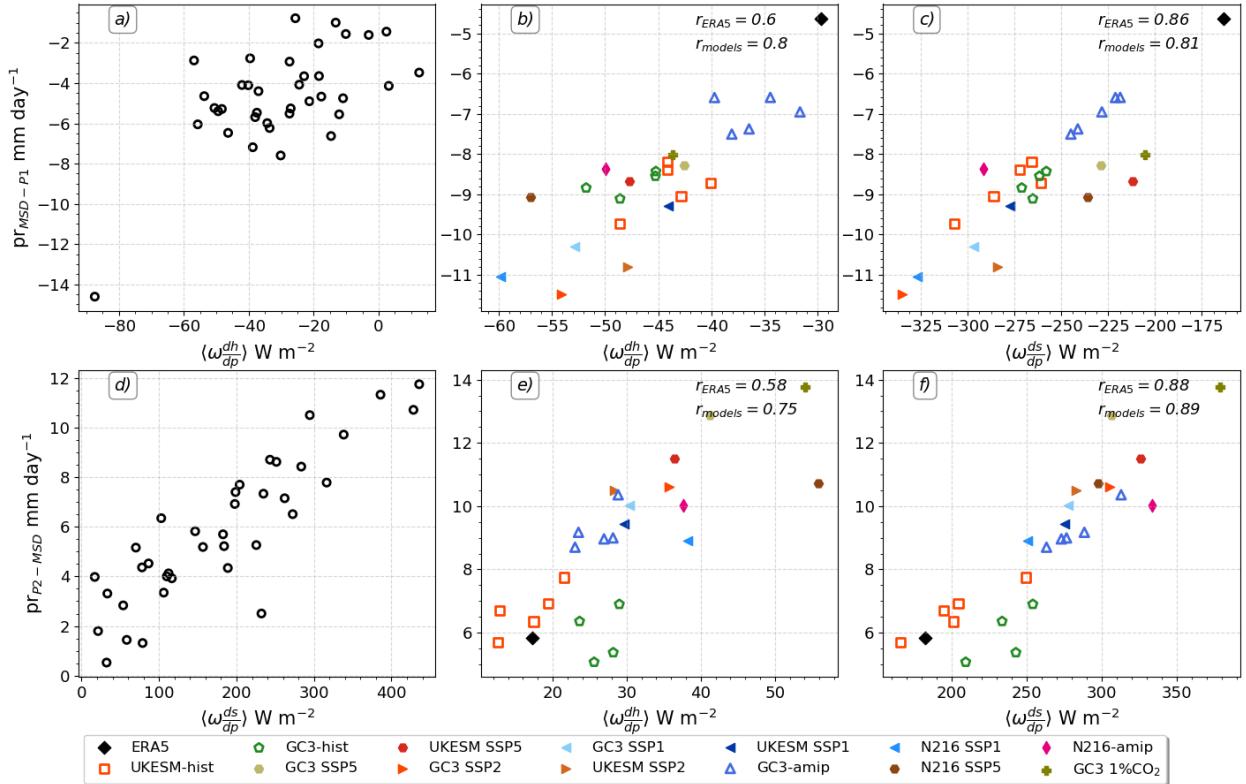


**Figure 6.27:** Composites of the differences (a, c, e, g) MSD-P1 and (b, d, f, h) P2-MSD of  $\langle \vec{u} \cdot \nabla h \rangle$  (shading in  $\text{W m}^{-2}$ ) and total surface fluxes ( $F$ ) (contours in  $\text{W m}^{-2}$ ).

temporal and spatial variability of the vertical component of the NGMS ( $M_v$ ) during the three stages of the MSD. The reanalysis and the simulations show that  $M_v$  is generally close to 0 in the easternmost Pacific ( $5^\circ\text{N}$ - $15^\circ\text{N}$ ) and into the MSD region, and positive on the western coast of California and over the continental North America.

The most noteworthy variations of  $M_v$  associated with the MSD timings occur over the western coast of Mexico, the Gulf of Mexico and the Caribbean. From the first peak period to the drier MSD period,  $M_v$  decreases in these regions and then increases again from the dry period to the wetter second peak period. Negative and minimum  $M_v$  is then found during the MSD period over most of the so-called Intra-Americas Seas region. This

## 6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments



**Figure 6.28:** Scatterplot of the relationship between the area-averaged mean vertical advection of dry and moist static energy and precipitation over the MSD region. (a, d) shows the interannual variability in ERA5, where each dot represents a single observed year, and the inter-experiment spread in the rest of the panels, whereas the rest of the panels are as in Figure 6.17.

result is important because these changes point to seasonal variations in the relationship between convection and the large-scale dynamics (Raymond et al., 2009), including the shape of the vertical velocity profile.

The horizontal advection term and the surface fluxes also show notable differences associated with the MSD timings (Figure 6.27). In the MSD-P1 period, decreased surface fluxes in the easternmost Pacific Ocean are observed in the three simulations and, to a lesser degree, in ERA5. These differences suggest that in the models, surface fluxes decrease as precipitation decreases from the wet first peak period to the dry MSD period. In the simulations, these negative surface flux anomalies are collocated with negative differences of the horizontal advection of MSE term.

The scatter of the relationship between precipitation and the vertical advection of dry and moist during the wet season (Figure 6.28) indicates that these terms are very relevant to

## *6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments*

explain variability in the strength of the MSD, both in ERA5 as in the simulations. Figure 6.28a, d shows that the interannual variability of vertical advection of dry and moist static energy in ERA5 is strongly related to interannual variations in the precipitation changes during the MSD. Negative differences of  $\langle \omega dh/dp \rangle$  and  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  are observed in MSD-P1 panel, in agreement with the previous composite analysis whereas increases of these terms occur from the MSD period to the second peak period in ERA5 and in the experiments. Specifically,  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  is the term that best explains interannual variability of the strength of the MSD, measured by the difference MSD-P1 in ERA5.

## **6.8 Summary and discussion**

The Midsummer drought (MSD) is a key element of past, present and future climates of southern Mexico, northern Central America and the Caribbean with important implications for agriculture and water management (Hellin et al., 2017; de Sousa et al., 2018; Harvey et al., 2018). However, a complete description of the physical mechanisms that explain the spatial and temporal variability of the MSD is not yet clear. This lack of understanding is magnified when investigating the MSD in global climate models that are used for projections of future climate, as little is known as to why only some models can reproduce the MSD (Ryu and Hayhoe, 2014).

This chapter tackled these shortcomings in the literature by investigating the processes that are linked to the MSD in CMIP6 experiments of the MOHC models, an investigation that was motivated by the two previous chapters which showed that these models reasonably reproduced the main features of the MSD signal. The first contribution of this chapter is the diagnosis of MSD timings and patterns on a sub-monthly scale, a step forward from previous studies that diagnosed the MSD on monthly-mean timescales, possibly missing key information in the process. For this purpose, the wavelet transform method (WT; Chapter 5) was used to determine the timings of the MSD on a 5-day (pentad) scale.

The WT method proved useful to separate the wet season in each dataset into three stages: the first and second peak periods (P1 and P2) and the drier period (MSD). This approach using the WT method was able to reproduce the so-called MSD pattern reported

## *6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments*

in previous studies (Zermeño-Díaz, 2019; Zhao et al., 2020) using various diagnostics such as OLR,  $\omega$  and the low-level wind flow. This pattern is characterised by strong changes to the zonal wind flow crossing from the Caribbean Sea into the easternmost Pacific Ocean, as well as by anomalous vertical velocities found west of the coast at around 125°W, in agreement with previous findings (Herrera et al., 2015; Zermeño-Díaz, 2019).

The chapter first evaluates key climate features in the region such as the seasonal cycle of the Caribbean Low-Level Jet (CLLJ) and East Pacific SSTs. Results show that the simulations agree well with the observed seasonal cycle and that the experiments show very similar MSD patterns to observations. The following sections in the chapter test three of the leading hypotheses put forth to explain the MSD, this investigation is the second key contribution from this chapter. Each hypothesis is evaluated using the WT method in two different ways. The first question was whether a hypothesis could explain the interannual variability in the strength and timing of the MSD in ERA5. The second approach focused on the CMIP6 experiments and aimed to test whether the elements of each hypothesis could explain the differences in precipitation at each stage of the seasonal cycle between the realizations.

The first mechanism proposed by Magaña et al. (1999) argues that SST-cloud-radiative feedbacks explain the MSD. In this hypothesis, the SSTs in the East Pacific should also exhibit a bimodal seasonal cycle, with a second peak in SSTs found in September. Even though Magaña and Caetano (2005) analysed this for a specific year and found no evidence of a second peak in SSTs, no study to date robustly evaluated whether observations or models confirm their hypothesis. This chapter provides evidence that in ERA5, SSTs not only do not increase at the later stages of the summer but rather decrease. While the seasonal cycle in the simulations do show a two peak structure, the composite analysis shows that as precipitation transitions from the drier MSD to the second peak periods, SSTs decrease in the Pacific coast of Central America, in contrast to the prediction of the SST-cloud feedback mechanism. No evidence is found that the variability of the East Pacific SSTs is directly associated with the precipitation over the MSD region in ERA5 or in the CMIP6 experiments.

The feedback mechanism also suggests that the second peak is a result of a second increase in downwelling shortwave radiation at the surface that results from cloud cover during the

## *6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiment*

drier MSD. The solar declination angle mechanism of Karnauskas et al. (2013) also suggests that shortwave absorption has two peaks in the seasonal cycle, which leads to the two precipitation peaks. The shortwave absorption at the surface does show a bimodal seasonal cycle in ERA5 and in the simulations, as predicted by these two mechanisms. However, the interannual variability in ERA5 and inter-experiment differences in the absorbed shortwave at the different stages of the seasonal cycle cannot explain the changes over precipitation. Moreover, no significantly positive correlation is found between the shortwave absorption at the surface and precipitation at any lags but rather a strong anticorrelation signal is found, which is a result of stronger convective activity leading to more cloud cover and less downwelling shortwave at the surface.

Cloud-radiative effects (CRE) are known to be key for precipitation in monsoon regions and the central argument of Magaña et al. (1999) is that precipitation and CRE (at the surface) are part of a feedback mechanism that explains the MSD. This chapter then presents a first regional evaluation of the net CRE at the surface as well as the long-wave and short-wave contributions. The net CRE over the wet season is negative following the regions of maximum precipitation, i.e., the East Pacific ITCZ and the MSD region reaching values of  $-100 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  over the core ITCZ region in both the models and ERA5. The net CRE is dominated by the short-wave component that acts to cool the surface due to the effect of cloud cover associated with convection. Over the MSD region, the net, short-wave and long-wave CRE at the surface show a bimodal regime that closely follows the evolution of precipitation. Finally, an experiment part of CFMIP where long-wave effects are decoupled from the simulation, shows that the long-wave component of CRE are key for sustaining the monsoon circulation and precipitation.

One alternative hypothesis is that the MSD is caused by the modulation of the transport of moisture by the CLLJ (Herrera et al., 2015; Zermeño-Díaz, 2019; Martinez et al., 2019). The integrated moisture flux convergence and the total column water content are found to better explain observed and simulated differences in precipitation, compared to the previous hypothesis. Evidence is presented that the low-level wind flow variations on the west coast of Central America is linked to the variations in the strength and direction of the CLLJ.

## *6. Mechanisms of the Mesoamerican midsummer drought in the MOHC CMIP6 experiments*

Changes to the CLLJ and moisture convergence are very skillful to understand precipitation changes at the end of the MSD period but less skillful for changes at the start of the MSD.

A moist static energy (MSE) budget is implemented to investigate whether this technique could provide additional insight into the mechanisms of the MSD. The total column MSE, as well as the vertical advection terms of the budget show a clear bimodal signal that closely follows that of precipitation. The vertical advection of dry and moist static energy are found to have the strongest relationship to the interannual variability and the inter-experiment differences of precipitation in the MSD region.

In particular,  $\langle \omega ds/dp \rangle$  is able to explain interannual variability in ERA5 as well as the precipitation differences between the range of experiments considered in this chapter. While these results do not directly point to any theory or hypothesis, the strong correlations in reanalysis and simulations indicate that MSE budgets would be useful in future research to better understand the key mechanism underpinning the MSD. Specifically, this result points to a possible modulation of the strength of convection by the shape of the vertical velocity profile, which is the key modulator of these terms. How the vertical velocity profile changes during the rainy season, and whether there are notable trends in ERA5 or significant changes between historical and Scenario experiments warrants further research.

# Bibliography

- Adams, D. K. and Comrie, A. C. (1997), 'The north American monsoon', *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* **78**(10), 2197–2214.
- Adams, D. K., Gutman, S. I., Holub, K. L. and Pereira, D. S. (2013), 'GNSS observations of deep convective time scales in the Amazon', *Geophysical Research Letters* **40**(11), 2818–2823.  
**URL:** <https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/grl.50573>
- Addison, P. S. (2017), *The illustrated wavelet transform handbook: introductory theory and applications in science, engineering, medicine and finance*, CRC press.
- Adler, R. F., Huffman, G. J., Chang, A., Ferraro, R., Xie, P.-P., Janowiak, J., Rudolf, B., Schneider, U., Curtis, S., Bolvin, D., Gruber, A., Susskind, J., Arkin, P. and Nelkin, E. (2003), 'The version-2 global precipitation climatology project (gpcp) monthly precipitation analysis (1979–present)', *Journal of hydrometeorology* **4**(6), 1147–1167.
- Allan, R. P. (2011), 'Combining satellite data and models to estimate cloud radiative effect at the surface and in the atmosphere', *Meteorological Applications* **18**(3), 324–333.
- Allen, T. L. and Mapes, B. E. (2017), 'The late spring Caribbean rain-belt: climatology and dynamics', *International Journal of Climatology* **37**(15), 4981–4993.
- Amador, J. A. (2008), 'The intra-americas sea low-level jet: Overview and future research', *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences* **1146**(1), 153–188.
- Anderson, T. G., Anchukaitis, K. J., Pons, D. and Taylor, M. (2019), 'Multiscale trends and precipitation extremes in the Central American Midsummer Drought', *Environmental Research Letters* **14**(12), 124016.
- Andrews, D. G., Holton, J. R. and Leovy, C. B. (1987), *Middle atmosphere dynamics*, Vol. 40, Academic press.
- Andrews, M., Ridley, J., Wood, R., Andrews, T., Blockley, E., Booth, B., Burke, E., Dittus, A., Florek, P., Gray, L., Haddad, S., Hardiman, S., Hermanson, L., Hodson, D., Hogan, E., Jones, G., Knight, J., Kuhlbrodt, T., Misios, S. and Sutton, R. (2020), 'Historical simulations with hadgem3-gc3.1 for cmip6', *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth Systems*.
- Andrews, T., Andrews, M. B., Bodas-Salcedo, A., Jones, G. S., Kuhlbrodt, T., Manners, J., Menary, M. B., Ridley, J., Ringer, M. A., Sellar, A. A., Senior, C. A. and Tang, Y. (2019), 'Forcings, feedbacks, and climate sensitivity in hadgem3-gc3. 1 and ukesm1', *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth Systems* **11**(12), 4377–4394.
- Angeles, M. E., González, J. E., Ramírez-Beltrán, N. D., Tepley, C. A. and Comarazamy, D. E.

- (2010), ‘Origins of the caribbean rainfall bimodal behavior’, *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **115**(D11).
- Annamalai, H. (2020), ‘Enso precipitation anomalies along the equatorial pacific: Moist static energy framework diagnostics’, *Journal of Climate* **33**(21), 9103–9127.
- Arias, P. A., Fu, R. and Mo, K. C. (2012), ‘Decadal variation of rainfall seasonality in the north american monsoon region and its potential causes’, *Journal of Climate* **25**(12), 4258–4274.  
**URL:** <https://doi.org/10.1175/JCLI-D-11-00140.1>
- Arritt, R. W., Goering, D. C. and Anderson, C. J. (2000), ‘The north american monsoon system in the hadley centre coupled ocean-atmosphere gcm’, *Geophysical Research Letters* **27**(4), 565–568.
- Ashok, K. and Yamagata, T. (2009), ‘The el niño with a difference’, *Nature* **461**(7263), 481–484.
- Ávila, A., Justino, F., Wilson, A., Bromwich, D. and Amorim, M. (2016), ‘Recent precipitation trends, flash floods and landslides in southern brazil’, *Environmental Research Letters* **11**(11), 114029.
- Back, L. and Bretherton, C. (2006), ‘Geographic variability in the export of moist static energy and vertical motion profiles in the tropical pacific’, *Geophysical research letters* **33**(17).
- Baldwin, M., Gray, L., Dunkerton, T., Hamilton, K., Haynes, P., Randel, W., Holton, J., Alexander, M., Hirota, I., Horinouchi, T. et al. (2001), ‘The quasi-biennial oscillation’, *Reviews of Geophysics* **39**(2), 179–229.
- Barlow, M., Nigam, S. and Berbery, E. H. (1998), ‘Evolution of the north american monsoon system’, *Journal of Climate* **11**(9), 2238–2257.
- Bayr, T., Domeisen, D. I. and Wengel, C. (2019), ‘The effect of the equatorial pacific cold sst bias on simulated enso teleconnections to the north pacific and california’, *Climate Dynamics* pp. 1–19.
- Bechtold, P., Semane, N., Lopez, P., Chaboureau, J.-P., Beljaars, A. and Bormann, N. (2014), ‘Representing equilibrium and nonequilibrium convection in large-scale models’, *Journal of Atmospheric Sciences* **71**(2), 734–753.
- Becker, A., Finger, P., Meyer-Christoffer, A., Rudolf, B. and Ziese, M. (2011), ‘Gpcc full data reanalysis version 6.0 at 1.0: monthly land-surface precipitation from rain-gauges built on gts-based and historic data’, *Global Precipitation Climatology Centre (GPCC): Berlin, Germany*.
- Bellucci, A., Gualdi, S. and Navarra, A. (2010), ‘The double-itcz syndrome in coupled general circulation models: The role of large-scale vertical circulation regimes’, *Journal of Climate* **23**(5), 1127–1145.
- Biasutti, M., Voigt, A., Boos, W. R., Braconnot, P., Hargreaves, J. C., Harrison, S. P., Kang, S. M., Mapes, B. E., Scheff, J., Schumacher, C. et al. (2018), ‘Global energetics and local physics as drivers of past, present and future monsoons’, *Nature Geoscience* **11**(6), 392–400.
- Bischoff, T. and Schneider, T. (2016), ‘The Equatorial Energy Balance, ITCZ Position, and Double-ITCZ Bifurcations’, *Journal of Climate* **29**(8), 2997–3013.

- URL:** <https://doi.org/10.1175/JCLI-D-15-0328.1>
- Bjerknes, J. (1969), ‘Atmospheric teleconnections from the equatorial pacific’, *Mon. Wea. Rev* **97**(3), 163–172.
- Blanford, H. F. (1886), ‘Rainfall of india’, *Monsoon Monograph – India Meteorological Department* **3**(658).
- Bombardi, R. J. and Carvalho, L. M. (2011), ‘The South Atlantic dipole and variations in the characteristics of the South American Monsoon in the WCRP-CMIP3 multi-model simulations’, *Climate Dynamics* **36**(11-12), 2091–2102.
- Bombardi, R. J., Moron, V. and Goodnight, J. S. (2020), ‘Detection, variability, and predictability of monsoon onset and withdrawal dates: A review’, *International Journal of Climatology* **40**(2), 641–667.
- URL:** <https://rmets.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/joc.6264>
- Bony, S., Dufresne, J.-L., Le Treut, H., Morcrette, J.-J. and Senior, C. (2004), ‘On dynamic and thermodynamic components of cloud changes’, *Climate Dynamics* **22**(2-3), 71–86.
- Boos, W. R. (2015), ‘A review of recent progress on tibet’s role in the south asian monsoon’, *CLIVAR Exch* **19**(66), 23–27.
- Boos, W. R. and Korty, R. L. (2016), ‘Regional energy budget control of the intertropical convergence zone and application to mid-holocene rainfall’, *Nature Geoscience* **9**(12), 892–897.
- Bordoni, S. and Schneider, T. (2008), ‘Monsoons as eddy-mediated regime transitions of the tropical overturning circulation’, *Nature Geoscience* **1**(8), 515–519.
- Brooks, I. M. (2003), ‘Finding boundary layer top: Application of a wavelet covariance transform to lidar backscatter profiles’, *Journal of Atmospheric and Oceanic Technology* **20**(8), 1092–1105.
- Bussmann, A., Elagib, N. A., Fayyad, M. and Ribbe, L. (2016), ‘Sowing date determinants for sahelian rainfed agriculture in the context of agricultural policies and water management’, *Land Use Policy* **52**, 316 – 328.
- URL:** <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0264837715003981>
- Byrne, M. P. and Zanna, L. (2020), ‘Radiative effects of clouds and water vapor on an axisymmetric monsoon’, *Journal of Climate* **33**(20), 8789–8811.
- C3S (2017), ‘ERA5: Fifth generation of ECMWF atmospheric reanalyses of the global climate.’, *Copernicus Climate Change Service Climate Data Store (CDS)*. date of access: 18 March 2019, <https://climate.copernicus.eu/climate-reanalysis>.
- Cai, W., McPhaden, M., Grimm, A., Rodrigues, R., Taschetto, A., Garreaud, R., Dewitte, B., Poveda, G., Ham, Y.-G., Santoso, A., Ng, B., Anderson, W., Wang, G., Geng, T., Jo, H., Marengo, J., Alves, L., Osman, M., Li, S. and Vera, C. (2020), ‘Climate impacts of the El Niño–Southern Oscillation on South America’, *Nature Reviews Earth & Environment* **1**(4), 215–231.
- Cai, W., Wu, L., Lengaigne, M., Li, T., McGregor, S., Kug, J.-S., Yu, J.-Y., Stuecker, M. F., Santoso, A., Li, X., Ham, Y.-G., Chikamoto, Y., Ng, B., McPhaden, M. J., Du, Y., Dommeneget,

- D., Jia, F., Kajtar, J. B., Keenlyside, N., Lin, X., Luo, J.-J., Martín-Rey, M., Ruprich-Robert, Y., Wang, G., Xie, S.-P., Yang, Y., Kang, S. M., Choi, J.-Y., Gan, B., Kim, G.-I., Kim, C.-E., Kim, S., Kim, J.-H. and Chang, P. (2019), 'Pan-tropical climate interactions', *Science* **363**(6430), eaav4236.
- Camargo, S. J. and Sobel, A. H. (2010), 'Revisiting the influence of the quasi-biennial oscillation on tropical cyclone activity', *Journal of Climate* **23**(21), 5810–5825.
- Caramanica, A., Mesia, L. H., Morales, C. R., Huckleberry, G., Quilter, J. et al. (2020), 'El Niño resilience farming on the north coast of Peru', *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* **117**(39), 24127–24137.
- Carvalho, L. M., Jones, C. and Liebmann, B. (2004), 'The South Atlantic convergence zone: Intensity, form, persistence, and relationships with intraseasonal to interannual activity and extreme rainfall', *Journal of Climate* **17**, 88–108.
- Carvalho, L. M. V., Jones, C., Posadas, A. N. D., Quiroz, R., Bookhagen, B. and Liebmann, B. (2012), 'Precipitation characteristics of the South American Monsoon System derived from multiple datasets', *Journal of Climate* **25**(13), 4600–4620.  
**URL:** <https://doi.org/10.1175/JCLI-D-11-00335.1>
- Cavazos, T., Luna-Niño, R., Cerezo-Mota, R., Fuentes-Franco, R., Méndez, M., Pineda Martinez, L. F. and Valenzuela, E. (2020), 'Climatic trends and regional climate models intercomparison over the cordex-cam (central america, caribbean, and mexico) domain', *International Journal of Climatology* **40**(3), 1396–1420.
- Chan, J. C. (1995), 'Tropical cyclone activity in the western North Pacific in relation to the stratospheric quasi-biennial oscillation', *Monthly Weather Review* **123**(8), 2567–2571.
- Chao, W. C. and Chen, B. (2001), 'The origin of monsoons', *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences* **58**(22), 3497–3507.
- Chen, J., Wilson, C., Tapley, B., Yang, Z. and Niu, G. (2009), '2005 drought event in the Amazon river basin as measured by GRACE and estimated by climate models', *Journal of Geophysical Research: Solid Earth* **114**(B5).
- Chevuturi, A., Turner, A. G., Woolnough, S. J., Martin, G. M. and MacLachlan, C. (2019), 'Indian summer monsoon onset forecast skill in the UK Met Office initialized coupled seasonal forecasting system (GLOSEA5-GC2)', *Climate Dynamics* **52**(11), 6599–6617.
- Chou, C. and Neelin, J. D. (2004), 'Mechanisms of global warming impacts on regional tropical precipitation', *Journal of Climate* **17**(13), 2688–2701.
- Christensen, H., Berner, J., Coleman, D. R. and Palmer, T. (2017), 'Stochastic parameterization and El Niño–Southern Oscillation', *Journal of Climate* **30**(1), 17–38.
- Chuvieco, E., Opazo, S., Sione, W., Valle, H. d., Anaya, J., Bella, C. D., Cruz, I., Manzo, L., López, G., Mari, N., González-Alonso, F., Morelli, F., Setzer, A., Csiszar, I., Kanpandegi, J. A., Bastarrika, A. and Libonati, R. (2008), 'Global burned-land estimation in Latin-America using MODIS composite data', *Ecological Applications* **18**(1), 64–79.

- URL:** <https://esajournals.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1890/06-2148.1>
- Collimore, C. C., Martin, D. W., Hitchman, M. H., Huesmann, A. and Waliser, D. E. (2003), 'On the relationship between the qbo and tropical deep convection', *Journal of climate* **16**(15), 2552–2568.
- Cook, B. I. and Buckley, B. M. (2009), 'Objective determination of monsoon season onset, withdrawal, and length', *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **114**(D23).
- URL:** <https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2009JD012795>
- Cook, B. and Seager, R. (2013), 'The response of the North American Monsoon to increased greenhouse gas forcing', *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **118**(4), 1690–1699.
- Corrales-Suastegui, A., Fuentes-Franco, R. and Pavia, E. G. (2020), 'The mid-summer drought over mexico and central america in the 21st century', *International Journal of Climatology* **40**(3), 1703–1715.
- Curtis, S. and Gamble, D. W. (2008), 'Regional variations of the caribbean mid-summer drought', *Theoretical and Applied Climatology* **94**, 25–34.
- de Sousa, K., Casanoves, F., Sellare, J., Ospina, A., Suchini, J. G., Aguilar, A. and Mercado, L. (2018), 'How climate awareness influences farmers' adaptation decisions in central america?', *Journal of Rural Studies* **64**, 11–19.
- Derbyshire, S., Maidens, A., Milton, S., Stratton, R. and Willett, M. (2011), 'Adaptive detrainment in a convective parametrization', *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* **137**(660), 1856–1871.
- Devereux, S. (2007), 'The impact of droughts and floods on food security and policy options to alleviate negative effects', *Agricultural Economics* **37**(s1), 47–58.
- URL:** <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1111/j.1574-0862.2007.00234.x>
- Dilley, M. (1996), 'Synoptic controls on precipitation in the Valley of Oaxaca, Mexico', *International Journal of Climatology: A Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* **16**(9), 1019–1031.
- Dimdore-Miles, O., Gray, L. and Osprey, S. (2021), 'Origins of multi-decadal variability in sudden stratospheric warmings', *Weather and Climate Dynamics* **2**(1), 205–231.
- Dinku, T., Ruiz, F., Connor, S. J. and Ceccato, P. (2010), 'Validation and intercomparison of satellite rainfall estimates over Colombia', *Journal of Applied Meteorology and Climatology* **49**(5), 1004–1014.
- Domeisen, D. I., Garfinkel, C. I. and Butler, A. H. (2019), 'The teleconnection of el niño southern oscillation to the stratosphere', *Reviews of Geophysics* **57**(1), 5–47.
- Dominguez, F., Kumar, P. and Vivoni, E. R. (2008), 'Precipitation recycling variability and ecoclimatological stability—a study using narr data. part ii: North american monsoon region', *Journal of Climate* **21**(20), 5187–5203.
- Dommeneget, D., Bayr, T. and Frauen, C. (2013), 'Analysis of the non-linearity in the pattern and time evolution of el niño southern oscillation', *Climate Dynamics* **40**(11-12), 2825–2847.

- Donohoe, A., Marshall, J., Ferreira, D. and Mcgee, D. (2013), 'The Relationship between ITCZ Location and Cross-Equatorial Atmospheric Heat Transport: From the Seasonal Cycle to the Last Glacial Maximum', *Journal of Climate* **26**(11), 3597–3618.
- URL:** <https://doi.org/10.1175/JCLI-D-12-00467.1>
- Douglas, M. W., Maddox, R. A., Howard, K. and Reyes, S. (1993), 'The mexican monsoon', *Journal of Climate* **6**(8), 1665–1677.
- Durán-Quesada, A. M., Gimeno, L. and Amador, J. (2017), 'Role of moisture transport for central american precipitation', *Earth System Dynamics* **8**(1), 147–161.
- URL:** <https://www.earth-syst-dynam.net/8/147/2017/>
- Ebdon, R. (1960), 'Notes on the wind flow at 50 mb in tropical and sub-tropical regions in january 1957 and january 1958', *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* **86**(370), 540–542.
- Emanuel, K. (2007), 'Quasi-equilibrium dynamics of the tropical atmosphere', *The Global Circulation of the Atmosphere* **186**, 218.
- Emanuel, K. A. et al. (1994), *Atmospheric convection*, Oxford University Press on Demand.
- Eyring, V., Bony, S., Meehl, G. A., Senior, C. A., Stevens, B., Stouffer, R. J. and Taylor, K. E. (2016), 'Overview of the Coupled Model Intercomparison Project Phase 6 (CMIP6) experimental design and organization', *Geoscientific Model Development (Online)* **9**.
- Fasullo, J. and Webster, P. (2003), 'A hydrological definition of indian monsoon onset and withdrawal', *Journal of Climate* **16**(19), 3200–3211.
- Faulk, S., Mitchell, J. and Bordoni, S. (2017), 'Effects of rotation rate and seasonal forcing on the itcz extent in planetary atmospheres', *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences* **74**(3), 665–678.
- Fereday, D., Chadwick, R., Knight, J. and Scaife, A. (2020), 'Tropical rainfall linked to stronger future enso-nao teleconnection in cmip5 models', *Geophysical Research Letters* **47**(22), e2020GL088664.
- Fisher, R. A. (1992), Statistical methods for research workers, in 'Breakthroughs in statistics', Springer, pp. 66–70.
- Forbes, R. M. and Ahlgrimm, M. (2014), 'On the representation of high-latitude boundary layer mixed-phase cloud in the ecmwf global model', *Monthly Weather Review* **142**(9), 3425–3445.
- Franchito, S. H., Rao, V. B., Vasques, A. C., Santo, C. M. and Conforte, J. C. (2009), 'Validation of TRMM precipitation radar monthly rainfall estimates over Brazil', *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **114**(D2).
- Fritsch, J. and Chappell, C. (1980), 'Numerical prediction of convectively driven mesoscale pressure systems. part i: Convective parameterization', *Journal of Atmospheric Sciences* **37**(8), 1722–1733.
- Fuentes-Franco, R., Coppola, E., Giorgi, F., Pavia, E. G., Diro, G. T. and Graef, F. (2015), 'Inter-annual variability of precipitation over southern mexico and central america and its relationship to sea surface temperature from a set of future projections from cmip5 gcms and regcm4 cordex simulations', *Climate Dynamics* **45**(1-2), 425–440.

- Funk, C., Peterson, P., Landsfeld, M., Pedreros, D., Verdin, J., Shukla, S., Husak, G., Rowland, J., Harrison, L., Hoell, A. and Michaelsen, J. (2015), ‘The climate hazards infrared precipitation with stations—a new environmental record for monitoring extremes’, *Scientific data* **2**, 150066.
- Gadgil, S. (2018), ‘The monsoon system: Land–sea breeze or the itcz?’, *Journal of Earth System Science* **127**(1), 1.
- Gadgil, S. and Rupa Kumar, K. (2006), *The Asian monsoon — agriculture and economy*, Springer Berlin Heidelberg, Berlin, Heidelberg, pp. 651–683.
- Gamble, D. W., Parnell, D. B. and Curtis, S. (2008), ‘Spatial variability of the caribbean mid-summer drought and relation to north atlantic high circulation’, *International Journal of Climatology* **28**(3), 343–350.
- Gan, M., Kousky, V. and Ropelewski, C. (2004), ‘The South America monsoon circulation and its relationship to rainfall over west-central Brazil’, *Journal of climate* **17**, 47–66.
- García-Franco, J. L., Gray, L. J. and Osprey, S. (2020), ‘The american monsoon system in hadgem3 and ukesm1’, *Weather and Climate Dynamics* **1**(2), 349–371.
- URL:** <https://wcd.copernicus.org/articles/1/349/2020/>
- García-Martínez, I. M. and Bollasina, M. A. (2020), ‘Sub-monthly evolution of the caribbean low-level jet and its relationship with regional precipitation and atmospheric circulation’, *Climate Dynamics* pp. 1–18.
- Garcia, S. R. and Kayano, M. T. (2013), ‘Some considerations on onset dates of the rainy season in western-central brazil with antisymmetric outgoing longwave radiation relative to the equator’, *International Journal of Climatology* **33**(1), 188–198.
- URL:** <https://rmets.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/joc.3417>
- Garfinkel, C. I. and Hartmann, D. (2010), ‘Influence of the quasi-biennial oscillation on the north pacific and el niño teleconnections’, *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **115**(D20).
- Garfinkel, C. I. and Hartmann, D. L. (2011), ‘The influence of the quasi-biennial oscillation on the troposphere in winter in a hierarchy of models. part ii: Perpetual winter waccm runs’, *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences* **68**(9), 2026–2041.
- Geen, R., Bordoni, S., Battisti, D. S. and Hui, K. (2020), ‘Monsoons, itczs and the concept of the global monsoon’, *Reviews of Geophysics* p. e2020RG000700.
- Geen, R., Lambert, F. H. and Vallis, G. K. (2019), ‘Processes and timescales in onset and withdrawal of “aquaplanet monsoons”’, *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences* **76**(8), 2357–2373.
- Geil, K. L., Serra, Y. L. and Zeng, X. (2013), ‘Assessment of cmip5 model simulations of the north american monsoon system’, *Journal of Climate* **26**(22), 8787–8801.
- Giannini, A., Kushnir, Y. and Cane, M. A. (2000), ‘Interannual variability of Caribbean rainfall, ENSO, and the Atlantic Ocean’, *Journal of Climate* **13**, 297–311.
- Giannini, A., Saravanan, R. and Chang, P. (2004), ‘The preconditioning role of tropical Atlantic variability in the development of the ENSO teleconnection: Implications for the prediction of Nordeste rainfall’, *Climate Dynamics* **22**, 839–855.

- Gill, A. E. (1980), 'Some simple solutions for heat-induced tropical circulation', *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* **106**(449), 447–462.
- Giorgetta, M. A., Bengtsson, L. and Arpe, K. (1999), 'An investigation of qbo signals in the east asian and indian monsoon in gcm experiments', *Climate dynamics* **15**(6), 435–450.
- Good, P., Chadwick, R., Holloway, C. E., Kennedy, J., Lowe, J. A., Roehrig, R. and Rushley, S. S. (2021), 'High sensitivity of tropical precipitation to local sea surface temperature', *Nature* **589**(7842), 408–414.
- Gray, L. J., Anstey, J. A., Kawatani, Y., Lu, H., Osprey, S. and Schenzinger, V. (2018), 'Surface impacts of the quasi biennial oscillation', *Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics* **18**(11), 8227–8247.  
**URL:** <https://www.atmos-chem-phys.net/18/8227/2018/>
- Gray, W. M. (1984), 'Atlantic seasonal hurricane frequency. part i: El niño and 30 mb quasi-biennial oscillation influences', *Monthly Weather Review* **112**(9), 1649–1668.
- Gray, W. M., Sheaffer, J. D. and Knaff, J. A. (1992), 'Influence of the stratospheric qbo on enso variability', *Journal of the Meteorological Society of Japan. Ser. II* **70**(5), 975–995.
- Grimm, A. M. (2011), 'Interannual climate variability in south america: impacts on seasonal precipitation, extreme events, and possible effects of climate change', *Stochastic Environmental Research and Risk Assessment* **25**(4), 537–554.
- Guo, Z., Zhou, T., Wang, M. and Qian, Y. (2015), 'Impact of cloud radiative heating on east asian summer monsoon circulation', *Environmental Research Letters* **10**(7), 074014.
- Ha, K.-J., Moon, S., Timmermann, A. and Kim, D. (2020), 'Future changes of summer monsoon characteristics and evaporative demand over asia in cmip6 simulations', *Geophysical Research Letters* **47**(8), e2020GL087492.
- Halley, E. (1687), 'An historical account of the trade winds, and monsoons, observable in the seas between and near the tropicks, with an attempt to assign the physical cause of the said winds', *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* **16**(183), 153–168.  
**URL:** <https://royalsocietypublishing.org/doi/abs/10.1098/rstl.1686.0026>
- Hansen, F., Matthes, K. and Wahl, S. (2016), 'Tropospheric qbo–enso interactions and differences between the atlantic and pacific', *Journal of Climate* **29**(4), 1353–1368.
- Harris, I., Jones, P. D., Osborn, T. J. and Lister, D. H. (2014), 'Updated high-resolution grids of monthly climatic observations—the cru ts3. 10 dataset', *International journal of climatology* **34**(3), 623–642.
- Hartmann, D. L. (2015), *Global physical climatology*, Vol. 103, Newnes.
- Harvey, C. A., Saborio-Rodríguez, M., Martínez-Rodríguez, M. R., Viguera, B., Chain-Guadarrama, A., Vignola, R. and Alpizar, F. (2018), 'Climate change impacts and adaptation among smallholder farmers in central america', *Agriculture & Food Security* **7**(1), 57.
- Hastenrath, S. L. (1967), 'Rainfall distribution and regime in central america', *Archiv für Meteorologie, Geophysik und Bioklimatologie, Serie B* **15**(3), 201–241.
- Hellin, J., Cox, R. and López-Ridaura, S. (2017), 'Maize Diversity, Market Access, and Poverty

- Reduction in the Western Highlands of Guatemala', *Mountain Research and Development* **37**(2), 188 – 197.
- Hénin, R., Liberato, M. L., Ramos, A. M. and Gouveia, C. M. (2018), 'Assessing the use of satellite-based estimates and high-resolution precipitation datasets for the study of extreme precipitation events over the iberian peninsula', *Water* **10**(11), 1688.
- Herrera, E., Magaña, V. and Caetano, E. (2015), 'Air–sea interactions and dynamical processes associated with the midsummer drought', *International Journal of Climatology* **35**(7), 1569–1578.
- Hersbach, H., Bell, B., Berrisford, P., Hirahara, S., Horányi, A., Muñoz-Sabater, J., Nicolas, J., Peubey, C., Radu, R., Schepers, D., Simmons, A., Soci, C., Abdalla, S., Abellán, X., Balsamo, G., Bechtold, P., Biavati, G., Bidlot, J., Bonavita, M., De Chiara, G., Dahlgren, P., Dee, D., Diamantakis, M., Dragani, R., Flemming, J., Forbes, R., Fuentes, M., Geer, A., Haimberger, L., Healy, S., Hogan, R. J., Hólm, E., Janisková, M., Keeley, S., Laloyaux, P., Lopez, P., Lupu, C., Radnoti, G., de Rosnay, P., Rozum, I., Vamborg, F., Villaume, S. and Thépaut, J.-N. (2020), 'The era5 global reanalysis', *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* **1**(n/a).
- URL:** <https://rmets.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/qj.3803>
- Higgins, R., Yao, Y. and Wang, X. (1997), 'Influence of the North American monsoon system on the US summer precipitation regime', *Journal of Climate* **10**(10), 2600–2622.
- Hill, S. A. (2019), 'Theories for past and future monsoon rainfall changes', *Current Climate Change Reports* **5**(3), 160–171.
- Holton, J. R. and Tan, H.-C. (1980), 'The influence of the equatorial quasi-biennial oscillation on the global circulation at 50 mb', *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences* **37**(10), 2200–2208.
- Hoskins, B., Yang, G.-Y. and Fonseca, R. (2020), 'The detailed dynamics of the june–august hadley cell', *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* **146**(727), 557–575.
- Htway, O. and Matsumoto, J. (2011), 'Climatological onset dates of summer monsoon over myanmar', *International Journal of Climatology* **31**(3), 382–393.
- Huffman, G. J., Adler, R. F., Bolvin, D. T. and Nelkin, E. J. (2010), The trmm multi-satellite precipitation analysis (tmpa), in 'Satellite rainfall applications for surface hydrology', Springer, pp. 3–22.
- Huffman, G. J., Bolvin, D. T., Nelkin, E. J., Wolff, D. B., Adler, R. F., Gu, G., Hong, Y., Bowman, K. P. and Stocker, E. F. (2007), 'The TRMM Multisatellite Precipitation Analysis (TMPA): Quasi-Global, Multiyear, Combined-Sensor Precipitation Estimates at Fine Scales', *Journal of Hydrometeorology* **8**(1), 38–55.
- URL:** <https://doi.org/10.1175/JHM560.1>
- Inoue, K. and Back, L. E. (2015), 'Gross moist stability assessment during toga coare: Various interpretations of gross moist stability', *Journal of Atmospheric Sciences* **72**(11), 4148–4166.
- Inoue, K., Biasutti, M. and Fridlind, A. M. (2021), 'Evidence that horizontal moisture advection regulates the ubiquitous amplification of rainfall variability over tropical oceans', *Journal of the*

- Atmospheric Sciences* **78**(2), 529–547.
- Jain, M., Naeem, S., Orlove, B., Modi, V. and DeFries, R. S. (2015), ‘Understanding the causes and consequences of differential decision-making in adaptation research: Adapting to a delayed monsoon onset in gujarat, india’, *Global Environmental Change* **31**, 98 – 109.  
**URL:** <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0959378014002179>
- Jakob, C. (2014), ‘Going back to basics’, *Nature Climate Change* **4**(12), 1042.
- Jiménez-Esteve, B. and Domeisen, D. I. V. (2020), ‘Nonlinearity in the tropospheric pathway of ENSO to the North Atlantic’, *Weather and Climate Dynamics* **1**(1), 225–245.  
**URL:** <http://www.weather-clim-dynam.net/1/225/2020/>
- Jobbová, E., Helmke, C. and Bevan, A. (2018), ‘Ritual responses to drought: An examination of ritual expressions in classic maya written sources’, *Human Ecology* **46**(5), 759–781.
- Johns, T. C., Durman, C. F., Banks, H. T., Roberts, M. J., McLaren, A. J., Ridley, J. K., Senior, C. A., Williams, K., Jones, A., Rickard, G. et al. (2006), ‘The new hadley centre climate model (hadgem1): Evaluation of coupled simulations’, *Journal of climate* **19**(7), 1327–1353.
- Jones, C. and Carvalho, L. M. (2002), ‘Active and break phases in the South American monsoon system’, *Journal of Climate* **15**, 905–914.
- Jones, C. and Carvalho, L. M. (2013), ‘Climate change in the South American monsoon system: present climate and CMIP5 projections’, *Journal of Climate* **26**(17), 6660–6678.
- Jones, C. and Carvalho, L. M. (2018), ‘The influence of the Atlantic multidecadal oscillation on the eastern Andes low-level jet and precipitation in South America’, *npj Climate and Atmospheric Science* **1**(1), 1–7.
- Jorgetti, T., da Silva Dias, P. L. and de Freitas, E. D. (2014), ‘The relationship between south atlantic sst and sacz intensity and positioning’, *Climate dynamics* **42**(11-12), 3077–3086.
- Karnauskas, K. B., Seager, R., Giannini, A. and Busalacchi, A. J. (2013), ‘A simple mechanism for the climatological midsummer drought along the Pacific coast of Central America’, *Atmósfera* **26**, 261–281.
- Kennedy, J., Rayner, N., Smith, R., Parker, D. and Saunby, M. (2011), ‘Reassessing biases and other uncertainties in sea surface temperature observations measured in situ since 1850: 2. biases and homogenization’, *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **116**(D14).
- Kitoh, A. and Uchiyama, T. (2006), ‘Changes in onset and withdrawal of the east asian summer rainy season by multi-model global warming experiments’, *Journal of the Meteorological Society of Japan. Ser. II* **84**(2), 247–258.
- Kuhlbrodt, T., Jones, C. G., Sellar, A., Storkey, D., Blockley, E., Stringer, M., Hill, R., Graham, T., Ridley, J., Blaker, A., Calvert, D., Copsey, D., Ellis, R., Hewitt, H., Hyder, P., Ineson, S., Mulcahy, J., Siahaan, A. and Walton, J. (2018), ‘The low-resolution version of HadGEM3 GC3. 1: Development and evaluation for global climate’, *Journal of advances in modeling earth systems* **10**(11), 2865–2888.
- Lawrence, P. J., Feddema, J. J., Bonan, G. B., Meehl, G. A., O'Neill, B. C., Oleson, K. W., Levis,

- S., Lawrence, D. M., Kluzek, E., Lindsay, K. and Thornton, P. E. (2012), ‘Simulating the Biogeochemical and Biogeophysical Impacts of Transient Land Cover Change and Wood Harvest in the Community Climate System Model (CCSM4) from 1850 to 2100’, *Journal of Climate* **25**(9), 3071–3095.
- Lee, J. C. K. and Klingaman, N. P. (2018), ‘The effect of the quasi-biennial oscillation on the madden–julian oscillation in the met office unified model global ocean mixed layer configuration’, *Atmospheric Science Letters* **19**(5), e816.
- URL:** <https://rmets.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/asl.816>
- Li, D., Shine, K. and Gray, L. (1995), ‘The role of ozone-induced diabatic heating anomalies in the quasi-biennial oscillation’, *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* **121**(524), 937–943.
- Li, G. and Xie, S.-P. (2014), ‘Tropical biases in cmip5 multimodel ensemble: The excessive equatorial pacific cold tongue and double itcz problems’, *Journal of Climate* **27**(4), 1765–1780.
- Li, T. and Hsu, P.-c. (2018), *Fundamentals of tropical climate dynamics*, Springer.
- Li, W., Fu, R. and Dickinson, R. E. (2006), ‘Rainfall and its seasonality over the Amazon in the 21st century as assessed by the coupled models for the IPCC AR4’, *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **111**(D2).
- Liebmann, B. and Marengo, J. (2001), ‘Interannual variability of the rainy season and rainfall in the brazilian amazon basin’, *Journal of Climate* **14**(22), 4308–4318.
- Liess, S. and Geller, M. A. (2012), ‘On the relationship between qbo and distribution of tropical deep convection’, *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **117**(D3).
- Lorenz, E. N. (1967), *The nature and theory of the general circulation of the atmosphere*, Vol. 218, World Meteorological Organization Geneva.
- Lu, H., Hitchman, M. H., Gray, L. J., Anstey, J. A. and Osprey, S. M. (2020), ‘On the role of rossby wave breaking in the quasi-biennial modulation of the stratospheric polar vortex during boreal winter’, *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* .
- Lucas-Picher, P., Christensen, J. H., Saeed, F., Kumar, P., Asharaf, S., Ahrens, B., Wiltshire, A. J., Jacob, D. and Hagemann, S. (2011), ‘Can regional climate models represent the indian monsoon?’, *Journal of Hydrometeorology* **12**(5), 849–868.
- URL:** <https://doi.org/10.1175/2011JHM1327.1>
- Ma, D., Sobel, A. H., Kuang, Z., Singh, M. S. and Nie, J. (2019), ‘A moist entropy budget view of the south asian summer monsoon onset’, *Geophysical Research Letters* **46**(8), 4476–4484.
- Machado, L., Laurent, H., Dessay, N. and Miranda, I. (2004), ‘Seasonal and diurnal variability of convection over the amazonia: A comparison of different vegetation types and large scale forcing’, *Theoretical and Applied Climatology* **78**(1-3), 61–77.
- Magaña, V., Amador, J. A. and Medina, S. (1999), ‘The midsummer drought over Mexico and Central America’, *Journal of Climate* **12**, 1577–1588.
- Magaña, V. and Caetano, E. (2005), ‘Temporal evolution of summer convective activity over the

- Americas warm pools', *Geophysical Research Letters* **32**(2).
- Maldonado, T., Alfaro, E., Rutgersson, A. and Amador, J. A. (2017), 'The early rainy season in central america: the role of the tropical north atlantic ssts', *International Journal of Climatology* **37**(9), 3731–3742.
- Malhi, Y., Aragão, L. E. O. C., Galbraith, D., Huntingford, C., Fisher, R., Zelazowski, P., Sitch, S., McSweeney, C. and Meir, P. (2009), 'Exploring the likelihood and mechanism of a climate-change-induced dieback of the Amazon rainforest', *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* **106**(49), 20610–20615.
- URL:** <https://www.pnas.org/content/106/49/20610>
- Mapes, B. E., Liu, P. and Buenning, N. (2005), 'Indian monsoon onset and the americas midsummer drought: Out-of-equilibrium responses to smooth seasonal forcing', *Journal of Climate* **18**(7), 1109–1115.
- Marengo, J. A., Liebmann, B., Grimm, A. M., Misra, V., Silva Dias, P. L., Cavalcanti, I. F. A., Carvalho, L. M. V., Berbery, E. H., Ambrizzi, T., Vera, C. S., Saulo, A. C., Nogues-Paegle, J., Zipser, E., Seth, A. and Alves, L. M. (2012), 'Recent developments on the South American monsoon system', *International Journal of Climatology* **32**, 1–21.
- Marengo, J. A., Liebmann, B., Kousky, V. E., Filizola, N. P. and Wainer, I. C. (2001), 'Onset and end of the rainy season in the brazilian amazon basin', *Journal of Climate* **14**(5), 833–852.
- Marotzke, J., Jakob, C., Bony, S., Dirmeyer, P., O'Gorman, P., Hawkins, E., Perkins-Kirkpatrick, S., Quéré, C., Nowicki, S., Paulavets, K., Seneviratne, S., Stevens, B. and Tuma, M. (2017), 'Climate research must sharpen its view', *Nature climate change* **7**(2), 89–91.
- Martin, Z., Vitart, F., Wang, S. and Sobel, A. (2020), 'The impact of the stratosphere on the mjo in a forecast model', *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **125**(4), e2019JD032106. e2019JD032106 2019JD032106.
- URL:** <https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2019JD032106>
- Martin, Z., Wang, S., Nie, J. and Sobel, A. (2019), 'The Impact of the QBO on MJO Convection in Cloud-Resolving Simulations', *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences* **76**(3), 669–688.
- URL:** <https://doi.org/10.1175/JAS-D-18-0179.1>
- Martinez, C., Goddard, L., Kushnir, Y. and Ting, M. (2019), 'Seasonal climatology and dynamical mechanisms of rainfall in the caribbean', *Climate dynamics* **53**(1-2), 825–846.
- Menary, M. B., Kuhlbrodt, T., Ridley, J., Andrews, M. B., Dimdore-Miles, O. B., Deshayes, J., Eade, R., Gray, L., Ineson, S., Mignot, J., Roberts, C. D., Robson, J., Wood, R. A. and Xavier, P. (2018), 'Preindustrial control simulations with hadgem3-gc3. 1 for cmip6', *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth Systems* **10**(12), 3049–3075.
- Mestas-Nuñez, A. M., Enfield, D. B. and Zhang, C. (2007), 'Water vapor fluxes over the intra-americas sea: Seasonal and interannual variability and associations with rainfall', *Journal of Climate* **20**(9), 1910–1922.
- Mission, T. R. M. (2011), 'Trmm (tmpa/3b43) rainfall estimate l3 1 month 0.25 degree× 0.25

- degree v7', Version, Greenbelt, MD, Goddard Earth Sciences Data and Information Services Center (GES DISC) . Accessed: [12-Jan-2019].
- URL:** [https://disc.gsfc.nasa.gov/datasets/TRMM\\_3B42\\_7/summary](https://disc.gsfc.nasa.gov/datasets/TRMM_3B42_7/summary)
- Moron, V. and Robertson, A. W. (2014), 'Interannual variability of indian summer monsoon rainfall onset date at local scale', *International journal of climatology* **34**(4), 1050–1061.
- Mosíño, A. and García, E. (1966), Evaluación de la sequía intraestival en la república mexicana, in 'Proc. Conf. Reg. Latinoamericana Unión Geogr. Int', Vol. 3, pp. 500–516.
- Mulcahy, J. P., Jones, C., Sellar, A., Johnson, B., Boutle, I. A., Jones, A., Andrews, T., Rumbold, S. T., Molland, J., Bellouin, N., Johnson, C. E., Williams, K. D., Grosvenor, D. P. and McCoy, D. T. (2018), 'Improved aerosol processes and effective radiative forcing in HadGEM3 and UKESM1', *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth Systems* **10**(11), 2786–2805.
- Muñoz, E., Busalacchi, A. J., Nigam, S. and Ruiz-Barradas, A. (2008), 'Winter and summer structure of the caribbean low-level jet', *Journal of Climate* **21**(6), 1260–1276.
- Neelin, J. D. (2007), 'Moist dynamics of tropical convection zones in monsoons, teleconnections, and global warming'.
- Neelin, J. D., Battisti, D. S., Hirst, A. C., Jin, F.-F., Wakata, Y., Yamagata, T. and Zebiak, S. E. (1998), 'ENSO theory', *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans* **103**(C7), 14261–14290.
- Neelin, J. D. and Held, I. M. (1987), 'Modeling tropical convergence based on the moist static energy budget', *Monthly Weather Review* **115**(1), 3–12.
- Neelin, J. D. and Su, H. (2005), 'Moist teleconnection mechanisms for the tropical south american and atlantic sector', *Journal of Climate* **18**(18), 3928–3950.
- Nie, J., Boos, W. R. and Kuang, Z. (2010), 'Observational evaluation of a convective quasi-equilibrium view of monsoons', *Journal of Climate* **23**(16), 4416–4428.
- Nie, J. and Sobel, A. H. (2015), 'Responses of tropical deep convection to the qbo: Cloud-resolving simulations', *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences* **72**(9), 3625–3638.
- Nieto-Ferreira, R. and Rickenbach, T. M. (2011), 'Regionality of monsoon onset in South America: a three-stage conceptual model', *International Journal of Climatology* **31**(9), 1309–1321.
- O'Neill, B. C., Tebaldi, C., Vuuren, D. P. v., Eyring, V., Friedlingstein, P., Hurt, G., Knutti, R., Kriegler, E., Lamarque, J.-F., Lowe, J. et al. (2016), 'The scenario model intercomparison project (scenariomip) for cmip6', *Geoscientific Model Development* **9**(9), 3461–3482.
- Ordoñez, P., Nieto, R., Gimeno, L., Ribera, P., Gallego, D., Ochoa-Moya, C. A. and Quintanar, A. I. (2019), 'Climatological moisture sources for the western north american monsoon through a lagrangian approach: their influence on precipitation intensity', *Earth System Dynamics* **10**(1), 59–72.
- Oueslati, B. and Bellon, G. (2013), 'Convective entrainment and large-scale organization of tropical precipitation: Sensitivity of the cnrm-cm5 hierarchy of models', *Journal of climate* **26**(9), 2931–2946.
- Palmer, T. (2019), 'Stochastic weather and climate models', *Nature Reviews Physics* **1**(7), 463–471.

- Palmer, T. and Stevens, B. (2019), ‘The scientific challenge of understanding and estimating climate change’, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* **116**(49), 24390–24395.
- Pascale, S., Carvalho, L. M., Adams, D. K., Castro, C. L. and Cavalcanti, I. F. (2019), ‘Current and Future Variations of the Monsoons of the Americas in a Warming Climate’, *Current Climate Change Reports* pp. 1–20.
- Perdigón-Morales, J., Romero-Centeno, R., Barrett, B. S. and Ordoñez, P. (2019), ‘Intraseasonal variability of summer precipitation in mexico: Mjo influence on the midsummer drought’, *Journal of Climate* **32**(8).
- Perdigón-Morales, J., Romero-Centeno, R., Ordóñez, P. and Barrett, B. S. (2018), ‘The midsummer drought in mexico: perspectives on duration and intensity from the chirps precipitation database’, *International Journal of Climatology* **38**, 2174–2186.
- Plumb, R. A. and Bell, R. C. (1982), ‘A model of the quasi-biennial oscillation on an equatorial beta-plane’, *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* **108**(456), 335–352.
- Rauscher, S. A., Giorgi, F., Diffenbaugh, N. S. and Seth, A. (2008), ‘Extension and intensification of the Meso-American mid-summer drought in the twenty-first century’, *Climate Dynamics* **31**, 551–571.
- Raymond, D. J., Sessions, S. L., Sobel, A. H. and Fuchs, Ž. (2009), ‘The mechanics of gross moist stability’, *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth Systems* **1**(3).
- Reed, R. (1964), ‘A tentative model of the 26-month oscillation in tropical latitudes’, *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* **90**(386), 441–466.
- Ribera, P., Peña-Ortiz, C., Garcia-Herrera, R., Gallego, D., Gimeno, L. and Hernández, E. (2004), ‘Detection of the secondary meridional circulation associated with the quasi-biennial oscillation’, *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **109**(D18).
- Ridley, J., Menary, M., Kuhlbrodt, T., Andrews, M. and Andrews, T. (2018), ‘Mohc hadgem3-gc31-ll model output prepared for cmip6 cmip piconcontrol’.  
**URL:** <https://doi.org/10.22033/ESGF/CMIP6.6294>
- Ridley, J., Menary, M., Kuhlbrodt, T., Andrews, M. and Andrews, T. (2019a), ‘Mohc hadgem3-gc31-ll model output prepared for cmip6 cmip amip’.  
**URL:** <https://doi.org/10.22033/ESGF/CMIP6.5853>
- Ridley, J., Menary, M., Kuhlbrodt, T., Andrews, M. and Andrews, T. (2019b), ‘Mohc hadgem3-gc31-ll model output prepared for cmip6 cmip historical’.  
**URL:** <https://doi.org/10.22033/ESGF/CMIP6.6109>
- Ridley, J., Menary, M., Kuhlbrodt, T., Andrews, M. and Andrews, T. (2019c), ‘Mohc hadgem3-gc31-mm model output prepared for cmip6 cmip piconcontrol’.  
**URL:** <https://doi.org/10.22033/ESGF/CMIP6.6297>
- Rodrigues, R. R., Haarsma, R. J., Campos, E. J. and Ambrizzi, T. (2011), ‘The impacts of inter-el niño variability on the tropical atlantic and northeast brazil climate’, *Journal of Climate* **24**(13), 3402–3422.

- Ropelewski, C. F. and Halpert, M. S. (1986), ‘North american precipitation and temperature patterns associated with the el niño/southern oscillation (enso)’, *Monthly Weather Review* **114**(12), 2352–2362.
- Ropelewski, C. F. and Halpert, M. S. (1987), ‘Global and regional scale precipitation patterns associated with the el niño/southern oscillation’, *Monthly weather review* **115**(8), 1606–1626.
- Ryu, J.-H. and Hayhoe, K. (2014), ‘Understanding the sources of Caribbean precipitation biases in CMIP3 and CMIP5 simulations’, *Climate dynamics* **42**(11-12), 3233–3252.
- Sahana, A. S., Ghosh, S., Ganguly, A. and Murtugudde, R. (2015), ‘Shift in indian summer monsoon onset during 1976/1977’, *Environmental Research Letters* **10**(5), 054006.
- Schneider, T., Bischoff, T. and Haug, G. H. (2014), ‘Migrations and dynamics of the Intertropical Convergence Zone’, *Nature* **513**(7516), 45.
- Sellar, A. A., Jones, C. G., Mulcahy, J., Tang, Y., Yool, A., Wiltshire, A., O’Connor, F. M., Stringer, M., Hill, R., Palmieri, J., Woodward, S., de Mora, L., Kuhlbrodt, T., Rumbold, S., Kelley, D. I., Ellis, R., Johnson, C. E., Walton, J., Abraham, N. L., Andrews, M. B., Andrews, T., Archibald, A. T., Berthou, S., Burke, E., Blockley, E., Carslaw, K., Dalvi, M., Edwards, J., Folberth, G. A., Gedney, N., Griffiths, P. T., Harper, A. B., Hendry, M. A., Hewitt, A. J., Johnson, B., Jones, A., Jones, C. D., Keeble, J., Liddicoat, S., Morgenstern, O., Parker, R. J., Predoi, V., Robertson, E., Siahaan, A., Smith, R. S., Swaminathan, R., Woodhouse, M. T., Zeng, G. and Zerroukat, M. (2019), ‘UKESM1: Description and evaluation of the UK Earth System Model’, *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth Systems* **0**(ja).
- URL:** <https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2019MS001739>
- Shepherd, T. G. (2014), ‘Atmospheric circulation as a source of uncertainty in climate change projections’, *Nature Geoscience* **7**(10), 703–708.
- Small, R. J. O., De Szoeke, S. P. and Xie, S.-P. (2007), ‘The central american midsummer drought: Regional aspects and large-scale forcing’, *Journal of Climate* **20**(19), 4853–4873.
- Smyth, J. E., Hill, S. A. and Ming, Y. (2018), ‘Simulated responses of the west african monsoon and zonal-mean tropical precipitation to early holocene orbital forcing’, *Geophysical Research Letters* **45**(21), 12–049.
- Smyth, J. E. and Ming, Y. (2020), ‘Characterizing drying in the south american monsoon onset season with the moist static energy budget’, *Journal of Climate* **33**(22), 9735–9748.
- Son, S.-W., Lim, Y., Yoo, C., Hendon, H. H. and Kim, J. (2017), ‘Stratospheric control of the Madden–Julian oscillation’, *Journal of Climate* **30**(6), 1909–1922.
- Stensrud, D. J., Gall, R. L. and Nordquist, M. K. (1997), ‘Surges over the gulf of california during the mexican monsoon’, *Monthly Weather Review* **125**(4), 417–437.
- Storkey, D., Blaker, A. T., Mathiot, P., Megann, A., Aksenov, Y., Blockley, E. W., Calvert, D., Graham, T., Hewitt, H. T., Hyder, P. et al. (2018), ‘UK Global Ocean GO6 and GO7: A traceable hierarchy of model resolutions’, *Geoscientific Model Development* **11**(8), 3187–3213.
- Straffon, A., Zavala-Hidalgo, J. and Estrada, F. (2019), ‘Preconditioning of the precipitation

- interannual variability in southern mexico and central america by oceanic and atmospheric anomalies', *International Journal of Climatology* .
- Sulca, J., Takahashi, K., Espinoza, J.-C., Vuille, M. and Lavado-Casimiro, W. (2018), 'Impacts of different ENSO flavors and tropical Pacific convection variability (ITCZ, SPCZ) on austral summer rainfall in South America, with a focus on Peru', *International Journal of Climatology* **38**(1), 420–435.
- Sultan, B., Baron, C., Dingkuhn, M., Sarr, B. and Janicot, S. (2005), 'Agricultural impacts of large-scale variability of the west african monsoon', *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology* **128**(1), 93 – 110.
- URL:** <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0168192304001923>
- Takahashi, K. (2004), 'The atmospheric circulation associated with extreme rainfall events in piura, peru, during the 1997–1998 and 2002 el niño events'.
- Tang, Y., Rumbold, S., Ellis, R., Kelley, D., Mulcahy, J., Sellar, A., Walton, J. and Jones, C. (2019a), 'Mohc ukcsm1.0-ll model output prepared for cmip6 cmip historical'.
- URL:** <https://doi.org/10.22033/ESGF/CMIP6.6113>
- Tang, Y., Rumbold, S., Ellis, R., Kelley, D., Mulcahy, J., Sellar, A., Walton, J. and Jones, C. (2019b), 'Mohc ukcsm1.0-ll model output prepared for cmip6 cmip picontrol'.
- URL:** <https://doi.org/10.22033/ESGF/CMIP6.6298>
- Tedeschi, R. G., Grimm, A. M. and Cavalcanti, I. F. (2015), 'Influence of central and east enso on extreme events of precipitation in south america during austral spring and summer', *International Journal of Climatology* **35**(8), 2045–2064.
- Tegtmeier, S., Anstey, J., Davis, S., Dragani, R., Harada, Y., Ivanciu, I., Pilch Kedzierski, R., Krüger, K., Legras, B., Long, C., Wang, J. S., Wargan, K. and Wright, J. S. (2020a), 'Temperature and tropopause characteristics from reanalyses data in the tropical tropopause layer', *Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics* **20**(2), 753–770.
- URL:** <https://www.atmos-chem-phys.net/20/753/2020/>
- Tegtmeier, S., Anstey, J., Davis, S., Ivanciu, I., Jia, Y., McPhee, D. and Pilch Kedzierski, R. (2020b), 'Zonal asymmetry of the qbo temperature signal in the tropical tropopause region', *Geophysical Research Letters* **47**(24), e2020GL089533. e2020GL089533 2020GL089533.
- URL:** <https://agupubs.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1029/2020GL089533>
- Thompson, D. W., Baldwin, M. P. and Solomon, S. (2005), 'Stratosphere–troposphere coupling in the southern hemisphere', *Journal of Atmospheric Sciences* **62**(3), 708–715.
- Trejo, F. J. P., Barbosa, H. A., Peñaloza-Murillo, M. A., Moreno, M. A. and Farías, A. (2016), 'Intercomparison of improved satellite rainfall estimation with CHIRPS gridded product and rain gauge data over Venezuela', *Atmósfera* **29**(4), 323–342.
- Trenberth, K. E. (1997), 'The definition of el nino', *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* **78**(12), 2771–2778.
- Trenberth, K. E., Branstator, G. W., Karoly, D., Kumar, A., Lau, N.-C. and Ropelewski, C.

- (1998), 'Progress during TOGA in understanding and modeling global teleconnections associated with tropical sea surface temperatures', *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans* **103**(C7), 14291–14324.
- Troup, A. (1965), 'The 'southern oscillation'', *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* **91**(390), 490–506.
- Turner, A. G. and Annamalai, H. (2012), 'Climate change and the south asian summer monsoon', *Nature Climate Change* **2**(8), 587–595.
- Turrent, C. and Cavazos, T. (2009), 'Role of the land-sea thermal contrast in the interannual modulation of the north american monsoon', *Geophysical Research Letters* **36**(2).
- Vera, C., Higgins, W., Amador, J., Ambrizzi, T., Garreaud, R., Gochis, D., Gutzler, D., Lettenmaier, D., Marengo, J., Mechoso, C. R., Nogues-Paegle, J., Dias, P. L. S. and Zhang, C. (2006), 'Toward a unified view of the American monsoon systems', *Journal of Climate* **19**(20), 4977–5000.
- Walker, G. T. (1924), 'Correlations in seasonal variations of weather. i. a further study of world weather', *Mem. Indian Meteorol. Dep.* **24**, 275–332.
- Walker, G. T. (1932), 'World weather v memories r.', *Meteor. Soc.* **4**, 53–84.
- Walters, D., Boutle, I., Brooks, M., Melvin, T., Stratton, R., Vosper, S., Wells, H., Williams, K., Wood, N., Allen, T., Bushell, A., Copsey, D., Earnshaw, P., Edwards, J., Gross, M., Hardiman, S., Harris, C., Heming, J., Klingaman, N., Levine, R., Manners, J., Martin, G., Milton, S., Mittermaier, M., Morcrette, C., Riddick, T., Roberts, M., Sanchez, C., Selwood, P., Stirling, A., Smith, C., Suri, D., Tennant, W., Vidale, P. L., Wilkinson, J., Willett, M., Woolnough, S. and Xavier, P. (2019), 'The Met Office Unified Model global atmosphere 7.0/7.1 and JULES global land 7.0 configurations', *Geoscientific Model Development* **12**(5), 1909–1963.
- Wang, C. and Picaut, J. (2004), 'Understanding ENSO physics—A review', *Earth's Climate: The Ocean–Atmosphere Interaction, Geophys. Monogr.* **147**, 21–48.
- Wang, P. X., Wang, B., Cheng, H., Fasullo, J., Guo, Z., Kiefer, T. and Liu, Z. (2017), 'The global monsoon across time scales: Mechanisms and outstanding issues', *Earth-Science Reviews* **174**, 84–121.
- Wang, S., Tippett, M. K., Sobel, A. H., Martin, Z. and Vitart, F. (2019), 'Impact of the qbo on prediction and predictability of the mjo convection', *J. Geophys. Res. Atmos.*
- Webb, M. J., Andrews, T., Bodas-Salcedo, A., Bony, S., Bretherton, C. S., Chadwick, R., Chepfer, H., Douville, H., Good, P., Kay, J. E. et al. (2017), 'The cloud feedback model intercomparison project (cfmip) contribution to cmip6', *Geoscientific Model Development* **10**(1), 359–384.
- Webster, P. J. (2020), *Dynamics of the Tropical Atmosphere and Oceans*, John Wiley & Sons.
- Webster, P. J. and Yang, S. (1992), 'Monsoon and enso: Selectively interactive systems', *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society* **118**(507), 877–926.
- URL:** <https://rmets.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/qj.49711850705>
- Whitcher, B., Guttorp, P. and Percival, D. B. (2000), 'Wavelet analysis of covariance with

- application to atmospheric time series', *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres* **105**(D11), 14941–14962.
- Wilks, D. S. (2011), *Statistical methods in the atmospheric sciences*, Vol. 100, Academic press.
- Williams, K. D., Copsey, D., Blockley, E. W., Bodas-Salcedo, A., Calvert, D., Comer, R., Davis, P., Graham, T., Hewitt, H. T., Hill, R., Hyder, P., Ineson, S., Johns, T. C., Keen, A. B., Lee, R. W., Megann, A., Milton, S. F., Rae, J. G. L., Roberts, M. J., Scaife, A. A., Schiemann, R., Storkey, D., Thorpe, L., Watterson, I. G., Walters, D. N., West, A., Wood, R. A., Woollings, T. and Xavier, P. K. (2018), 'The Met Office global coupled model 3.0 and 3.1 (GC3. 0 and GC3. 1) configurations', *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth Systems* **10**(2), 357–380.
- Wing, A. A., Camargo, S. J., Sobel, A. H., Kim, D., Moon, Y., Murakami, H., Reed, K. A., Vecchi, G. A., Wehner, M. F., Zarzycki, C. et al. (2019), 'Moist static energy budget analysis of tropical cyclone intensification in high-resolution climate models', *Journal of Climate* **32**(18), 6071–6095.
- Xie, P. and Arkin, P. A. (1997), 'Global precipitation: A 17-year monthly analysis based on gauge observations, satellite estimates, and numerical model outputs', *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* **78**, 2539–2558.
- Xie, P., Arkin, P. A. and Janowiak, J. E. (2007), *CMAP: The CPC Merged Analysis of Precipitation*, Springer Netherlands, Dordrecht, pp. 319–328.
- Yang, B., Zhang, Y., Qian, Y., Song, F., Leung, L. R., Wu, P., Guo, Z., Lu, Y. and Huang, A. (2019), 'Better monsoon precipitation in coupled climate models due to bias compensation', *NPJ Climate and Atmospheric Science* **2**(1), 1–8.
- Yin, L., Fu, R., Shevliakova, E. and Dickinson, R. E. (2013), 'How well can cmip5 simulate precipitation and its controlling processes over tropical south america?', *Climate Dynamics* **41**(11–12), 3127–3143.
- Yoon, J.-H. and Zeng, N. (2010), 'An Atlantic influence on Amazon rainfall', *Climate dynamics* **34**(2), 249–264.
- Zermeño-Díaz, D. M. (2019), 'The spatial pattern of midsummer drought as a possible mechanistic response to lower-tropospheric easterlies over the intra-americas seas', *Journal of Climate* **32**(24), 8687–8700.
- Zhai, J. and Boos, W. (2015), 'Regime transitions of cross-equatorial hadley circulations with zonally asymmetric thermal forcings', *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences* **72**(10), 3800–3818.
- Zhao, Z., Holbrook, N. J., Oliver, E. C., Ballesteros, D. and Vargas-Hernandez, J. M. (2020), 'Characteristic atmospheric states during mid-summer droughts over central america and mexico', *Climate Dynamics* pp. 1–21.
- Zhao, Z. and Zhang, X. (2021), 'Evaluation of methods to detect and quantify the bimodal precipitation over central america and mexico', *International Journal of Climatology* **41**, E897–E911.
- Zhou, T., Turner, A. G., Kinter, J. L., Wang, B., Qian, Y., Chen, X., Wu, B., Liu, B., Zou, L. and Bian, H. (2016), 'GMMIP (v1. 0) contribution to CMIP6: global monsoons model

- inter-comparison project', *Geoscientific Model Development* **9**, 3589–3604.
- Zou, L. and Zhou, T. (2015), 'Asian summer monsoon onset in simulations and cmip5 projections using four chinese climate models', *Advances in Atmospheric Sciences* **32**(6), 794–806.